ADVANCED OJIBWE:
PARTS ONE AND TWO
IN SEVERN DIALECT

Editor:	Tom Beardy
Verification and Editing:	John O'Meara
Typing and Graphics:	Sonya Matson
Graphic Artist:	Bruce Beardy
Translation:	Elsie Stoney

Audio tape production was produced by Studio One Productions. The audio tapes were mastered using Studio One Productions Digital Facility.

Toll Free: 1-800-354-8952
Fax (807) 767-9234
Produced by: Ken James
English Voice: Ken James
Native Language Voice: Tom Beardy
Licensed Music: Studio One Productions Library
Duplication Coordination: John Somers

A special thanks again to Lena Odjig White for all of her encouragement in making this book a reality and for all of her devotion to the preservation of Native languages.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Advanced Ojibwe: Parts One and Two in Severn Dialect
By Tom Beardy
©1997, Native Language Instructors' Program, Faculty of Education, Lakehead University, Thunder Bay, Ontario Canada

The print version of this text and accompanying audio files are available at Lakehead University Libraries (Chancellor Paterson and Education Libraries) library.lakeheadu.ca

This text has been scanned as part of the Anishinaabemowik - Indigenous Languages Program Historical Documents Digitization Project, Faculty of Education, Education Library (Thunder Bay Campus), Lakehead University.



This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives 4.0 International License.

To view a copy of this license, visit https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/4.0/

Please contact the Faculty of Education, Office of the Dean, Lakehead University, Thunder Bay, Ontario Canada for additional information or permissions. 807-343-8010 (ext. 8520)

ED LIB
KIT
497.3
ADV3



This book is based on a collection of materials by Tom Beardy, Department of Languages, Lakehead University, the Native Language Department, Lakehead University

Printed and distributed by:

Lakehead University
Thunder Bay, Ontario
P7B 5E1

Not to be sold for profit.

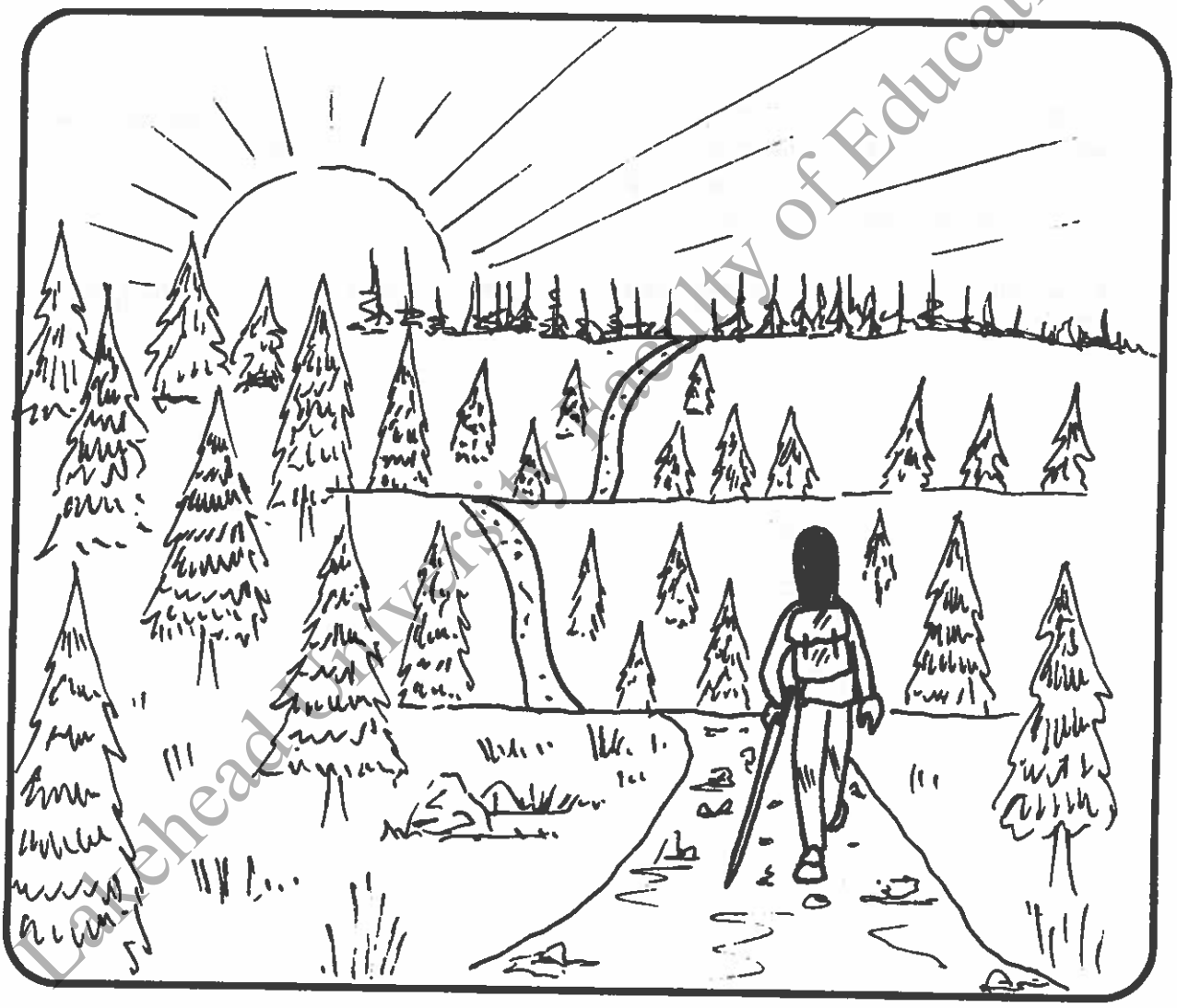
© 1997 by the Native Language Instructors' Program, Lakehead University. All rights reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced in any form or by any means without written permission from the Native Language Instructors' Program, Lakehead University.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ISBN 0-88663-025-8

Course Description

Welcome, this is the continuation of the journey in Severn Ojibwe which will introduce students to the language and culture of the native people of Northwestern Ontario. Students will continue learning basic vocabulary through listening, speaking, reading, and writing in Severn Ojibwe. Students will develop basic communication skills in Severn Ojibwe through study and practice. They will also become familiar with the traditional values and culture as the language learning progresses, which are vital when working with native people.



Lakehead University Faculty of Education

LET'S CONTINUE OUR JOURNEY UP THE RIVER
TO DISCOVER MORE SEVERN OJIBWE

What is Severn Ojibwe?

Severn Ojibwe is a dialect of the Ojibwe and Cree language. It is spoken mostly around the Severn River in Northwestern Ontario and areas around it.

It is different from Ojibwe spoken in communities south, east, and west of the Severn River area. Some people call it an Oji-Cree, an Ojibwe, or even a Cree language. In some ways, Severn Ojibwe is similar to Cree. Today, as many as 5,000 people speak Severn Ojibwe.

What is in this subject?

There are two units of study, which are used along with cassette tapes.

In these units, you will be given instructions in English and guided through exercises that go along with the tapes to continue learning basic vocabulary in Severn Ojibwe. You will be studying the one dialect of Severn Ojibwe and will learn through conversation both vocabulary and the structure of the language.

At the end of the course of studies, you will be able to carry on a short conversation in Severn Ojibwe.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

SUBJECT OUTLINE

Subject Name: Advanced Ojibwe (Severn dialect)

Subject Number: OJ3001

Subject Description:

The aim of this subject is to provide students with the skills necessary to speak Severn Ojibwe. In this functional and conversational program, students will learn basic vocabulary through listening, speaking, writing and understanding and optional laboratory facilities.

Objectives:

- to understand through conversation the structure of the Severn Ojibwe.
- to listen with understanding and to converse at a basic level in the Severn dialect of the Native language.
- to pronounce words accurately
- to demonstrate effective use of the Severn Ojibwe dialect in culturally appropriate contexts.

What is this subject about?

This is an advanced Severn Ojibwe subject for students who wish to learn to speak the Severn Ojibwe dialect. It is designed to give practice in conversation using everyday situations that students might encounter as they live and work in a Native community. It can be used to practice Native language by students of Native ancestry or by students from other backgrounds.

Learning a Native language can lead to a better appreciation and understanding of the whole society who uses it. Both Native and non-Native learners can gain a sense of the traditions, the customs, and both the historical and modern view of Native life.

What is dialect?

Generally speaking, dialect means the difference in how words are formed and said.

Linguists, or people skilled in the science of languages, believe dialect shows what area people come from because of the special way that they use a language. Although there are differences in dialect or the way people speak, the root or basic language is still the same. It may be that because of the way Native people once travelled easiest...up and down the river systems...that areas shared a river system for transportation, the dialect is different.

How do these dialects affect how Native people can communicate with one another?

Many Native language speakers claim that they can understand most of what speakers of a different dialect are saying. Sometimes misunderstanding does occur.

But most Native language speakers also say that they quickly become familiar with the differences in vocabulary when they need to frequently communicate with speakers of another dialect.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Indeed, there are many dialects in the Native language. There is no standard dialect that can be learned and used everywhere.

Two students at Lakehead University, Richard Jourdain and Judith Petch, wrote a paper about how people in different geographical areas say words. Look at the chart below. Then consider how these words might be used in your community.

AREA COMMUNITY		OJIBWE TRANSLATION FROM ENGLISH				
		One	Two	Three	Water	Sun
Severn	**Big Trout Lake**	Peshik	niishin	nihsin	nipi	piihsim
North-western Ontario	**Macdiarmid**	bazik	nihsin	nihshin	nibi	kiiziis
	Savant Lake	bejik	nijzhin	niso	nibi	kiiziis
	Lake Helen	bejik	nijin	niswe	nibi	gissis
	Longlac	bezhik	niinzhin	niswi	nisib	kiiziis
Southern Ontario	**Manitoulin Island**	bezhik	niish	sweh	nipi	keesiim
	Spanish River	bejik	neesh	niswei	nebi	gissis
	Walpole Island	bashique	neesh	swehi	beesheh	geesus
	Cape Croker	bashig	niizh	neswi	nipi	geezis

Adapted from an unpublished paper An Elementary Comparative Study of Morphological and Phonological Features of Several Ontario Dialects of Ojibwe, R. Jourdain and J. Petch, NL 2711 North American Linguistics course, Lakehead University, November 1988.

Where should the learning begin?

There is no right or wrong dialect. What is **important** is to keep the **Native language** alive and growing in use. Perhaps then, it is **important** to become familiar with **one dialect** of the language to start, and it would be simple from there to learn the differences in sounds of words to learn other dialects. Appreciating the dialects of other communities takes a trained ear and a curiosity to understand one another. Perhaps this first step will help to bring a stronger unity among our Native communities to keep alive the Native culture.

Although people in their own communities must be the ones to decide how to carry on their language through the generations, this advanced course of studies uses Severn Ojibwe.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Writing Anihshininiimowin (Severn Ojibwe)

In this section we discuss the writing system which is used in all three books in this series. First there is a discussion of the basic letters and combinations of letters which are used to write Anihshininiimowin (Severn Ojibwe). Following this there is a discussion of some issues which arise in writing and reading Severn Ojibwe. You do not need to read all the information at once. You may find it helpful to read it over from time to time as you progress through the courses. Some of the topics discussed here will become more understandable to you after you have been exposed to the language for some time.

The Writing System

In this book Severn Ojibwe is written with Roman (alphabetic) letters. Severn Ojibwe uses some of the letters used in writing English. However Severn Ojibwe is written in a way that is more consistent than English writing. Although English writing is basically fairly regular, there are enough irregularities found in English writing that we would not want to import them into Severn Ojibwe writing. When we use letters or combinations of letters in Severn, these consistently represent the same sound or combination of sounds. Each letter corresponds to a certain sound, and is only used to represent that sound.

Sounds in Severn Ojibwe are divided into two basic types: **vowels** and **consonants**.

Vowels

There are seven vowel sounds in Severn Ojibwe. Vowels are divided into two types: **long** vowels and **short** vowels. Long vowels take longer to say. With one exception, there is a long vowel corresponding to each short vowel. In elementary school you may have learned that certain English vowels were long and others were short. However, the way that vowels are analysed as long and short in Severn Ojibwe is different from the way they are presented in English, and you should ignore the English usage.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Here is a chart of the long and short vowels. You will learn how they are pronounced in the following paragraphs.

LONG	SHORT
ii	i
oo	o
aa	a
e	

You can see that the first three long vowels are represented by writing them double. Each is still one vowel, though. Further, each of the first three long vowels has a corresponding short vowel, and each short vowel is written with a single letter. The last long vowel, e, has no corresponding short vowel. Because there is no need to indicate a distinction between a long and short e sound, the long e is written with a single letter.

In the sets of example words given in this section we have for the most part used words that are taken from **Introductory Ojibwe** and **Intermediate Ojibwe**. Particularly at first you will not be familiar with many (or any) of them. You may find it helpful to get your instructor or another fluent speaker of Severn Ojibwe to pronounce them for you. Do not worry if you are not familiar with them yet.

You will find that some of the letters do not represent what we might expect them to in English. But remember that when we use these letters to write words in Severn Ojibwe, they are Severn Ojibwe letters! So the letters represent Severn Ojibwe sounds and you should not expect them to be pronounced the same way they are pronounced in English. Every language has its own rules for how letters are to be pronounced, and Severn Ojibwe is no exception.

Here are some examples of Severn Ojibwe words that contain long vowels. The examples show the vowel in three positions: beginning, middle, and end of a word. The vowel in question in each word is written in bold type. The approximate English equivalent of the Ojibwe vowel sound is also given.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Vowel	Ojibwe word	Approximate English Equivalent
ii	**ii**tok 'supposedly'	seat
	ni**i**n 'I, me'	
	anohk**ii** 'he/she is working'	
oo	**oo**cii 'fly'	note, toot
	m**oo**s 'moose'	
	pimipaht**oo** 'he/she runs by'	
aa	**aa**kim 'snowshoe'	father
	n**aa**pe 'man'	
	maac**aa** 'he/she leaves'	
e	**e**mihkwaan 'spoon'	bed
	p**e**hkaac 'slowly'	
	ki**e**we 'he/she goes home'	

Now here are some examples of words that contain short vowels.

Vowel	Ojibwe word	Approximate English Equivalent
i	**i**hkwe 'woman'	sit
	n**i**hka 'Canada goose'	
	aahkos**i** 'he/she is sick'	
o	**o**naakan 'plate'	put
	an**o**mohsh 'dog'	
	onaako 'yesterday'	
a	**a**hki 'land, moss'	but
	k**a**ye 'and, also'	
	akwa 'and, so'	

Consonants

There are more consonants than vowels in Severn Ojibwe. All the letters used to write consonants are also found in English. Some have a pronunciation very similar to that which they have in English, while others are quite different.

Some of the letters used for consonants are virtually the same as ones used in English: **m, n, w, y** and **h.** They should not cause you any difficulty. The sounds **m, n** and **w** can appear in any position in a word: beginning, middle, and end.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Phonetic	Ojibwe examples	English equivalent
m	**m**ahkisin 'shoe' o**h**o**m**aa 'here' saakaha**m** 'goes out'	**m**an
n	**n**aape 'man' pi**n**e 'partridge' koo**n** 'snow'	**n**ame
w	**w**aahsa 'far' kaa**w**in 'no' **w**aa**w** 'egg'	**w**in

The sound **y** never appears at the beginning of a word.

Phonetic	Ojibwe examples	English equivalent
y	ki**y**aapic 'still' e**h**sha**y** 'oh yuck!'	**y**es

The sound **h** never appears at the end of a word. As well, it only appears at the beginning of a word if a preceding short vowel is optionally dropped. For example, **ohomaa** 'here' is often pronounced and spelled **homaa.**

Phonetic	Ojibwe examples	English equivalent
h	o**h**owe 'this'	**h**im

The remaining six consonants **(p, t, k, c, s, sh)** occur in both a **weak** and a **strong** form. In their weak form, these consonants may occur anywhere in a word: at the beginning, in the middle, or at the end of a word. They may not be preceded by the consonant **h**, but they may be preceded by any of the other consonants or a vowel. The weak consonants may have slightly different pronunciation depending upon where they appear in a word. For example, at the end of a word the letter **p** usually sounds the same as it does in English. But when it appears in the middle of a word it may sound more like an English **b.** You may also find that the Severn **p** sound resembles a weakly pronounced **b** at the beginning of a word. Listen carefully as your instructor or another fluent Severn speaker says these words and see if you can notice the difference. You may find that there is a minor amount

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

of variation in how these letters are pronounced by different speakers.

Notice also that in Severn Ojibwe the sequence of letters **sh** is used to represent a single sound even though two letters are used.

In the examples that follow, each Severn Ojibwe sound corresponds to two sounds in the **English equivalent** column. The second English equivalent sound is the one that occurs between vowel (or between **n** or **m** and a vowel sound; see the discussion below in the 'Spelling Notes' section).

Sound	Ojibwe examples	English equivalent
p	**p**ine 'partridge' ni**p**i 'water' ahsa**p** 'net'	**p**it, bit
t	**t**epwe 'really' aci**t**amoo 'squirrel' keka**t** 'nearly'	**t**ime, di**m**e
c	**c**iimaan 'canoe' kohtaa**c**i 'he/she is afraid' kiimoo**c** 'secretly'	**ch**ip, **j**udge
k	**k**iin 'you' naa**k**osi 'he/she is visible' kota**k** 'other'	**k**eep, **g**ame
s	**s**aakahikan 'lake' aahko**s**i 'he/she is sick' waapoo**s** 'rabbit'	**s**it, zip
sh	**sh**iihshiip 'duck' pe**sh**ik 'one' pii**sh** 'bring him!'	**sh**ip, measure

In the **strong** form each of these six consonants is preceded by the letter **h.** The **h** is quite clearly pronounced, although you may find it harder to hear before **s.** The strong consonants appear in the middle of a word or at the end of a word, but do not appear at the beginning of a word.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Sounds	Ojibwe examples
hp	**ahp**ii 'when'
	nipaa**hp** 'I laugh'
ht	e**ht**a 'only'
hc	a**hc**aap 'bow'
	miikwe**hc** 'thank you'
hk	i**hk**ito 'he/she says'
	ati**hk** 'caribou'
hs	a**hs**in 'stone'
	wiiyaa**hs** 'meat'
hsh	Ani**hsh**inini 'person, Indian'
	ta**hsh** 'but, and'

A sequence of two weak consonants may also occur in the middle of a word or at the end of a word, but not at the beginning of a word.

Sounds	Ojibwe examples
sk	mi**sk**wi 'blood'
shp	i**shp**imink 'above'
sht	ni**sht**ikwaan 'my head'
shk	we**shk**ac 'long ago'
	kiiyaa**shk** 'seagull'

Severn Ojibwe also allows for other combinations of **n** or **m** followed by a weak consonant. These are discussed separately below, in the first point of the 'Spelling Notes' section.

SPELLING NOTES

1. Pronunciation of 'n' and 'm' before weak consonants

1.0 Severn Ojibwe allows a combination of the letters **n** or **m** followed by one of the weak consonants. However, there is a very important difference found in Severn Ojibwe which influences the pronunciation of these sequences. There are three different groups of communities in which Severn

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Ojibwe is spoken in northern Ontario.

(A) West Severn:

Bearskin Lake, Muskrat Dam, Sachigo Lake, Big Trout Lake, Wapekeka (Angling Lake)

(B) East Severn:

Kingfisher Lake; Wunnumin Lake, Kasabonika Lake

(C) Sandy Lake:

Sandy Lake, Deer Lake, North Spirit Lake

The way people speak is very similar in these three areas. However, in West Severn communities the sounds **n** and **m** are not pronounced when they appear before a weak consonant. So in the words in the table below the **n** and **m** sounds in bold type are 'silent.'

Sounds	Ojibwe examples
mp	o**mp**iki 'he/she grows up'
nt	pii**nt**ike 'he/she comes inside'
nc	o**nc**ii 'he/she is from there' pehsho**nc** 'near, close'
nk	pa**nk**ii 'a little bit' maa**nk** 'loon'
ns	o**ns**aam 'too much' nimihse**ns** 'my older sister'
nsh	aka**nsh**e**nsh**i 'he/she is small' ki**nwensh** 'a long time'

THE FOLLOWING IS VERY IMPORTANT:

In these books these 'silent' letters are written in all words in which they are pronounced in East Severn and Sandy Lake.

So, if your instructor is from a West Severn community you will find that there are words in which **n** and **m** are written but not pronounced. You should listen carefully to your instructor or to a fluent speaker to determine if they pronounce **n** or **m** in words of this type. Writing these words with

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

n and **m** allows these books to be used by instructors from a wide variety of Severn Ojibwe communities.

1.1 There are some common grammatical endings that are affected by this form of variation. They are briefly reviewed here. More information about each of these grammatical topics can be found in the appropriate section of the textbooks.

1.2 The 'locative' suffix indicates the location where something is happening. This suffix usually ends in **nk**. In West Severn communities, the **n** is silent.

Ordinary Noun	**Locative Form of Noun**
tehsapiwin 'chair'	tehsapiw**ink** 'on the chair'
ahkihk 'kettle'	ahkihk**onk** 'in the kettle'

1.3 Verbs may add a suffix to indicate the negative form of the verb. If the verb ends in **n** or **m** then that sound will be silent when the suffix is added.

Ordinary Verb	**Negative Verb**
minwentam 'he/she is glad'	kaawin minwentansiin 'he/she is not glad'
kitayamihin 'I talk to you'	kaawin kitayamihinsinoon' 'I don't talk to you'

1.4 Some verbs may add a suffix **k** to indicate a third-person subject. If the verb ends in **n** then that sound will be silent when the ending is added.

Ordinary Verb	**Verb with Suffix**
pipoon 'it is winter'	pipoon**k** '(that) it is winter'
waapan 'it is dawn'	waapan**k** 'be tomorrow'

There are some Inanimate Intransitive verbs which end in the sound **n**, but behave differently when the suffix **k** is added. A very small number of these verbs shift the **n** to **h** when a grammatical ending such as **k** 'third-person inanimate' is added.

No ending	**Ending k**
ihkin 'it happens'	ihkih**k** '(that) it happens'

A few words of this type will appear in the materials presented in your textbooks. There is no special rule for telling which verbs which end in **n** will shift their final **n** to **h** when the suffix is added.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

You should simply make note of the fact that they do occur.

As well, if the verb ends in **m** then that sound is written **n** when the suffix **k** is added, but the **n** is still silent (**n** is written here because that is what is pronounced in East Severn and Sandy Lake).

Ordinary Verb	**Verb with Suffix**
minwentam 'he/she is glad'	**minwentank** '(that) he/she is glad'
inentam 'he/she thinks'	**inentank** '(that) he/she thinks'

1.5 There is a very small number of words in which **n** and **m** are always pronounced before weak consonants. These are usually very short words, such as the following.

Sounds	**Ojibwe examples**
nt	**aanti** 'where?'
	aanta 'some'
	kwanta 'no reason'
	naanta 'maybe'

As well, there are many verbs in Severn Ojibwe which contain a suffix **entam** or **entan**. In these words the **n** before the **t** is always pronounced.

Sounds	**Ojibwe examples**
nt	**minwentam** 'he/she is happy'
	macentam 'he/she is sad'

2. Pronunciation of 'o' after 's,' 't,' 'n,' 'c'

In Severn Ojibwe the pronunciation of the short **o** sound may sometimes sound more like a short **i** when **o** is preceded by one of the consonants **s, t, n,** or **c.** Listen carefully when your instructor or a Severn Ojibwe speaker says the following words. You may find that not all speakers display this variation, but some do.

Sounds	**Ojibwe examples**
t	**ihkito** 'he/she says'
s	**pimipiso** 'he/she is driving by'
n	**minohpikwan** 'it tastes good'

To be consistent, we still write these words with the letter **o.**

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

3. Dropping of short vowels

When you listen to people say words in Severn Ojibwe you may notice that sometimes the short vowel **i** is not pronounced even though it is included in the written form of the word. This is particularly common in the middle of a word, but is rare at the beginning of a word. It does not happen at the end of a word.

If you listen to someone say the following word you may find that the short vowel **i** in the second syllable is not pronounced.

pim**i**piso 'he/she drives'

Similarly the short vowels in the second and fourth syllables of the following word may not be pronounced.

Anih**sh**in**i**ni 'Indian, person'

In the writing system used in these publications we write these vowels even if they are not always pronounced. You may find that there is some variation in the way different speakers pronounce words that contain short **i**. Listen carefully and you will become familiar with the rhythm of words in Severn Ojibwe.

You may be aware that something similar happens in English. For example, often the first syllable of English 'suppose' is not pronounced, but English speakers write the word with the vowel letter included just the same.

4. Pronunciation variation of 'i'

Sometimes the letter **i** sounds more like **o** when it is next to the sounds **m, p,** or **w.** Listen carefully as someone says the following word. You may hear an **o** between the **m** and the **w,** rather than an **i.**

kim**i**wan 'it is raining'

Similarly you may hear an **o** in the third syllable of the following word.

tehsap**i**win 'chair'

This type of variation is very common. All three of the sounds **m, p,** and **w** are produced with the lips in a rounded position, as is **o.** Try making these sounds while looking in a mirror and observe the position of your lips. When the sound **i,** which is not made with the lips in a rounded position, appears next to one of these sounds, it often will be pronounced like an **o,** because the rounding of the lips is being transferred from one sound to an adjacent one. We will write **i** in these words.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

SYLLABICS CHART
(with alphabetic equivalents)

					FINALS WEST	FINALS EAST
SHORT VOWELS	∇ e	△ ii	▷ oo	◁ aa		
EAST	∇· we	△· wii	▷· woo	◁· waa	°	
WEST	·∇	·△	·▷	·◁		°
	∨ pe	∧ pii	> poo	< paa	'	‹
	∪ te	∩ tii	⊃ too	⊂ taa	′	‹
	ϥ ke	ϼ kii	ժ koo	ϧ kaa	ˋ	ϧ
	ϩ ce	ϼ cii	ϳ coo	ϲ caa	-	ϲ
	⅂ me	⊢ mii	⊥ moo	⊥ maa	ᶜ	ᶜ
	ᓄ ne	ᓂ nii	ᓅ noo	ᓇ naa	ᵓ	ᓇ
	ᓵ se	ᓭ sii	ᓫ soo	ᓴ saa	ᵑ	ᓴ
	ᔨ she	ᔪ shii	ᔭ shoo	ᔦ shaa	ᵛ	ᔦ
	ᕒ ye	ᕓ yii	ᕕ yoo	ᕖ yaa	ᵖ	ᵖ

EXTRA SIGNS:

✕	for christ	‖	for H
ᛒ	for R	ᛚ	for L
ˣ	for end of sentence		

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

SYLLABICS CHART
(with alphabetic equivalents)

					FINALS	
					WEST	EAST
LONG VOWELS	ᐁ e	ᐃ ii	ᐅ oo	ᐊ aa		
EAST	ᐁ· we	ᐃ· wii	ᐅ· woo	ᐊ· waa	°	
WEST	·ᐁ	·ᐃ	·ᐅ	·ᐊ		°
	ᐯ pe	ᐱ pii	ᐳ poo	ᐸ paa	ˈ	ˌᐸ
	ᑌ te	ᑎ tii	ᑐ too	ᑕ taa	ˊ	ᑦ
	ᑫ ke	ᑭ kii	ᑯ koo	ᑲ kaa	ˋ	ᑳ
	ᒉ ce	ᒋ cii	ᒍ coo	ᒐ caa	-	ᒡ
	ᒣ me	ᒥ mii	ᒧ moo	ᒪ maa	ᑉ	ᒢ
	ᓄ ne	ᓅ nii	ᓆ noo	ᓇ naa	˃	ᓐ
	ᓵ se	ᓯ sii	ᓰ soo	ᓴ saa	˂	ᓱ
	ᔆ she	ᔅ shii	ᔇ shoo	ᔈ shaa	ᐟ	ᔨ
	ᔪ ye	ᔫ yii	ᔭ yoo	ᔮ yaa	˃	˃

EXTRA SIGNS:

✕	for christ	‖	for H
ᛒ	for R	ᛚ	for L
×	for end of sentence		

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

CONTENTS UNIT ONE

Lesson One: **Inanimate Nouns "Buildings"** 1
Pronunciation Practice 2
English Translation 3
Match Up Pictures and Words 4
Translation into Severn Ojibwe 5
Useful Expressions 6
Questions and Answers 7
Initial Change "Examples" 8
Some Letters Missing 11
Reading and Understanding 12
Review Spelling and Translation Test 13

Lesson Two: **My Relations** 14
Pronunciation Practice 15
Twelve Pictures and Words 16
Translations into English 17
My, Yours, His/Hers 18
Questions and Answers 20
Mini-Dialogues 21
New Vocabulary 22
More on Animate Intransitive Conjunct Verbs 23
Reading and Writing 26
Transitive Verbs in the Conjunct Order 27
Possessive Nouns: Review Test 31

Lesson Three: **Preverbs: Read and Understand** 33
Using Preverbs in Sentences 34
Learning How Preverbs Work 36
New Vocabulary 37
Joining Preverbs to Verbs 38
Dialogues I and New Vocabulary 39
Transitive Inanimate Verbs in the Conjunct 41
Dialogues II and New Vocabulary 42
Dialogues III and New Vocabulary 45
Learning the Language 47
Using the Language 49
Preverbs: Review Test 52

Lesson Four: **Additional Sentences I** 54
Additional Sentences II 57
Additional Sentences III 60
Review the New Words 63
Continuation of Review: New Words 65
Using the New Words in Sentences 67

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Studying New Words....69
How Words Are Used in Sentences....71
Asking for Information About Kinds....73
Review the Words....74
Useful Expressions....75
Review Test....76

Lesson Five: **Phrases and Expressions....77**
Some Words Are Missing....78
Expanding Phrases and Expressions....79
New Vocabulary....80
Verbs With Indefinite Subjects....81
Expanding Your Own Sentences....82
Translation: Review Exercise....83
More Phrases and Expressions....84
Some Words Are Missing....85
Expanding Phrases and Expressions....86
New Vocabulary....87
Expanding Your Own Sentences....88
Translation: Review Exercise....89

Lesson Six: **Unit 1 Review Tests: Lessons 1 through 5....90**
Unit 1 Review Section:....95
English Translation Section....98

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

CONTENTS UNIT TWO

Lesson One: **Animate Inanimate Verbs** **131**
Pronunciation Practice 132
Understanding the Meanings of the Words 133
Match Up Pictures and Words 134
Translation into English 135
Singular Forms: First and Second-Person Forms 136
Questions and Answers in Singular Forms 138
Plural Forms 139
Dialogues 141
Review Test 143

Lesson Two: **First and Second-Person Transitive Verbs** **145**
Third-Person Transitive Verbs 146
Questions and Answers: First, Second-Person Forms Only 147
Questions and Answers: Third-Person With Obviative 149
Paradigms 151
Working With the Language 153
More Sentences 154
Dialogues 155
More About TA Verb Types: Subject and Object Combination 157
Review Tests 161

Lesson Three: **Inanimate Intransitive Verbs** **164**
Translation into Severn Ojibwe 166
Translation into English 167
Sentences 168
New Vocabulary 168
More Sentences 169
Questions and Answers 170
New Vocabulary 170
Continuation of Questions and Answers 172
New Vocabulary 172
Mini-Dialogues 174
New Vocabulary 175
Creative Writing 177
New Vocabulary 177
Review Tests 179

Lesson Four: **Particles** **181**
English Translation 182
Learning the New Vocabulary 183
Translation Into Severn Ojibwe 184
Translation Into English 185
Working With the Language 186

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Part One



Oniikaanii
Leader

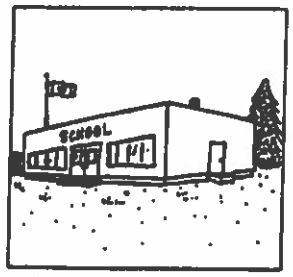
Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 1

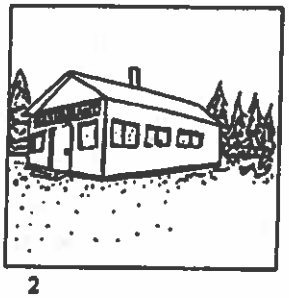
Exercise A

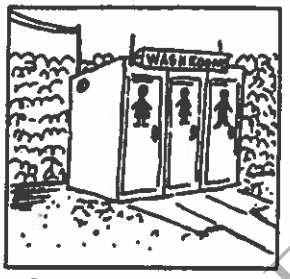
Inanimate Nouns

Listen carefully as your instructor says these words. Each word will be repeated three or four times. Translations are on page 98.

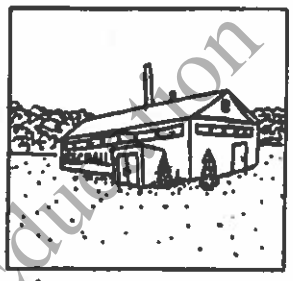


1


2



3


4



5



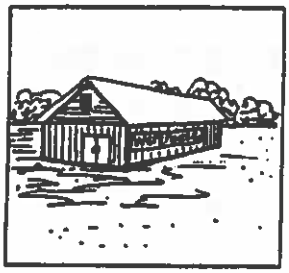
6

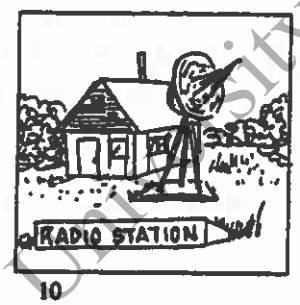


7

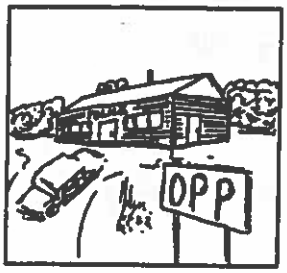


8


9

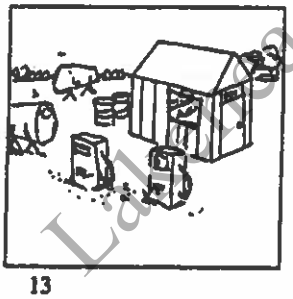


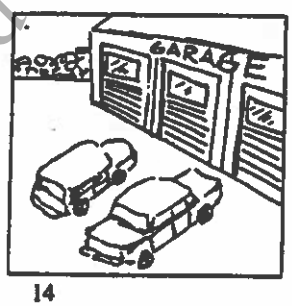
10



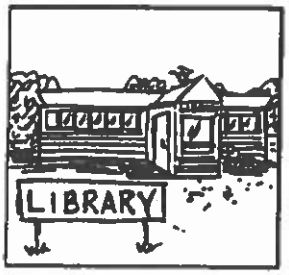
11


12

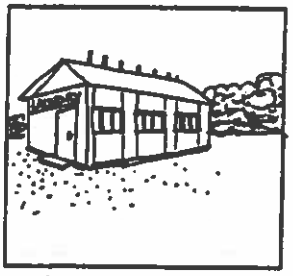

13



14



15


16

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 1

Exercise B

Pronunciation Practice

1. For review of the 16 pictures from the previous page, listen carefully to your instructor saying the following words and imitate what you hear.

(1) ishkoonoowikamik
(2) wiihsiniiwikamik
(3) anwepiiwikamik
(4) metawewikamik
(5) masinahikewikamik
(6) mashkihkiiwikamik
(7) kipahotookamik
(8) ataawikamik
(9) ahtaahsonikamik
(10) natohtamoowikamik
(11) shimaakanihshiiwikamik
(12) ayamihewikamik
(13) kaahsaniiwikamik
(14) waweshahitaapaanewikamik
(15) masinahikanikamik
(16) kisiipiikinikewikamik

2. Listen carefully as your instructor says these words. Words are broken down for you into syllables to help you identify the proper pronunciations. Spend some time to repeat the words on your own or with your partner.

(1) i shkoo noo wi ka mik
(2) wii hsi nii wi ka mik
(3) a nwe pii wi ka mik
(4) me ta we wi ka mik
(5) ma si na hi ke wi ka mik
(6) mash ki hkii wi ka mik
(7) ki pa ho too ka mik
(8) a taa wi ka mik
(9) a htaa hso ni ka mik
(10) na to hta moo wi ka mik
(11) shi maa ka ni hshii wi ka mik
(12) a ya mi he wi ka mik
(13) kaa hsa nii wi ka mik
(14) wa we sha hi taa paa ne wi ka mik
(15) ma si na hi ka ni ka mik
(16) ki sii pii ki ni ke wi ka mik

3. For writing practice, rewrite the words using section one as your guideline. Space is provided for you below.

1._____
2._____
3._____
4._____
5._____
6._____
7._____
8._____
9._____
10._____
11._____
12._____
13._____
14._____
15._____
16._____

Lakehead University, Faculty of Education

Exercise C

English Translation

1. Assemble all the items (or pictures of the items) you see at the beginning of this lesson.

school	band office	warehouse
restaurant	nursing station	radio station
restroom	jail	police station
recreation hall	store	church
gas station	library	
garage	laundromat	

2. Here is a list of all the items you have learned given in mixed order. Use the numbered pictures on page 1 to match up numbers and letters in the space provided for you below. Answers are on page 98.

(a) kisiipiikinikewikamik
(b) masinahikanikamik
(c) waweshahitaapaanewikamik
(d) kaahsaniiwikamik
(e) ishkoonoowikamik
(f) wiihsiniiwikamik
(g) anwepiiwikamik
(h) metawewikamik
(i) ataawikamik
(j) kipahotookamik
(k) mashkihkiiwikamik
(l) masinahikewikamik
(m) ayamihewikamik
(n) shimaakanihshiiwikamik
(o) natohtamoowikamik
(p) ahtaahsonikamik

1._____ 5._____ 9._____ 13._____
2._____ 6._____ 10._____ 14._____
3._____ 7._____ 11._____ 15._____
4._____ 8._____ 12._____ 16._____

Just a reminder, as you already learned from the previous text, there are two different words used when asking for an article to be brought or passed to you. The Native languge has a structural rule that divides all nouns into two classes, called GENDER. One gender is called **animate**. In this gender are found all things that are recognized as living. The other gender is called **inanimate** and in it are found all the nouns that are not animate.

As a hint, remember that usually anything that is **living** will be classified as animate. Most things that are **not living** will be classified as inanimate. However, things that are **not living** can be classified as animate and these are the ones for which you will have to **memorize the gender.** Translations are on page 98.

For example:

a) tobacco b) stone c) bread d) tree e) drum f) ring g) flour h) bicycle
i) star j) fishnet k) raisin l) money m) sun n) kettle o) spoon p) moon
q) iron r) frying pan

These are just a few things classified as **living**.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 1

Exercise D

Match Up Pictures and Words

In this exercise, there are 16 pictures shown below, as well as the Ojibwe names for them. There is a small box to the right of each word. Using a pencil, match up pictures and words by writing the number for the appropriate picture in each box. Answers and translations are on page 98.

1 

ayamihewikamik ☐

2 

shimaakanihshiiwikamik ☐

3 

natohtamoowikamik ☐

4 
ahtaahsonikamik ☐

5 
metawewikamik ☐

6 
anwepiiwikamik ☐

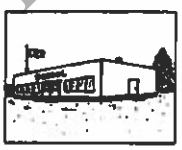
7 
wiihsiniiwikamik ☐

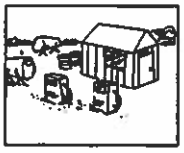
8 
ishkoonoowikamik ☐

9 
kaahsaniiwikamik ☐

10 
waweshihitaapaanewikamik ☐

11 
masinahikanikamik ☐

12 
kisiipiikinikewikamik ☐

13 
ataawikamik ☐

14 
kipahotookamik ☐

15 
mashkihkiiwikamik ☐

16 

masinahikewikamik ☐

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise E

Translation into Severn Ojibwe

Here is the list once again of all 16 items you have learned given in mixed order in English. Translate them into Severn Ojibwe. The space is provided for you on the right of each word. Try to do this translation on your own without looking at the previous translations. Translations are on page 98.

1. band office _____
2. nursing station _____
3. store _____
4. jail _____
5. recreation hall _____
6. restroom _____
7. school _____
8. restaurant _____
9. laundromat _____
10. gasoline station _____
11. garage _____
12. library _____
13. warehouse _____
14. police station _____
15. radio station _____
16. church _____

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise F

Useful Expressions

You now know the names of 16 items introduced to you. The most important consideration for learning the language well will be to **USE** what you learn whenever you get the chance. Before we continue on reading and writing exercises, let's review some useful expressions that you have learned from the previous text.

Aanti eshaayan?	Where are you going?
Aanti waa-ishaayan?	Where do you want to go?
Aanti eshaat(c)?	Where is he/she going?
Aanti waa-ishaat(c)?	Where does he/she want to go?
Aanti eshaayek?	Where are you going? (pl)
Aanti waa-ishaayek?	Where do you want to go? (pl)
Aanti eshaawaat(c)?	Where are they going?
Aanti waa-ishaawaat(c)?	Where do they want to go?
Aanahpii eshaayan?	When are you going there?
Aanahpii waa-ishaayan?	When do you want to go there?
Aanahpii eshaat(c)?	When is he/she going there?
Aanahpii waa-ishaat(c)?	When does he/she want to go there?
Aanahpii eshaayek?	When are you going there? (pl)
Aanahpii waa-ishaayek?	When do you want to go there? (pl)
Aanahpii eshaawaat(c)?	When are they going there?
Aanahpii waa-ishaawaat(c)?	When do they want to go there?

Here, the basic verb is **ishaa**. There are several different endings added after the basic verb. These endings indicate the person and number of the subject, that is, who is doing the action and how many people are involved. These endings are used in some types of questions. As well, there is the preverb **waa-** which also adds to the meaning of the sentence. These word parts were introduced in **Intermediate Ojibwe**, pages 52 - 55. You may wish to review them to refresh your memory.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise G

Questions and Answers

In this exercise, work in pairs taking turns asking questions and answers using the questions and answers listed below. Repeat this exercise three or four times. Remember, pronunciation is important when learning the language. Translations are on page 99.

Question	Answer
Aanti eshaayan?	Ishkoonoowikamikonk.
Aanti waa-ishaayan?	Wiihsiniiwikamikonk.
Aanti eshaat(c)?	Anwepiiwikamikonk.
Aanti waa-ishaat(c)?	Metawewikamikonk.
Aanti eshaayek?	Masinahikewikamikonk.
Aanti waa-ishaayek?	Mashkihkiiwikamikonk.
Aanti eshaawaat(c)?	Kipahotookamik.
Aanti waa-ishaawaat(c)?	Ataawikamikonk.
Aanahpii eshaayan ahtaahsonikamikonk?	Noonkom kaa-kiishikaak.
Aanahpii waa-ishaayan natohtamoowikamikonk?	Waapank maawiin.
Aanahpii eshaat(c) shimaakanihshiiwikamikonk?	Awahsiwaapank.
Aanahpii waa-ishaat(c) ayamihewikamikonk?	Wiipac.
Aanahpii eshaayek kaahsaniiwikamikonk?	Naake.
Aanahpii waa-eshaayek waweshihitaapaanikamikonk?	Paanimaa.
Aanahpii eshaawaat(c) masinahikanikamikonk?	Waapank iitok.
Aanahpii waa-eshaawaat(c) kisiipiikinikewikamikonk?	Ahpii ishkwaa-anohkiiwaat(c).

You notice an extra ending **onk** on these nouns. What is this ending? Give a brief explanation.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 1

Initial Change

Sometimes the vowel in the first syllable of a Severn Ojibwe verb may change, depending upon how the verb is being used. Compare the following two sentences.

Taawinink ishaa.
He/she is going to town.

Aanti eshaac?
Where is he/she going?

In both sentences the verb stem is **ishaa** 'go.' In the first sentence, which is a statement, the verb appears without any prefixes or suffixes. In the second sentence the form of the verb is slightly different. It has the suffix **c(t)**, which is the Conjunct Order third-person suffix. Notice also that the first vowel of the verb stem is **e**, not **i**. This modification of the first vowel is called **Initial Change**.
Initial Change occurs in Conjunct Order forms of verbs. Recall that the Conjunct Order is used in embedded clauses or in sentences which ask questions such as 'what,' 'where,' 'when,' 'what,' 'who,' and 'how.'
Initial Change only affects the first vowel of a verb. If the verb is preceded by a preverb, Initial Change affects only the first vowel of the first preverb, if there is one. In Severn Ojibwe the only three vowels that are affected by Initial Change are **ii**, **a**, and **i**. In some varieties of Ojibwe other vowels are affected by Initial Change. Here is a chart which shows the vowels affected by Initial Change and how they are modified.

Unchanged Form	Changed Form
ii	aa
a	e
i	e

There are several preverbs whose vowel is **ii** in the unchanged form. These preverbs change this vowel to **aa** in the form which shows Initial Change. The next example shows a sentence with the preverb **wii-** 'want' in the unchanged form, followed by a question which shows the changed form **waa-.**

Mihcikan saakahikaniink niwii-ishaa.
I want to go to Bearskin Lake.

Aanti waa-ishaac(t)?
Where does he want to go?

The preverb **kii-** 'past tense' changes to **kaa-** in the form which shows Initial Change, as in the second example below where the preverb is **kaa-.**

Nikii-ishaa.
I went there.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Aanahpii kaa-ishaac(t)?
When did he go?

Unchanged Form	Changed Form	Meaning
wii-	waa-	want
kii-	kaa-	past
ka-, ta-	ke-	future

Verbs or preverbs whose first syllable contains the vowel **a** change it to **e** in forms that show Initial Change.

Ani-tipihkaa.
It is getting to be night.

Eni-tipihkaak.
The coming night.

Another common preverb is **ishi-** 'in a certain manner, in a certain direction.' The changed form is **eshi-.** Compare the following two examples.

Pinehsiiwi-waashikamaak ishi-taa.
He/she lives in Thunder Bay.

Aanti eshi-taac?
Where does he/she live?

Unchanged Form	Changed Form	Meaning
ani-	eni-	away from, begin
ishi-	eshi-	manner, direction

There is one preverb that only occurs in a changed form, that is, it has no unchanged form. This preverb has the form **e-**. It is followed either by a verb or by other preverbs, which must be followed by a verb. The preverb **e-** is often difficult to translate, but it frequently is similar to 'that' in English, when used to introduce an embedded clause (one that follows a main verb).

Wiintamaw e-wii-waapamak.
Tell him that I want to see him.

A few verbs have an 'irregular' changed form. Most of these verbs start with **t** in the unchanged form.

Tootam.
He/she does something.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Aan entootank?
What is he/she doing?

Here is another pair of examples with this pattern of Initial Change.

Waaninaawankaank tananohkii.
He/she works in Sioux Lookout.

Aanti entananohkiic?
Where does he/she work?

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise H

Some Letters Missing

1. For this exercise, you need to refer to the pictures on page 1. The names of the buildings are given below in random order with some letters missing. See if you can match up each picture with the appropriate word on the list by writing the picture's number in the small box to the right of the word. See also if you can fill in the missing letters. Answers are on page 99.

1. m_ _ _ _n_ _ _ _k_ _ _ _k_ _ _ _k ☐
2. m_ _ _ _k_ _ _ _ii_ _ _k_ _ _ _k ☐
3. k_ _ _ _ _ _ _t_ _ _k_ _ _ _k ☐
4. _ _t_ _ _ _ _ _k_ _ _ _k ☐
5. _ _ _ _k_ _ _n_ _ _ _ _ _k_ _ _ _k ☐
6. _ _ _ _hs_ _ _ _ _ _w_ _k_ _ _ _k ☐
7. a_ _ _ _p_ _ _ _ _ _k_ _ _ _k ☐
8. _ _ _t_ _ _ _w_ _ _ _m_ _k ☐
9. a_ _ _ _ _ _h_ _ _ _k_ _ _ _k ☐
10. s_ _ _m_ _ _k_ _ _ _h_ _ _ _ _ _w_ _ _a_ _ _k ☐
11. _ _ _t_ _ _t_ _ _ _ _ _wi_ _ _ _ _ _k ☐
12. a_ _ _ _ _ _h_ _ _ _ _ _k_ _ _ _k ☐
13. k_ _ _ _ _ _p_ _ _k_ _ _ _k_ _ _ _k_ _ _ _k ☐
14. m_ _ _ _n_ _ _ _k_ _ _ _k_ _ _ _k ☐
15. k_ _ _ _s_ _n_ _ _ _ _ _k_ _ _ _k ☐
16. w_ _ _ _ _sh_ _ _ _t_ _ _ _ _ _ _ne_ _ _ _ _a_ _ _k ☐

2. Give English translation for the items on the list you just completed above. The spaces are provided for you below. Try to do this exercise on your own. Translations are on page 99.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____
13. _____
14. _____
15. _____
16. _____

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 1

Exercise I

Reading and Understanding

1. In this exercise, work in pairs taking turns asking questions and answers using the questions and answers listed below. This exercise is similar to that on page 7. However, there are some grammatical differences in the verbs. Find out what they are. Answers and translations are on page 100.

Question	Answer
Aanti eshaayan?	Ishkoonoowikamikonk nitishaa.
Aanti waa-ishaayan?	Wiihsiniiwikamikonk niwii-ishaa.
Aanti eshaat(c)?	Anwepiiwikamikonk ishaa.
Aanti waa-ishaat(c)?	Metawewikamikonk wii-ishaa.
Aanti eshaayek?	Masinahikewikamikonk nitishaamin.
Aanti waa-ishaayek?	Mashkihkiiwikamikonk niwii-ishaamin.
Aanti eshaawaat(c)?	Kipahotookamikonk eshaawak.
Aanti waa-ishaawaat(c)?	Ataawikamikonk wii-ishaawak.
Aanahpii eshaayan ahtaahsonikamikonk?	Noonkom kaa-kiishikaak nitishaa.
Aanahpii waa-ishaayan natohtamoowikamikonk?	Waapank maawiin nika-ishaa.
Aanahpii eshaat(c) shimaakanihshiiwikamikonk?	Awahsiwaapank maashkooc ta-ishaa.
Aanahpii waa-ishaat(c) ayamihewikamikonk?	Wiipac wii-ishaa.
Aanahpii eshaayek kaahsaniiwikamikonk?	Naake, ani-tipihkaak nika-ishaamin.
Aanahpii waa-eshaayek waweshahitaapaanikamikonk?	Ishkwaa-nikamoyek niwii-ishaamin.
Aanahpii eshaawaat(c) masinahikanikamikonk?	Waapank iitok ta-ishaawak.
Aanahpii waa-ishaawaat(c) kisiipiikinikewikamikonk?	Ahpii ishkwaa-anohkiiwaat(c) ta-ishaawak.

2. Exercise I does not contain any new vocabulary. If you need to check the meanings of words you can use the glossary located at the end of **Advanced Ojibwe**.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise J

Review Spelling and Translation Test

1. You now know the names of sixteen items and sixteen useful expressions introduced to you in this lesson. English translations are given in mixed order in section 1. In section 2, translations are in order. If you are in class, corrections will be done by your instructor and if you are outside of class, find the qualified instructor to do the corrections for you. Translations are on page 100 and page101.

	English	Severn Ojibwe
1.	store	
2.	jail	
3.	nursing station	
4.	band office	
5.	church	
6.	police station	
7.	radio station	
8.	warehouse	
9.	recreation hall	
10.	restroom	
11.	restaurant	
12.	school	
13.	gasoline station	
14.	garage	
15.	laundromat	
16.	library	

2.

	English	Severn Ojibwe
1.	Where are you going?	
2.	Where do you want to go?	
3.	Where is he/she going?	
4.	Where does he/she want to go?	
5.	Where are you going? (pl)	
6.	Where do you want to go? (pl)	
7.	Where are they going?	
8.	Where do they want to go?	
9.	When are you going there?	
10.	When do you want to go there?	
11.	When is he/she going there?	
12.	When does he/she want to go there?	
13.	When are you going there? (pl)	
14.	When do you want to go there? (pl)	
15.	When are you going there?	
16.	When do they want to go there?	

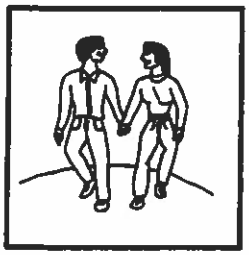
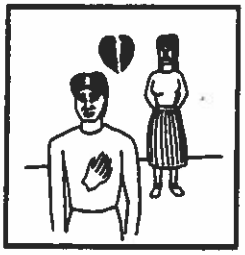
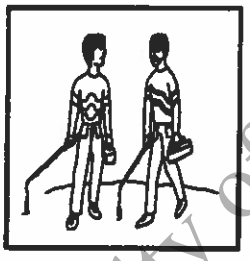
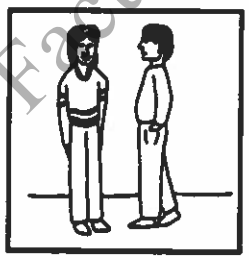
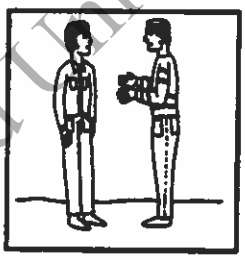
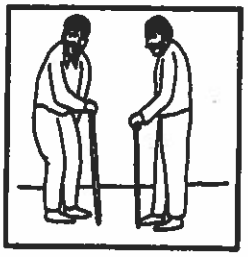
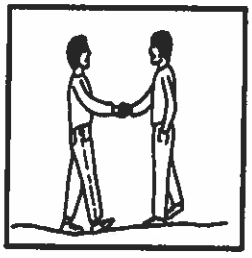
Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

Exercise A

My Relations

In this lesson, there are twelve (12) new Animate Nouns introduced to you. As we always begin with introductions, listen carefully as your instructor says the words that match the pictures below. Each word will be presented in the form that means "my.....", that is, referring to a first-person singular. Each word will be repeated three or four times.

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 
7. 
8. 
9. 
10. 
11. 
12. 

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise B

Pronunciation Practice

1. For review of the 12 Animate Nouns, listen carefully to your instructor saying the following words and imitate what you hear. You can also practice saying these words with your partner. Translations are on section 3.

(1)	nimoosom	(7)	niicimohsh
(2)	nikayaashim	(8)	niiciihaa
(3)	nipehshohtaahkoomaakan	(9)	niici-ihkwe
(4)	nitinaahkoomaakan	(10)	niici-naape
(5)	nitanohkiinaakan	(11)	niici-kihci-ayahaa
(6)	niwiintanohkiimaakan	(12)	niici-toohkaan

2. Listen carefully as your instructor says these words once more. Notice how they can be broken down into syllables. To help you identify the syllables, we have placed a space between each one.

(1)	ni moo som	(7)	nii ci mohsh
(2)	ni ka yaa shim	(8)	nii cii haa
(3)	ni pe hsho htaa hkoo maa kan	(9)	nii ci -ih kwe
(4)	ni ti naa hkoo maa kan	(10)	nii ci-naa pe
(5)	ni ta no hkii naa kan	(11)	nii ci-ki hci -a ya haa
(6)	ni wiin ta no hkii maa kan	(12)	nii ci-too hkaan

3. Now say each of the following in Severn Ojibwe. Correct pronunciation will be monitored by the instructor.

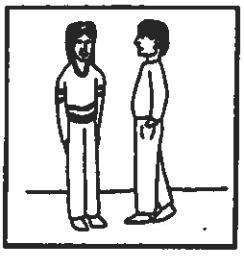
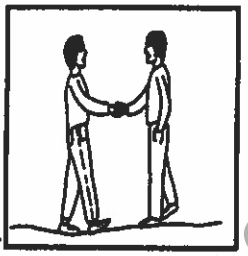
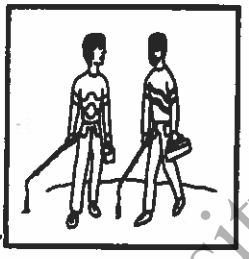
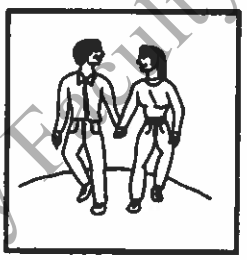
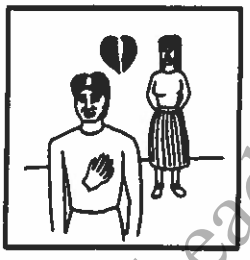
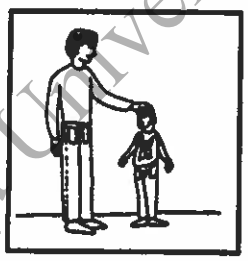
(1)	my sweetheart	(7)	my cousin (cross cousin of opposite sex)
(2)	my ex-spouse/girlfriend	(8)	my spouse
(3)	my close relations	(9)	my fellow woman
(4)	my relation	(10)	my fellow man
(5)	my worker	(11)	my fellow elder
(6)	my co-worker	(12)	my name-sake

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise C

Twelve Pictures and Words

1. Here are the twelve pictures in mixed order listed below for each of the words we have just learned. Practice writing the corresponding word beside each number in the spaces below. If you have a problem recognizing the pictures, feel free to use Exercise A on page 14 as a guideline.

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 
7. 
8. 
9. 
10. 
11. 
12. 

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

2. Before doing this translation into English, make sure you understand the meaning of the words listed below. Do this exercise on your own without looking at any other translation that you have already done. The words are in mixed order. Translations are on page 101.

Severn Ojibwe	English
1) niici-toohkaan	_____
2) niicimohsh	_____
3) niiciihaa	_____
4) nimoosom	_____
5) nikayaashim	_____
6) nipehshohtaahkoomaakan	_____
7) niwiintanohkiimaakan	_____
8) nitanohkiinaakan	_____
9) niici-ihkwe	_____
10) niici-naape	_____
11) niici-kihci-ayahaa	_____
12) nitinaahkoomaakan	_____

Repeat Translation:

3. Before doing this exercise, you should cover section 2 with a piece of paper so you can do this translation without looking at any previous notes. The words listed below are in mixed order. Translations are on page 102.

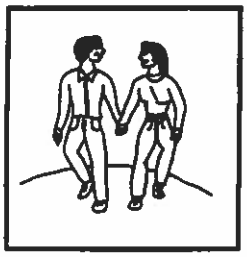
1) niwiintanohkiimaakan	_____
2) nimoosom	_____
3) nitanohkiinaakan	_____
4) nikayaashim	_____
5) nipehshohtaahkoomaakan	_____
6) niici-toohkaan	_____
7) niicimohsh	_____
8) niiciihaa	_____
9) niici-naape	_____
10) nitinaahkomaakan	_____
11) niici-kihci-ayahaa	_____
12) niici-ihkwe	_____

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

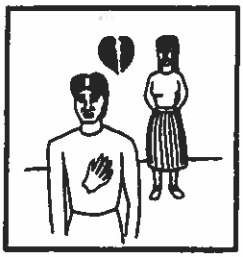
Exercise D

My, Yours, His/Hers

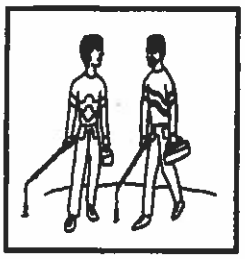
1. In this exercise, we will add the second-person and third-person forms for each of the new possessive nouns we have learned in this lesson. Listen carefully as the instructor says the following words. Translations are on page 102.



nimoosom
kimoosom
omoosoman



nikayaashim
kikayaashim
okayaashiman



nipehshohtaahkoomaakan
kipehshohtaahkoomaakan
opehshohtaahkoomaakanan



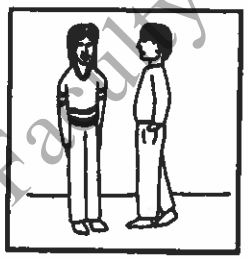
nitinaahkoomaakan
kitinaahkoomaakan
otinaahkoomaakanan



nitanohkiinaakan
kitanohkiinaakan
otanohkiinaakanan



niwiintanohkiimaakan
kiwiintanohkiimakan
owiintanohkiimaakanan



niicimohsh
kiicimohsh
wiicimohshan



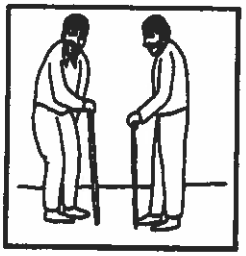
niiciihaa
kiiciihaa
wiiciihaan



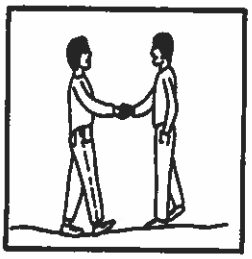
niici-ihkwe
kiici-ihkwe
wiici-ihkwen



niici-naape
kiici-naape
wiici-naapen



niici-kihci-ayahaa
kiici-kihci-ayahaa
wiici-kihci-ayahaan



niici-toohkan
kiici-toohkan
wiici-toohkanan

You may have noticed that the third-person forms have extra endings, either **an** or **n**. What are these endings? Give a brief explanation.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

2. For practice, write each word as follows. Translations are on page 102.

my_____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

yours_____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

his/hers_____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

3. Read and understand the meaning of the words before doing the translations below. Translations are on page 102.

	English	Severn Ojibwe
1)	my sweetheart	_____
2)	my ex-spouse/girlfriend	_____
3)	my close relation	_____
4)	my relation	_____
5)	my worker	_____
6)	my co-worker	_____
7)	my cousin	_____
8)	my spouse	_____
9)	my fellow woman	_____
10)	my fellow man	_____
11)	my fellow elder	_____
12)	my name sake	_____

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise E

Questions and Answers

Using the possessive nouns in simple sentences that you have learned.

1. For speaking practice, work in pairs taking turns asking questions and answers. Repeat the same phrases as shown in the examples below for each possessive noun. Translations are on page 103.

Question	**Answer**
Awanen wahawe?	Nimoosom.
Kikihkenimaa na aha?	Ehe, nimoosom ohsha aha.

2. For speaking practice, work in pairs taking turns asking questions and answers both positive and negative. Repeat the same phrases as shown in the examples below for each possessive noun. Translations are on page 103.

Question	**Positive Answer**
Kewiin na wii-anohkii kimoosom?	Ehe, kewiin wii-anohkii nimoosom.
	Negative Answer
	Kaawin, kaawin kewiin wii-anohkiihsiin nimoosom.

Question	**Positive Answer**
Kewiin na wii-anohkiiwan omoosoman Henry?	Ehe, kewiin wii-anohkiiwan omoosoman Henry.
	Negative Answer
	Kaawin, kaawin kewiin wii-anohkiihsiiwan omoosoman Henry.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise F

Mini-Dialogues

Read and Understand:

1. Read and understand the following mini-dialogues. Concentrate on how possessive nouns are used in the dialogues. Words introduced in this lesson are in *italic type*. Also, some words will be introduced to you throughout the dialogues. If you find any new words, underline them. New vocabulary and English translations are listed on the next page. Translations are on page 103.

A. Waaciye *nimoosom*. Aan eshi-ayaayan noonkom kaa-kiishikaak?
Nimino-ayaa. Kiin tahsh wiin?
Kaawin tepwe nimino-ayaahsiin ohowe mekwaac.
Aan tahsh, kitaahkos na?
Kaawin, nitayehkos. Onsaam nikii-kihci-anohkii onaako.
Kah! Siyaaken maawiin wiipac kika-mino-ayaa.

B. Aanti *kikayaashim* eshi-taat(c)?
Nahke piko. Kaawin ninaanaakacihaahsiin.
Mino-ayaatok na kitinentaan?
Nahke piko. Kaawin ninaanaakacihaahsiin.
Aanahpii ishkwaayaac kaa-waapamaat(c)?
Nahke piko. Kaawin nikanoohkehsiin.

C. Peshik *nipehshohtaahkoomaakan* kii-maacaa onaako.
Kah! Aan eshinihkaasot(c)?
Soosan ishinihkaaso.
Aanahpii ke-pi-kiiwet(c)?
Awahsiwaapank nika-pi-kiiwe ihkito.
Kika-piihaa na tahsh?
Kaawin, kaawin kekoon ke-onci-piihak.

D. Waaciye *nitinaahkoomaakan*. Aan entootaman?
Kaawin kekoon. Aan tahsh?
Kiwenootis na?
Kaawin iko naahpic. Aan tahsh?
Kiwii-kakwecimin ci-kii-masinahamawinaan pankii shooniyaan?
Ahaaw, pankii ehta.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

New Vocabulary

A. Waaciye (pc) Hello, greetings (in Severn Dialect as well as Cree)
Wiipac maawiin siyaaken kika-mino-ayaa (phrase). I hope you are well soon.

B. Naanaakacihi (vta) investigate s.o., watch for s.o.
Kaawin ninaanaakacihaahsiin I don't watch for her.
Ayaatok (vai+uncertainty ending) he/she seems/must be there.
Ishkwaayaac (pc) last
Kanoohke (vai+o) remember

C. Kaawin, kaawin kekoon ke-onci-piihak. No, I don't have any reason to wait for him/her.

D. Wenootisi (vai) be rich
Kiwenootis na? Are you rich?
Kaawin iko naahpic. obviously, not really
Masinahamaw (vta) borrow from s.o., write to s.o.

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write two dialogues of your own at least 6 lines each. Try to include one of the possessive nouns listed below in each dialogue.

1. nitanohkiinaakan
2. niwiitanohkiimaakan
3. niicimohsh
4. niiciihaa

Speaking Practice:

3. For speaking practice, work with a partner by reading the dialogues in this section, as well as the new ones you wrote yourself. Take turns with your partner so you have the opportunity to say each line. Repeat this exercise until you feel comfortable with your pronunciation.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

More on Animate Intransitive Conjunct Verbs

In **Intermediate Ojibwe** (Unit 1, Lesson 4, Exercise G) we discussed how verbs may be used in different **orders: Independent, Conjunct,** and **Imperative.** You may find it helpful to review the material in that section. There we only discussed the Conjunct endings for AI verbs in the singular forms (first, second, and third). Now we will introduce the plural endings and show how they may be used.

You may recall that there are four different possible plural forms for Animate Intransitive verbs. These are reviewed in the following chart. Don't forget that in the Native language there are two different ways of saying 'we' or 'us'.

A.

Person-Number Combination	English Pronoun	Ojibwe Pronoun
first-person (inclusive)	we, us (me and you)	kiinawint
first-person (exclusive)	we, us (me and him)	niinawint
second-person	you (plural)	kiinawaa
third-person	they	wiinawaa

Here is a chart which compares the Animate Intransitive and Conjunct Order for the first-, second, and third-person plural forms of a verb stem that ends in a vowel.

B.

	Independent	Conjunct
first-person (inclusive)	**kinipaamin**	**nipaayank**
first-person (exclusive)	**ninipaamin**	**nipaayaank**
second-person	**kinipaanaawaa**	**nipaayek**
third-person	**nipaawak**	**nipaawaat(c)**

In the following chart we can see the prefixes and suffixes by themselves. These are the form that are used if the verb stem ends in a vowel.

C.

	Independent		Conjunct
first-person (inclusive)	**ki**	**min**	**yank**
first-person (exclusive)	**ni**	**min**	**yan**
second-person	**ki**	**naawaa**	**yek**
third-person		**wak**	**waat(c)**

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

The conjunct plural endings in the charts above can be added to any AI verb stem that ends in a **vowel**. As well, there are many AI verbs that end in the sound **m**. For these stems the plural conjunct endings are slightly different. Here is a chart that compares the verb **minwentam** 'he is glad' in the Independent and Conjunct Order.

D.

	Independent	Conjunct
first-person (inclusive)	**ki**minwentaa**min**	minwentam**ank**
first-person (exclusive)	**ni**minwentaa**min**	minwentam**aank**
second-person	**ki**minwentaa**naawaa**	minwentam**ek**
third-person	minwentam**owak**	minwentam**owaat(c)**

In the following chart we can see the prefixes and suffixes by themselves.

E.

	Independent	Conjunct
first-person (inclusive)	**ki** **min**	**ank**
first-person (exclusive)	**ni** **min**	**aank**
second-person	**ki** **naawaa**	**ek**
third-person	**owak**	**owaat(c)**

Similarly, if an AI verb ends in the consonant **n**, the form of the conjunct endings is slightly different. Here is a chart that compares the verb **takohshin** "arrive" in the Independent and Conjunct Order.

F.

	Independent	Conjunct
first-person (inclusive)	**ki**takohshini**min**	takohshini**yank**
first-person (exclusive)	**ni**takohshini**min**	takohshini**yaank**
second-person	**ki**takohshini**naawaa**	takohshini**yek**
third-person	takohshini**wak**	takohshini**waat(c)**

In the following chart we can see the prefixes and suffixes by themselves.

G.

	Independent	Conjunct
first-person (inclusive)	**ki** **imin**	**iyank**
first-person (exclusive)	**ni** **imin**	**iyaank**
second-person	**ki** **inaawaa**	**iyek**
third-person	**iwak**	**iwaat(c)**

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Notice that even though there are some minor differences in the form of these conjunct endings, depending upon whether the final sound of the AI verb stem is a vowel, **m**, or **n**, the basic endings are the same.

The AI conjunct plural endings can be used in many of the different sentences we have already learned.

Many sentences in Severn Ojibwe start with particles such as **Mii** or **Ami**. These are often hard to explain in English but are very common in Ojibwe. Sometime they may be translated with expressions such as 'so . . .' or 'This is . . .' or 'That is . . .'

Ami ahko ehkitowaat(c).
'That is what they usually say'

When sentences contain **Ami** or **Mii** the following verb is in the Conjunct Order.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise G

Reading and Writing

Read and Understand:

1. This exercise is similar to that on the previous page. Only this time, the dialogues are longer. Concentrate on the possessive nouns which are used in the dialogues. Words introduced in this lesson are in *italic type*. Also, some words will be introduced to you throughout the dialogues. If you find any new words, underline them. New vocabulary and English translations are listed below. Translations are on page 104.

A. Aanahpii ke-maatanohkiit(c) *kiici-ihkwe*?
Nahke piko. Kaawin mahshi niwiintamaakohsiin.
Aanahpii ke-wiintamawihk inentaman?
Siyaaken maawiin wiipac.
Aan tahsh ke-tootaman kiishpin ekaa wiintamawihk wiipac?
Kaawin kekoon. Amii piko ohomaa ke-ayaayaan ci-piihak.
Kekoon ina naanta ka-kii-ishi-wiicihin?
Kaawin kehcin. Miikwehc.

B. Aasha na *kiici-naape* kii-kiiwe?
Ehe, aasha weshkac kii-kiiwe.
Aanahpii miina ke-piishaat(c)?
Nahke piko. Kaawin nitoonci-wiintamaakohsiin.
Ahpii miina piishaat(c), wiintamaw e-wii-waapamak.
Wiipac ohsha iitok miina ta-piishaa.
Ahaaw, kehcinaac nika-wiintamawaa.
Kinanaahkomin nitootem.

New Vocabulary:

A.	Maatanohkii (vai)	start to work
	Amii piko ohomaa ke-ayaayaan ci-piihak.	I am just going to stay here and wait for him.
	Kaawin kehcin	probably not
B.	Kinanaahkomin (vta)	I thank you.
	Kaawin nitoonci-wiintamaakohsiin.	He didn't tell me.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write two dialogues of your own of at least 8 lines each. Try to include each of the possessive nouns listed below in your dialogues.

   1. niici-kihci-ayahaa
   2. niici-toohkaan

Speaking Practice:

3. For speaking practice, work with a partner by reading the dialogues in this section, as well as the new ones you wrote yourself. Take turns with your partner so you have the opportunity to say each line. Repeat this exercise until you feel comfortable with your pronunciation.

Transitive Verbs in the Conjunct Order

The dialogues in this lesson contain several Transitive Animate verbs in the Conjunct Order. In **Introductory Ojibwe** and **Intermediate Ojibwe** we have seen that Transitive Animate verbs in the Independent Order may have many different forms for different combinations of subject and object.

As well, Transitive Animate verbs may appear in the Conjunct Order. Here are several examples from the dialogues in this lesson. The Conjunct Order endings are in **bold** type in these examples.

Aanahpii ishkwaayaac kaa-waapam**aac**?
When did he/she see him/her last?

Aanahpii ke-wiintamaw**ihk** inentaman?
When do you think he/she will tell you.

Aan tahsh ke-tootaman kiishpin ekaa wiintamaw**ihk** wiipac?
What will you do if he/she doesn't tell you soon.

Amii piko ohomaa ke-ayaayaan ci-pii**hak**.
I am just going to stay here and wait for him.

Ahpii miina piishaat(c), wiintamaw e-wii-waapam**ak**.
When he comes here again, tell him I want to see him.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

Transitive Animate verbs have a grammatical subject which is usually animate and a grammatical object which is always animate. Both the subject and object may indicate person (first, second, or third) and number (singular or plural), as well as other grammatical concepts. Transitive Animate verbs allow for many possible different combinations of grammatical subject and object, as we have already seen when discussing these verbs in the Independent Order in **Introductory Ojibwe** and **Intermediate Ojibwe.** The same holds true in the Conjunct Order. It is not practical to try to learn all of them at once, because there are so many different forms. It may be best for you to learn to use some of the more common ones, and learn to recognize others.

Below, we first present the Conjunct Order forms which correspond to some of the Independent Order forms introduced in **Introductory Ojibwe.** For convenience, suffixes that indicate person and number of the subject and object are in bold type. Don't forget that the Conjunct Order only uses suffixes to indicate person and number. These suffixes may be added to any Transitive Animate verb.

1 acting on 2 waapam**inaan** nanaantawapam**inaan** wiicih**inaan** wiiciiw**inaan**	1 acting on 3 waapam**ak** nanaantawapam**ak** wiicih**ak** wiiciiw**ak**	2 acting on 1 waapam**ihshiyan** nanaantawapam**ihshiyan** wiicih**ihshiyan** wiiciiw**ihshiyan**
2 acting on 3 waapam**ac** nanaantawapam**ac** wiicih**ac** wiiciiw**ac**	3 acting on 1 waapam**ihshic** nanaantawapam**ihshic** wiicih**ihshic** wiiciiw**ihshic**	3 acting on 2 waapam**ihk** nanaantawapam**ihk** wiicih**ihk** wiiciiw**ihk**
3 acting on 3 Obviative waapam**aac** nanaantawapam**aac** wiicih**aac** wiiciiwaac		

In the following tables we list the Transitive Animate Conjunct Order endings, using the sample verb **waapam** 'see s.o.' The tables are organized by the person and number of the object.

Abbreviations

excl.	exclusive
incl.	inclusive
pl.	plural

DIRECT FORMS

Recall from **Introductory Ojibwe** that the **Direct** forms are those in which the grammatical object is third-person while the grammatical subject is first-, second-, or third-person.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

A. *Singular Subject and Third-Person Singular Object*

I - him/her	waapama**k**	'(that) I see him/her'
you - him/her	waapama**c**	'(that) you see him/her'
he/she - him/her	waapama**ac**	'(that) he/she sees him/her'

B. *PluralSubject and Third-Person Singular Object*

we (incl.) - him/her	waapama**ayank**	'(that) we (incl.) see him/her'
we (excl.) - him/her	waapama**ayaank**	'(that) we (excl.) see him/her'
you (pl.) - him/her	waapama**ayek**	'(that) you (pl.) see him/her'
they - him/her	waapama**awaac**	'(that) they see him/her'

C. *Singular Subject and Third-Person Plural Object*

I - them	waapama**kwaa**	'(that) I see them'
you - them	waapama**twaa**	'(that) you see them'
he/she - them	waapama**ac**	'(that) he/she sees them'

D. *Plural Subject and Third-Person Plural Object*

we (incl.) - them	waapama**ayahkwaa**	'(that) we (incl.) see them'
we (excl.) - them	waapama**ayaankitwaa**	'(that) we (excl.) see them'
you (pl.) - them	waapama**ayekwaa**	'(that) you (pl.) see them'
they - them	waapama**awaac**	'(that) they see them'

INVERSE FORMS

Recall from **Introductory Ojibwe** that the **Inverse** forms are those that have a third-person grammatical subject and a first-, second-, or third-person object.

A. *Third-Person Singular Subject and Singular Object*

he/she - me	waapami**hshic**	'(that) he/she sees me'
he/she - you	waapami**hk**	'(that) he/she sees you'
he/she (obv.) - him/her	waapami**koc**	'(that) he/she (obv.) sees him/her'

B. *Third-Person Plural Subject and Singular Object*

they - me	waapami**hshiwaac**	'(that) they see me'
they - you	waapami**hkwaa**	'(that) they see you'
they (obv.) - him/her	waapami**kowaac**	'(that) they (obv.) see him/her'

C. *Third-Person Singular Subject and Plural Object*

he/she - us (incl.)	waapami**koyahk**	'(that) he/she sees us (incl.)'
he/she - us (excl.)	waapami**koyaank**	'(that) he/she sees us (excl.)'
he/she - you (pl.)	waapami**koyek**	'(that) he/she sees you (pl.)'

D. *Third-Person Plural Subject and Plural Object*

they - us (incl.)	waapami**koyahkwaa**	'(that) they see us (incl.)'
they - us (excl.)	waapami**koyankitwaa**	'(that) they see us (excl.)'
they - you (pl.)	waapami**koyekwaa**	'(that) they see you (pl.)'

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 2

LOCAL (ME-YOU) FORMS

The **Local (Me-You)** forms have a first-person subject and a second-person object.

First-Person Subject and Second-Person Object

I - you	waapam**inaan**	'(that) I see you'
I - you (plural)	waapam**inakok**	'(that) I see you (plural)'
we (excl.) - you	waapam**ikooyan**	'(that) we (excl.) see you'
I - you (plural)	waapam**ikooyek**	'(that) we (excl.) see you (plural)'

LOCAL (YOU-ME) FORMS

The **Local (You-Me)** forms have a second-person subject and a first-person object.

Second-Person Subject and First-Person Object

you-me	waapam**ihshiyan**	'(that) you see me'
you (plural)-me	waapam**ihshiyek**	'(that) you (plural) see me'
you-us (excl.)	waapam**ihshiyaank**	'(that) you see us (excl.)'
you (plural)-us (excl.)	waapam**ihshiyaank**	'(that) you (plural) see us (excl.)'

INDEFINITE SUBJECT FORMS

The **Indefinite Subject** forms are those in which the subject is only implied but is not mentioned specifically.

he/she is -	waapam**aakaniwic**	'(that) he/she is seen'
they are -	waapam**aakaniwaac**	'(that) they are seen'
I am -	waapam**ikooyaan**	'(that) I am seen'
you are -	waapam**ikooyan**	'(that) you are seen'

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise H

Review Test

Possessive Nouns:

1. This review test for lesson 2 has two sections. Before you begin, review the spelling and meanings of the words very carefully. When you are ready, translate them into English. Remember, try and translate without looking at your notes. Translations are on page 104.

Possessive Nouns	English Translation
1. nimoosom	
2. nikayaashim	
3. nipehshohtaahkoomaakan	
4. nitinaahkoomaakan	
5. nitanohkiinaakan	
6. niwiintanohkiimaakan	
7. niicimohsh	
8. niiciihaa	
9. niici-ihkwe	
10. niici-naape	
11. niici-kihci-ayahaa	
12. niici-toohkaan	

Note: Check your translations when you have finished.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

2. In this section, before you begin, review the spelling and meanings of the words very carefully. When you are ready, translate them into Severn Ojibwe. Translations are on page 104.

English	Severn Ojibwe
1. my sweetheart	
2. my ex-spouse/girlfriend	
3. my close relation	
4. my relation	
5. my worker	
6. my co-worker	
7. my cousin (cross cousin of opposite sex)	
8. my spouse	
9. my fellow woman	
10. my fellow man	
11. my fellow elder	
12. my name sake	

Note: Check your spelling and translations when you have finished.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 3

Exercise A

Preverbs

1. Increase your own "word power". Since the beginning of the **Introductory Severn Ojibwe and Intermediate Severn Ojibwe**, you have been using **preverbs**. First, let's review the ones you already know.

pooni-	stop, quit
nihtaa-	skilled at, knows how, can do, usual
ani-	away from, in progress, towards
ishkwaa-	after, done, complete
mwaye-	before
kakwe-	try, to make an effort towards
kiimooci-	secretly
kwenawi-	unable to find, fail at, no place for
maacii-	start, begin, proceed, move forward
antawi- or natawi-	go to do, to go there and to do something
wani-	in error, wrongly, mistake
noonte-	want to, anxious, need to do something before usual time
mate-	visible (at a distance)
kihci-	big, great, very

From **Intermediate Ojibwe.**

wenci-	piihtaa-

2. Here are some more common preverbs new to you. They can be combined with many different verbs. Don't forget that a hyphen is used to join preverbs to the following verb.

1.	kiiwe-	returning, going back
2.	kinipi-	fast, quickly
3.	koci-	try to do
4.	naaci-	get, fetch, go for
5.	nehpici-	permanently, not knowing when to quit
6.	niipaa-	at night, happening at night, nocturnal
7.	pwaahtawi-	delayed, late
8.	watakami-	easily

Make sure you understand the meaning of these words before moving on to the next exercise.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 3

Exercise B

Using Preverbs in Sentences

1. Here are some examples of the new preverbs introduced in the previous section. Each one is given in the first-person form. Study and understand these sentences.

1.	Nikiiwe-anohkii.	I am returning to work.
2.	Nikinipi-caakii.	I get exhausted quickly.
3.	Nikoci-nipaa.	I try to sleep.
4.	Ninaaci-miicime.	I fetch food
5.	Ninehpici-kiiwe.	I go home permanently.
6.	Niniipaa-anohkii.	I work at night.
7.	Nipwaahtawi-wanishkaa.	I get up late.
8.	Niwatakami-ayehkos.	I get tired easily.

2. Here are some examples of sentences which contain the same preverbs. This time each one is given in the second-person form. Study and understand these sentences.

1.	Kikiiwe-anohkii.	You are returning to work.
2.	Kikinipi-caakii.	You get exhausted quickly.
3.	Kikoci-nipaa.	You try to sleep.
4.	Kinaaci-miicime.	You fetch food.
5.	Kinehpici-kiiwe.	You go home permanently.
6.	Kiniipaa-anohkii.	You work at night.
7.	Kipwaahtawi-wanishkaa.	You get up late.
8.	Kiwatakami-ayehkos.	You get tired easily.

3. Now here are the same sentences in third-person form. Study and understand these sentences.

1.	Kiiwe-anohkii.	He/she is returning to work.
2.	Kinipi-caakii.	He/she gets exhausted quickly.
3.	Koci-nipaa.	He/she is trying to sleep.
4.	Naaci-miicime.	He/she fetches food.
5.	Nehpici-kiiwe.	He/she goes home permanently.
6.	Niipaa-anohkii.	He/she works at night.
7.	Pwaahtawi-wanishkaa.	He/she gets up late.
8.	Watakami-ayehkosi.	He/she gets tired easily.

There are some preverbs that occur only in the Conjunct Order. Among these are the preverbs which refer to tense. You have already met these preverbs. You may find it helpful to refer to **Intermediate Ojibwe**, Unit 1, Lesson 4.

1.	ci-	to, that, will, would, could, should
2.	kaa-	the one who; the one that
3.	ke-	will, would, should, could: FUTURE

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Here is an example of each one in the first-person singular form.

1.	Ninoonteyentaan ci-kiiweyaan.	I am anxious to go home.
2.	Nitanohkii noonkom kaa-kiishikaak.	I work today.
3.	Nimaacaa noonkom ke-kiishaak.	I will be leaving today.

Now here they are in the second-person.

1.	Kinoonteyentaan ci-kiiweyan.	You are anxious to go home.
2.	Kitanohkii noonkom kaa-kiishikaak.	You are working today.
3.	Kimaacaa noonkom ke-kiishikaak.	You will be leaving today.

Now here they are in third-person.

1.	Noonteyentam ci-kiiwet(c).	He/she is anxious to go home.
2.	Anohkii noonkom kaa-kiishikaanik.	He/she is working today.
3.	Maacaa noonkom ke-kiishikaanik.	He/she will be leaving today.

The preverbs **ishi-** and **tahso-** are a little different from those we have just discussed. They are often called **relative** preverbs because they are usually 'related' to other words in the sentence. For example, if you want to tell someone that you live in Big Trout Lake, you need to mention the place name, followed by the preverb **ishi-** and the verb **taa** 'live somewhere'.

1.	Kihci-namekohsipiink nitishi-taa.	I live in Big Trout Lake.

In a sentence such as this one the preverb is 'related' to the place name.

Another common use of this relative preverb is when you are asking a question with **Aanti** 'where'. For example, the following questions contain **ishi-**.

1.	Aanti waa-ishi-anohkiiyan?	Where do you want to work?
2.	Aanti waa-ishi-apiyan?	Where do you want to sit?

Notice that if there is no other preverb, then **ishi-** changes to **eshi-**.

1.	Aanti eshi-anohkiiyan?	Where are you working?
2.	Aanti eshi-apiyan?	Where are you sitting?

The preverb **tahso-** 'so many' is used with many different types of verbs. It is often used with words for seasons and units of the day, with the meaning 'every'.

1.	Kiiwe tahso-niipin.	He/she goes home every summer.

It can also be used with words for 'day' or 'night'.

1.	Tahso-kiishikaa	Every day.
2.	Tahso-tipihkaa	Every night.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise C

Learning How Preverbs Work

Read and Understand:

This exercise is similar to the one on the previous page. Only this time, the sentences are longer and they are in mixed order such as first-person, second-person and third-person forms. Concentrate on preverbs how its used in the sentences. Also, some words will be introduced to you throughout the sentences. If you find any new words, underline them. New vocabulary and English translations are listed on the next page. Complete translations are on page 105.

A. Aanahpii miina ke-pi-kiiwe-anohkiiyan?
Nahke piko. Kaawin mahshi mayaam nikihkentansiin.

B. Aanti waa-ishi-nipaayan?
Weti naaniyahii pootawaanink.

C. Amiinahi waapank ci-maacaayan?
Ehe, kiishpin ehta mino-kiishikaak.

D. Noonkom na kaa-kiishikaanik ta-kiiwe kitootem?
Kiishpin ekaa kimiwaninik ta-kiiwe noonkom kaa-kiishikaanik.

E. Ta-nehpici-sookihpwan ina kitishinaan ke-tipihkaak?
Ka maawiin siyaaken (or: siyaaken maawiin kaawin).

F. Watakami-kishiwaasi na kitayihsh?
Kaawin, eshkam ehta kiishpin kaa-wii-wiihsinit(c).

G. Tahso-kiishikaa nikihci-anohkii. Kiin tahsh wiin?
Ehe, keniin tahso-kiishikaa nikihci-anohkii.

H. Nahshine niipaa-anohkii na kiwiiciiwaakan?
Kaawin, kiishpin ehta kaa-nantawentaakosit(c).

I. Kikii-pwaahtawi-naaci-ataawikamikwe na kekishep?
Ehe, nikii-nipaa.

J. Miina na kiwii-koci-minihkwe pankii nipi?
Kaawin, aasha onsaam mishtahi niminihkwe nipi.

K. Kinipi-caakihse shooniyaan kiishpin ekaa kwayahk kaa-kanawenimaakanooc aanti ke-ishi-aapatisit(c).

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 3

New Vocabulary:

C.	Amiinahi (pc)	is that right, is that so
E.	Ishinan (vti)	see s.t. a certain way
	Kitishinaan	you see s.t. a certain way (or, that way)
	Ka maawiin siyaaken OR siyaaken maawiin kaawin.	I hope not.
	Eshkam (pc)	sometimes, once in a while
G.	Nahshine (pc)	all the time, often, frequently
	Nantawentaakosi (vai)	be wanted, be desirable
H.	Ataawikamik (na)	trading post, store
	Naaci-ataawikamikwe	He/she is going to the store
	Kekiishep (pc)	this morning past
J.	Naahpic (pc)	really, very, to a high degree
K.	Caakihse (vai/ii)	get used up, run out, be exhausted
	Kanawenim (vta)	be taken care of
	nikanawenimaa	I take care of him/her
	kikanawenimaa	You take care of him/her
	okanawenimaan	He/she takes care of him/her
	kanawenimaakaanoo	He/she is taken care of

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise D

Joining Preverbs to Verbs

Writing Practice:

In this exercise, use the two lists below to write complete sentences which contain preverbs joined to verbs. Add appropriate nouns and particles to make complete sentences. Each sentence should have at least three or more words as shown in the first two examples given below. Note, the verbs listed below are not in order.

	Preverbs	Verbs
1.	kiiwe-	aancipo
2.	ishi-	ataawe
3.	ci-	ihkwaamaciwe
4.	kaa-	kihkinoohamaake
5.	ke-	kihtimi
6.	kinipi-	miihshitoone
7.	koci-	kiishikaa
8.	nehpici-	tipihkaa
9.	niipaa-	paawanii
10.	pwaahtawi-	pimohse
11.	tahso-	pimipahtoo
12.	watakami-	waahkaahike

1. Aanahpii ke-kiiwe-ihkwaamaciwet(c) naape?
2. Miihkanaank ishi-pimohse.
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. _____

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise E

Dialogues I

Read and Understand:

1. Read and understand the following dialogues. Concentrate on how preverbs are used in the sentences. Preverbs introduced in this lesson are in *italic type*. Also, some new words will be introduced to you throughout the dialogues. If you find any new words, underline them. New vocabulary and English translations are listed below and on the next page. Complete translations are on pages 105 and 106.

A. Kiwii-*kiiwe*-nipaa na ahpii ishkwaa-wiihsiniyan?
Kaawin, niwii-antawi-manihse pankii.
Kinantawentaan ina *ci*-wiicihinaan?
Kaawin, nika-kii-tootaan niinehta.
Wiintamawihshin kiishpin nantawentaman *ci*-wiicihinaan.
Miikwehc nitootem. (Ki)ka-pi-kanoonin ahpii takohshiniyaan.
Naanta (ki)ka-nantawenimin *ci*-wiicihihshiyan ahpii kiishkipoocikeyaan.
Amihiwe kwayahk. Keniin e-wii-anohkiiyaan.
Ahaaw, naake kaana tahsh (ki)ka-waapamin.

B. Ekwa miina nika-*koci*-maacaa.
Tahswaa ahko *kaa*-wii-maacaayaan maacii-kimiwan.
Aanti waa-kakwe-ishaayan?
Kaa-ishi-makohshenaaniwank ohsha *kaa*-kakwe-ishaayaan.
Kah! Kekonenini ahshankewaat(c)?
Piko kekoonini ahshankewak ihkitowak.
Siyaaken maawiin *nato*-miicimini ahshanketokwenak.
Ehe, amohshahi ehkitowaat(c).
Amiinahi! Keniin nitaa-kii-ishaa.
Cike, kiishpin ishaayan, pi-naasihkawihshin.
Ahaaw, pinamaa nika-kakwecimaa nitookimaam.
Awanen tahsh kitookimaam?
Niwiiciiwaakan.

New Vocabulary in Dialogue A:

Manihse	to get firewood.	Tootan	Do it.
Nimanihse	I get firewood.	Nitootaan	I do it.
Kimanihse	You get firewood.	Kitootaan	You do it.
Manihse	He/she gets firewood	Tootam	He/she does it.

Wiintamaw	Tell him/her.	Kanoosh	Call s.o., speak to s.o.
Wiintamawihshin	Tell me.	Kikanoonin	I call you.
Kiwiintamawin	I tell you.	Kanoonihshin	You call me.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Kiishkipoocike	Saw things.	Niinehta	Alone, me only.
Nikiishkipoocike	I saw things.	Kiinehta	Alone, you only.
Kikiishkipoocike	You saw things.	Wiinehta	Alone, he/she only.
Kiishkipoocike	He/she saws things.		

New Vocabulary in Dialogue B:

Ekwa (pc)	and, then, let's, now
Ekwa tahsh (pcs)	and so, and then, but then, let's then
Tahswaa (pc)	so many times, every time
Ahko (pc)	formerly, used to, usually, keep on
Ahko- (prev)	as far as, as long as, a certain length
Makohshe (vai)	feast, meals for special occasion
Amohshahi (pc)	that is so...., seemingly so
Amiinahi! (pc)	is that so, is that right!
Naasihkaw (vta)	get s.o., approach s.o., fetch s.o.
Pi-naasihkawihshin (2 on 1)	come and get me, come and approach me, come and fetch me

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write two mini-dialogues of your own no less then eight lines each using some of the preverbs introduced to you in this lesson.

Speaking Practice:

3. With a partner, practice reading and understanding the dialogues in #1 from the previous page until you feel comfortable with the material. Then do the same with the dialogues you wrote yourself.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 3

Transitive Inanimate Verbs in the Conjunct

When a Transitive Inanimate verb appears following a particle such as **Ami** it also must be in the Conjunct Order, as in the following example.

Amihimaa wenci-nihsitohtamaan.
'That is how I understand it.'

Transitive Inanimate verbs add the Conjunct suffixes in patterns similar to those of Animate Intransitive verbs. We can divide the TI verbs into three groups. We can compare one example of each of the three types of TI verbs, in Independent Order and the Conjunct Order.

	Independent	Conjunct
Group 1 I like it.	**ni**minwentaa**n**	minwentama**an**
Group 2 I bring it.	**ni**piitoo**n**	piitooy**aan**
Group 3 I eat it.	**ni**miicin	miiciy**aan**

Notice that in the Independent forms the ending form of all three groups is **n**. Group 1 verbs have a vowel **aa** before the ending, but **am** before the ending in the corresponding Conjunct Order form.

Group 2 verbs have the vowel **oo** before the ending in both the Independent and Conjunct Order forms. Similarly the Group 3 verbs have the vowel **i** before the ending in both the Independent and Conjunct forms.

There are many Group 1 and 2 TI verbs in Ojibwe but only a small number of Group 3 verbs.

Notice that Group 1 TI verbs have the same conjunct endings as are found with AI verbs that end in **m**. Similarly, Group 2 and 3 TI verbs have the same Conjunct ending as are found in AI verbs that end in a vowel.

Her are some examples of sentences that contain TI verbs in the Conjunct Order. The Conjunct suffixes is in **bold** type.

Aanti wenci-kihkentama**n**?
How do you know it?

Aan tahsh kaa-ishi-nihsitawinama**n**?
How did you recognize it?

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise F

Dialogues II

Read and Understand:

1. Read and understand the following dialogues. Once again, concentrate on how preverbs are used in the sentences. Preverbs introduced to you in this lesson are in *italic type*. Also, some new words will be introduced to you throughout the dialogues. If you find any new words, underline them. New vocabulary and English translations are listed below and on the next page. Complete translations are on page 106.

A. Ta-nehpici-sookihpwan *ishi*-naakwan *ke*-kiishikaak.
Aanti wenci-nihsitawinaman ke-ishi-kiishikaak?
Naahpic ohsha kii-maci-miskwaawaa wiipac kekiishep.
Aan tahsh *kaa-ishi*-nihsitawinaman miskwaawaa?
Kii-*niipaa*-miskwaawaa ekwa wiipac kii-aahte-naakwan.
Ami ahko ehkitowaahpan kihci-ayahaak weshkac.
Kiishpin *kaa-niipaa*-miskwaawaak wiipac kekiishepaa ekwa ketahtawen *kaa*-aahte-naakwank, kape-kiishikaa ta-maci-kiishikaa.
Amiicika tahsh ihi maamahkaac.
Amoosha tahsh ahiko tepwe ehkihkipan aan *kaa-ishi*-nihsitawinaakwank miskwaawaa.
Noonkom *kaa*-kiishikaak, kaawin ihiwe ihkinsinoon.

B. Aanahpii ta-pipoon eshinaman?
Ta-*pwaahtawi*-pipoon nitishinaan.
Aanti wenci-nihsitawinaman aanahpii *ke*-pipoonk?
Tahso-kiishikaa nitahshawaapamaak wehwewak
ci-pimihsewaat(c) shaawanonk *kaa*-ishihsewaat(c) *kaa*-ani-pipoonk.
Kaawin mahshi niwaapamaahsiik.
Amihimaa wenci-kihkentamaan *ci-pwaahtawi*-pipoonk.
Kiishpin wiipac *kaa*-pimihsewaat(c) wehwewak, wiipac ta-pipoon ahko ihkitoopaniik weshkaci-anihshininiwak.
Kitepwehtaan ina tahsh?
Ehe, amohsha piko tepwe ahko e-ishi-kihkentamaan e-ihkihk.

New Vocabulary in Dialogue A:

Naakwan (vii)	be visible, show up. (pi-naakwan 'be seen coming this way')
Nihsitawinan (vti)	recognize s.t. by sight, realize s.t.
Ninihsitawinaan.	I recognize it. I realize it.
Kinihsitawinaan.	You recognize it. You realize it.
Onihsitawinaan.	He/she recognizes it. He/she realizes it.
Kekishep (pc)	this morning past
Miskwaawaa (vii)	be a red-coloured sky (at dawn or sunset)
Maci-miskwaawaa	be a red-coloured sky that predicts bad weather
Mino-miskwaawaa	be a red-coloured sky that predicts good weather

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Aahte- (prev)	fade away, disappear
Ami ahko (pc)	use to, usually
Ihkito (vai)	speak so, say a certain thing
Ami ahko ehkitowaahpan (phrase)	That's what they used to say.
Kihci-ayahaa -k (na)	elder
Kekishepaa (pc)	this morning (past)
Ketahtawen (pc)	all of a sudden, suddenly
Kape- (pre)	all the way, all the time, through
Kape-kiishikaa (pc)	all day
Maci- (pre)	bad
Maci-kiishikaa (vii)	be a bad day (weather)
Amiicika tahsh ihi (expression)	it is so...
Maamahkaac (pc)	amazing, astounding, wonderful
Amiicika tahsh ihi maamahkaac	It is so amazing
Amohsha tahsh iko (expression)	That is so....
Amohsha tahsh iko tepwe	That is so true
Ihkin (vii)	happen a certain way, be a certain problem
ahko ehkihkipan	it used to happen
Kaawin ihiwe ihkinsinoon.	Does not happen that way.

New Vocabulary in Dialogue B:

Ishinan (vti)	look at s.t. which looks so, see s.t. a certain way
Nitishinaan.	I see it in acertain way. That's the way I see it.
Aanahpii ta-pipoon eshinaman?	When do you see being winter?
Tahso-kiishikaa (pc)	every day
Ahshawaapi (vai)	be on the lookout, lie in wait
Ahshawaapam	be on the lookout for s.o.
Nitahshawaapamaak	I am on the lookout for them.
Wehwew -ak (na)	snow goose, white goose
Pimihse (vai)	fly along, fly by (of a bird)
Ishihse (vai)	fly in a certain direction
Kaawiin mahshi.	Not yet.
Amihimaa (pc)	certain location, certain way of
Kihkentan (vti)	know s.t., find s.t. out
Wenci- (prev)	what purpose, why/how/where is it so
Amihimaa wenci-kihkentamaan ci-pwaahtawi-pipoonk.	That's where/how I know that the winter will be late.
Wiipac ta-pipoon ahko ihkitoopaniik.	They use to say the winter will come early.
Weshkaci-anihshininiwak.	Old timers, elders
Kitepwehtaan ina tahsh?	So, do you believe it?
E-ishi-kihkentamaan.	That's what I know; that's the way I know
E-ihkihk.	That's the way it happened.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write two mini-dialogues of your own no less then eight lines each using some of the preverbs introduced to you in this lesson.

Speaking Practice:

3. With a partner, practice reading and understanding the dialogues in #1 from page 42 until you feel comfortable with the material. Then do the same with the dialogues you wrote yourself.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise G

Dialogues III

Read and Understand:

1. Once again, concentrate on how preverbs are used in the sentences. Preverbs introduced to you in this lesson are in *italic type*. Also, some new words will be introduced to you throughout the dialogues. If you find any new words, underline them. New vocabulary and English translations are listed below. Complete translations are on page 106.

Nihtaa-*watakami*-aahkosi na kitaanihs?
Naahpic nihtaa-*watakami*-aahkosi mekwaa tahkaayaa.
Mashkihkiini ina ahko otaana-aapacihtoon?
Ehe, mashkihkiiwinini ohsha ahko otaana-miinaan mashkihkiini.
Okinipi-caakinaan ohsha tahsh ahko. Mooshak ahko onsaam e-aapacihtoot(c).
Naanta kaana onsaam mishtahi otaapacihtoon *kaa*-onci-aahkosit(c).
Amihi eshkam eshihsek kiishpin onsaam mishtahi *kaa*-aapatank mashkihki, aanciko kitaahkos.

New Vocabulary:

Naahpic (pc)	very, to a high degree
Mekwaa (pc)	while, during, at the time
Mekwaa tahkaayaa.	During cold weather
Mashkihki (ni)	medicine, drug
Aapacihtoon (vti2)	use s.t.
Otaana-aapacihtoon (pv + vti)	He/she uses it anyway.
Mashkihkiiwinini (na)	medicine person, doctor
aana- (pv)	attempt, effort, anyway, anyhow
Miish (vta)	give it to him
nimiinaa	I give (it) to him.
kimiinaa	you give (it) to him.
omiinaan	he/she gives (it) to him.
Otaana-miinaan (pv + vta)	He/she gives (it) to him anyway.
Caakinan (vti)	use it up
nicaakinaan	I use it up
kicaakinaan	you use it up
ocaakinaan	he/she uses it up
Ahko (pc)	usually, often
Naanta (pc)	maybe, perhaps, in some way
Kaana (pc)	is it possible that, probably
Naanta kaana.	It is possible, probably.
Amihi (pc)	that is, final
Eshkam (pc)	sometimes
Ishihse (vii)	it happens so, continues so, runs so, the time is
Aapatan (vii)	it is useful, usable
Aanciko (pc)	regardless, anyway

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write one dialogue of your own at least eight lines using some preverbs introduced to you in this lesson.

Speaking Practice:

3. With a partner, practice reading and understand the dialogue in #1 from the previous page until you feel comfortable with the material. Then do the same with the dialogue you wrote yourself.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise H

Learning the Language

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, we will go back to Exercise E, Section 1, Dialogue A on page 39. We will take some time to review and study the meaning of each new word, phrase and sentence and give some additional examples as shown below. Once again, concentrate on the meaning of the sentence. Translations are on page 107.

This is the first sentence from dialogue A.

1. a) Kiwii-kiiwe-nipaa na ahpii ishkwaa-wiihsiniyan?

Additional Sentences:

b) Ahpii ishkwaa-wiihsiniyaan, niwii-kiiwe-nipaa.
c) Wii-kiiwe-anohkii ahpii ishkwaa-anwepit(c).

This is the second sentence from dialogue A.

2. a) Kaawin, niwii-antawi-manihse pankii.

Additional Sentences:

b) Kiwii-antawi-manihse ina waapank?
c) Antawi-anohkii na Soosan?
or
Soosan na antawi-anohkii?

This is the third sentence from dialogue A.

3. a) Kinantawentaan ina ci-wiicihinaan?

Additional Sentences:

b) Ninantawentaan ci-wiicihihshiyan.
c) Ta-nantawentam ci-wiicihaat(c).

This is the fourth sentence from dialogue A.

4. a) Kaawin, nika-kii-tootaan niinehta.

Additional Sentences:

b) Kehcinaac ina ka-kii-tootaan kiinehta?
c) Ehe, nika-kii-tootam niinhta.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

This is the fifth sentence from dialogue A.

5. a) Wiintamawihshin kiishpin nantawentaman ci-wiicihinaan.

Additional Sentences:

b) Wiintamawihshin kiishpin nantawentaman ci-wiiciiwinaan.
c) Wiintamawihshin kiishpin nantawentank ci-wiicihak.

This is the sixth sentence from dialogue A.

6. a) Miikwehc nitootem. (Ki)ka-pi-kanoonin ahpii takohshiniyaan.

Additional Sentences:

b) Nitootem, pi-kanoonihshin ahpii takohshiniyan.
c) Otooteman oka-kanoonaan ahpii takohshink.

This is the seventh sentence from dialogue A.

7. a) Amihiwe kwayahk. Keniin e-wii-anohkiiyaan.

Additional Sentences:

b) Amihiwe kwayahk kekiin kaa-wii-anohkiiyan.
c) Amihiwe kwayahk kewiin kaa-wii-anohkiit(c).

This is the eighth sentence from dialogue A.

8. a) Ahaaw, naake kaana tahsh (ki)ka-waapamin.

Additional Sentences:

b) Ahaaw, naake kaana tahsh (ki)ka-maacaamin.
c) Ahaaw, naake kaana tahsh nika-wiihsinimin.

Writing Practice:

Now, write one sentence of your own from each section. There are eight sections.

Speaking Practice:

Work with a partner for practice reading and understanding the sentences until you feel comfortable with the material. Then do the same with the sentences you wrote yourself.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 3

Exercise I

Using the Language

Read and Understand:

1. Once again, we will go back to Exercise E, Section 1, Dialogue B on page 39. We will take some time to review and study the meaning of each new word, phrase and sentence and give some additional examples as shown below. Once again, concentrate on the meaning of the sentence. Translations are on pages 107 and 108.

This is the first sentence from dialogue B.

1. a) Ekwa miina nika-koci-maacaa.

Additional Sentences:

b) Aanahpii miina ke-koci-maacaayan?
c) Aasha na miina wii-koci-maacaa?

This is the second sentence from dialogue B.

2. a) Tahswaa ahko kaa-wii-maacaayaan maacii-kimiwan.

Additional Sentences:

b) Aan tahswaa kaa-niimiyan onaako?
c) Aan tahswaa kaa-nikamot(c) kikosihs?

This is the third sentence from dialogue B.

3. a) Aanti waa-kakwe-ishaayan?

Additional Sentences:

b) Kaa-ishi-niiminaaniwank niwii-kakwe-ishaa.
c) Aanti waa-kakwe-ishaat(c)?

This is the fourth sentence from dialogue B.

4. a) Kaa-ishi-makohshenaaniwank ohsha kaa-kakwe-ishaayaan.

Additional Sentences:

b) Kikakwe-ishaa na kaa-ishi-makohshaaniwank?
c) Kaa-ishi-makohshenaaniwaninik ohsha kaa-kakwe-ishaat(c).

Note: Kaa-ishi-makohshenaaniwank and **kaa-ishi-makohaaniwank** are slightly two different pronunciations but the meanings are the same.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

This is the fifth sentence from dialogue B.

5. a) Kah! Kekonenini ahshankewaat(c)?

Additional Sentences:

b) Kah! Kekonen ahshankeyan?
c) Kah! Kekonenini ahshanket(c)?

This is the sixth sentence from dialogue B.

6. a) Piko kekoonini ashankewak ihkitowak.

Additional Sentences:

b) Piko kekoon nitahshanke ihkito.
c) Piko na kekoon kitahshanke?

This is the seventh sentence from dialogue B.

7. a) Nato-miicimini maawiin siyaaken kaye ahshanketokwenak.

Additional Sentences:

b) Siyaaken maawiin kekiin kiminohpitaanaatok nato-miicim.
c) Soosan na ahshanke nato-miicimini.

This is the eighth sentence from dialogue B.

8. a) Ehe, amohshahi ehkitowaat(c).

Additional Sentences:

b) Ehe, amohshahi keniin ehkitoyaan.
c) Ehe, amohshahi waa-tootamaan.

This is the ninth sentence from dialogue B.

9. a) Amiinahi! Keniin nitaa-kii-ishaa.

Additional Sentences:

b) Amiinahi kekiin e-wii-maacaayan?
c) Amiinahi tepwe?

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

This is the tenth sentence from dialogue B.

10. a) Cike, kiishpin ishaayan pi-naasihkawihshin.

Additional Sentences:

b) Cikemaa, kiishpin ishaayan, keniin nika-ishaa.
c) Cike, kekiin kehcinaac piishaan. (Ki)ka-pi-naasihkawin.

This is the eleventh sentence from dialogue B.

11. a) Ahaaw, pinamaa nika-kakwecimaa nitookimaam.

Additional Sentences:

b) Pinamaa na kiwii-kakwecimaa kitookimaam?
c) Otookimaaman na pinamaa owii-kakwecimaan?

This is the twelfth sentence from the dialogue B.

12. a) Awanen tahsh kitookimaam? Niwiiciiwaakan.

Additional Sentences:

b) Kitookimaam na kahkina kekoonini otipentaan?
c) Awanenan wiiciiwaat(c) kitookimaam?

Writing Practice:

Now, write one sentence of your own from each section. There are twelve sections.

Speaking Practice:

Work with a partner for practice reading and understanding the sentences until you feel comfortable with the material. Then do the same with the sentences you wrote yourself.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise J

Review Test

Preverbs:

1. This review test has two sections. Before you begin, review the spelling and meanings of the words very carefully. When you are ready, translate them into English. Remember, try to answer without looking at your notes. Translations are on page 108.

Severn Ojibwe	Translation
1. kiiwe-	
2. ishi-	
3. ci-	
4. kaa-	
5. ke-	
6. kinipi-	
7. koci-	
8. nato-	
9. naaci-	
10. nehpici-	
11. niipaa-	
12. pwaahtawi-	
13. tahso-	
14. watakami-	

Note: Check your translations when you have finished.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

2. In this section, before you begin, review the meanings of the words very carefully. When you are ready, translate them into Severn Ojibwe. Translations are on page 109.

English	Severn Ojibwe
1. returning, going back	
2. thus; so, there, in the certain way	
3. to, that, will, would, could, should	
4. the one who; the one that:	
5. will, would, should, could: FUTURE	
6. fast	
7. try to do	
8. real, natural, plain	
9. get, fetch, go for	
10. permanently, not knowing when to quit	
11. at night, happening at night, nocturnal	
12. delayed, late	
13. so many, so much, a certain number	
14. easily	

Note: Check your translations when you have finished.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise A

Additional Sentences I

Read and Understand:

1. In this lesson, we will continue to review dialogues from the previous lesson. Let's go back to lesson 3, Exercise F, Section 1, Dialogue A on page 42.

   Once again, concentrate on how preverbs are used in each sentence. Preverbs used throughout the sentences will be in *italic* type. Also, some new words will be introduced to you throughout the sentences. If you find any new words, underline them. English translations can be found in the translation section. Translations are on page 110.

   This is the first sentence from dialogue A.

1. a) *Ta-nehpici*-sookipwan *ishi*-naakwan *ke*-kiishikaak.

   Additional Sentences:

   b) Kiishpin *nehpici*-kimiwank, kaawin *nika*-maacaahsiin.

   c) Kiishpin *nehpici*-poonanohkiiyan, keniin *nika*-poonanohkii.

   This is the second sentence from dialogue A.

2. a) Aanti *wenci*-nihsitawinaman aan *ke-ishi*-kiishikaak?

   Additional Sentences:

   b) Kinihsitawinaan ina aan *ke-ishi*-kiishikaak waapank?

   c) Aanti *waa-ishi*-ahtooyan kiciimaan?

   This is the third sentence from dialogue A.

3. a) Naahpic ohsha *kii-maci*-miskwaawaa wiipac kekishep.

   Additional Sentences:

   b) Naahpic *kii-mino*-naakwan miskwaawaa kekishep.

   c) Naahpic niminwentaan *e*-waapantamaan miskwaawaa.

   This is the fourth sentence from dialogue A.

4. a) Aan tahsh *kaa-ishi*-nihsitawinaman miskwaawaa?

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Additional Sentences:

b) *Kikii*-kanawaapantaan ina miskwaawaa kekishep?

c) *Kii-maci*-miskwaawaa wiipac kekishep.

This is the fifth sentence from dialogue A.

5. a) *Kii-niipaa*-miskwaawaa ekwa wiipac *kii-aahte*-naakwan.

Additional Sentences:

b) Kiishpin *kaa-niipaa*-miskwaawaak, kehcinaac *ta-maci*-kiishikaa.

c) Kiishpin miskwaawaa ekwa wiipac *kaa-aahte*-naakwank, kehcinaac *ta-maci*-kiishikaa.

This is the sixth sentence from dialogue A.

6. a) Ami ahko ehkitowaahpan *kihci*-ayahaak weshkac.

Additional Sentences:

b) Weshkac, *kihci*-ayahaak *okii*-minwentaanaawaa e-kanawaapantamowaat(c) miskwaawaani.

c) Ami ahko *eshi*-naakwank mishkwaawaa kiishpin *kaa-wii-maci*-kiishikaak.

This is the seventh sentence from dialogue A.

7. a) Kiishpin *kaa-niipaa*-miskwaawaak wiipac kekishepaa ekwa ketahtawen *kaa-aahte*-naakwank, *kape*-kiishikaa ta-maci-kiishikaa.

Additional Sentences:

b) Kiishpin *kaa-niipaa*-miskwaawaak ekwa tahsh wiipac *kaa-aahte*-naakwank, kehcinaac wiipac ta-*maci*-kiishikaa.

c) Kikii-waapantaan ina *kaa-kii-niipaa*-miskwaawaak wiipac kekishepaa?

This is the eighth sentence from dialogue A.

8. a) Amiicika tahsh ihi maamahkaac.

Additional Sentences:

b) Amiicika tahsh ihi *e*-aanimisiyan.

c) Amiicika tahsh ihi *e-mino*-naakosit(c).

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

This is the ninth sentence from dialogue A.

9. a) Amohsha tahsh iko tepwe ahko ehkihkipan aan *kaa-ishi*-nihsitawinaakwank miskwaawaa.

Additional Sentences:

b) *Kaa-ishi*-nihsitawinaakwank miskwaawaa, amohsha ahko tepwe ehkihkipan.

c) *Kaa-ishi*-miskwaawaak, amihiwe *ke-ishi*-kiishikaak.

This is the tenth sentence from dialogue A.

10. a) Noonkom *kaa*-kiishikaak, kaawin ihiwe ihkinsinoon.

Additional Sentences:

b) Noonkom *kaa*-kiishikaak, kaawin wiihkaa ihiwe ishiwepansinoon.

c) Noonkom kaawin wiihkaa ihiwe *kitishi*-waapantansiimin *ci*-ishiwepank.

Writing Practice:

2. For writing practice, write one sentence of your own, following the sentence patterns reviewed above. Try to use the preverbs in these patterns. There are ten sentence patterns in all.

Speaking Practice:

3. For practice reading and understanding, work with a partner taking turns until you completely understand the material. Then do the same with the sentences you wrote yourself.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise B

Additional Sentences II

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise we will review sentences from lesson 3; Exercise F; section 1; dialogue B on page 42. Once again, concentrate on how preverbs are used in each sentence. Preverbs used through out the sentence will be in *italic type*. Also, some new words will be introduced to you through out the sentences. If you find any new words, underline them. English translations can be found in the translation section. Translations are on page 111.

This is the first sentence from dialogue B.

1. a) Aanahpii *ta*-pipoon eshinaman?

Additional Sentences:

b) Wiipac ina *ta*-pipoon kitinentaan?

c) Aasha ina kekaat *ta*-niipin kitishinaan?

This is the second sentence from dialogue B.

2. a) *Ta-pwaahtawi*-pipoon nitishinaan.

Additional Sentences:

b) *Ta-pwaahtawi*-pipoon nitinentaan.

c) *Nika-pwaahtawi*-nipaa *ani*-tipihkaak.

This is the third sentence from dialogue B.

3. a) Aanti wenci-nihsitawinaman aanahpii *ke*-pipoonk?

Additional Sentences:

b) Aanahpii wenci-kihkentaman aasha wiipac *ci*-pipoonk?

c) Aanahpii wenci-kihkentaman *e*-aahkosiyan?

This is the fourth sentence from dialogue B.

4 a) *Tahso*-kiishikaa nitahshawaapamaak wehwewak ci-pimihsewaat(c).

Additional Sentences:

b) *Tahso*-kiishikaa nipiihaak nitootemak *ci*-pi-kiiwitewaat(c).

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

c) *Tahso*-kiishikaa kipiihin *ci*-piishaayan.

This is the fifth sentence from dialogue B.

5. a) Shaawanonk *kaa*-ishihsewaat(c) kaa-*ani*-pipooninik.

Additional Sentences:

b) Shaawanonk ina kitishaa ahpii *ani*-pipoonk?

c) Shaawanonk ina oncinowe?

This is the sixth sentence from dialogue B.

6. a) Kaawin mahshi niwaapamaahsiik.

Additional Sentences:

b) Ikaawin mahshi maacaan!

c) Kaawin mahshi nikiishihtoohsiin.

This is the seventh sentence from dialogue B.

7. a) Amihimaa *wenci*-kihkentamaan *ci-pwaahtawi*-pipoonk.

Additional Sentences:

b) Amihimaa *wenci*-kihkentamaan *ci-pwaahtawi*-takohshink.

c) Amihimaa keniin wenci-wiihsiniyaan.

This is the eighth sentence from dialogue B.

8. a) Kiishpin wiipac *kaa*-pimihsewaat(c) wehwewak, wiipac *ta*-pipoon ahko ihkitoopaniik *weshkaci*-anihshinininiwak.

Additional Sentences:

b) Kiishpin wiipac *kaa*-maaciihsewaat(c) shiihshiipak wiipac *ta*-aahkwatin ahko ihkitoopaniik *weshkaci*-anihshinininiwak.

c) Kiishpin wiipac *kaa*-pipoonk, miishkoc wiipac *ta*-niipin ahko ihkitoopaniik *weshkaci*-anihshinininiwak.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

This is the ninth sentence from dialogue B.

9. a) Kitepwehtaan ina tahsh?

Additional Sentences:

b) Kitepwehtaan ina ihiwe aacimowin?

c) Kaawin nitepwehtansiin ohowe aacimowin?

This is the tenth sentence from dialogue B.

10. a) Ehe, amohsha piko tepwe ahko *e-ishi*-kihkentamaan e-ihkihk.

Additional Sentences:

b) Aan tahsh ahko kiin *e-ishi*-waapantaman *e*-ihkihk?

c) Weshkac ahko amihi tepwe eihkihkipan.

Writing Practice:

2. For writing practice, write one sentence of your own, following the sentence patterns reviewed above. Try to use the preverbs in these patterns. There are ten sentence patterns in all.

Speaking Practice:

3. For practice reading and understanding, work with a partner taking turns until you completely understand the material. Then do the same with the sentences you wrote yourself.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise C

Additional Sentences III

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise we will review sentences from lesson 3; Exercise G; section 1; dialogue A on page 45. Once again, concentrate on how preverbs are used in each sentence. Preverbs used throughout the sentences will be in *italic type*. Also, some new words will be introduced to you throughout the sentences. If you find any new words, underline them. English translations can be found in the translation section. Translations are on page 112.

This is the first sentence from dialogue A.

1. a) *Nihtaa-watakami*-aahkosi na kitaanihs?

Additional Sentences:

b) *Ninihtaa-watakami*-aahkos *kaa*-tahkaayaanik.

c) Naahpic *nihtaa-watakami*-kishiwaasi nitayihsh.

This is the second sentence from dialogue A.

2. a) Naahpic *nihtaa-watakami*-aahkosi *mekwaa* tahkaayaa.

Additional Sentences:

b) Naahpic *ninihtaa-watakami*-kawac *mekwaa* pipoon.

c) *Kinihtaa-watakami*-ishkii ina kekoon *kaa*-tootaman?

This is the third sentence from dialogue A.

3. a) Mashkihkiini ina ahko *otaana*-aapacihtoon?

Additional Sentences:

b) Aani minikohk mashkihki aapacihtooyan?

c) Onsaam mishtahi nitaapacihtoon mashkihki nitinentaan.

This is the fourth sentence from dialogue A.

4. a) Ehe, mashkihkiiwinini ohsha ahko *otaana*-miinaan mashkihkiini.

Additional Sentences:

b) Ehe, mashkihkiiwinini ohsha kewiin aahkosi.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

c) Mashkihkiiwihkwe tahsh wiin, kewiin ina aahkosi?

This is the fifth sentence from dialogue A.

5. a) *Okinipi*-caakinaan ohsha tahsh ahko.

Additional Sentences:

b) *Nikinipi*-caakinaa shooniyaan.

c) Kekiin na ahko *kikinipi*-caakinaa shooniyaan?

This is the sixth sentence from dialogue A.

6. a) Mooshak otahko onsaam *e*-aapacihtoot(c).

Additional Sentences:

b) Mooshak ina kitaapacihtoon mashkihki?

c) Kaawin wiihkaa nitaapacihtoohsiin mashkihki.

This is the seventh sentence from dialogue A.

7. a) Naanta kaana onsaam mishtahi otaapacihtoon *kaa-onci*-aahkosit(c).

Additional Sentences:

b) Onsaam kaana mishtahi kitaapacihtoon mashkihki *kaa-onci*-aahkosiyan.

c) Onsaam maawiin mishtahi kitootaahpinaanaatok mashkihki *kaa-onci-wii*-nipaayan.

This is the eighth sentence from dialogue A.

8. a) Amihi eshkam eshihsek kiishpin onsaam mishtahi *kaa*-aapatank mashkihki, aanciko kitaahkos.

Additional Sentences:

b) Eshkam keniin pankii nitaapacihtoon mashkihki.

c) Eshkam ishihse kiishpin onsaam mishtahi, kaa-aapatank mashkihki, aanciko aahkosinaaniwan.

Writing Practice:

2. For writing practice, write one sentence of your own, following the sentence patterns reviewed above. Try to use the preverbs in these patterns. There are eight sentence patterns in all.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Speaking Practice:

3. For practice reading and understanding, work with a partner taking turns until you completely understand the material. Then do the same with the sentences you wrote yourself.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise D

Review the New Words

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise once again, we will go back to lesson 3; Exercise E; dialogue A on page 39 to review the new words. The list contains the new words introduced in dialogue A. The examples are given in sentence form. Concentrate on and understand each word on how its used in each sentence. New words used throughout the sentences will be in *italic type*. Translations are on page 113.

manihse (vai)	tootan (vti)
wiintamawihshin (vta) (2 on 1)	kanoosh (vta) (2 on 3)
kiishkipoocike (vai)	niinehta (pr)

1. a) Waapank ina (ki)ka-antawi-*manihse*?
   b) Wiicihihshin e-wii-*manihseyaan*.
   c) Kitaataa na kewiin wii-*manihse*.

2. a) *Wiintamawihshin* ahpii kimaamaa takohshink.
   b) *Wiintamawihshin* ahpii ishkwaa-anohkiiyan.
   c) *Wiintamawihshin* kiishpin nantawenimat(c) shooniyaan.

3. a) Nikii-*kiishkipoocike* ahpii kaa-ishkwaa-manihseyaan.
   b) Kekiin na kiwii-*kiishkipoocike*?
   c) Ahpii ishkwaa-nipaayaan keniin nika-*kiishkipoocike*.

4. a) Ikaawin wiihkaa miina *tootan*!
   b) Kiishpin miina *tootaman*, kaawin wiihkaa miina ka-ayamihinsinoon!
   c) Kwayahk *tootan*!

5. a) *Kanoosh* kiwiiciiwaakan mwaye-kiiweyan.
   b) *Kanoosh* kitaanihs ahpii wii-maacaayan.
   c) Ka-*kanoonin* ahpii nantaweniminaan.

6. a) *Niinehta* nika-kiiwe awahsiwaapank.
   b) *Kiinehta* na kika-maacaa ahpii ishkwaa-nipaayan?
   c) *Wiinehta* ta-nikamo ahpii ishkwaa-wiihsinit(c).

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write six (6) sentences of your own using each word from the list below.

manihse	(vai)	tootan	(vti)
wiintamawihshin	(vta) (2 on 1)	kanoosh	(vta) (2 on 3)
kiishkipoocike	(vai)	niinehta	(pr)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Speaking Practice:

3. For practice reading and understanding, work with a partner taking turns saying the sentences in this exercise out loud until you completely understand the material. Then, do the same with the sentences you wrote yourself.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise E

Continuation of Review: New Words

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, once again, we will go back to Lesson 3; Exercise E; Dialogue B on page 39 to review the new words. The list below contains the new words introduced in dialogue B. The examples are given in sentence form. Concentrate and understand each word how its used in each sentence. New words used throughout the sentences will be in *italic type*. Translations are on page 114.

ekwa	(pc)	makohshe	(vai)
ekwa tahsh	(pcs)	amohshahi	(pc)
tahswaa	(pc)	amiinahi	(pc)
ahko	(pc)	naasihkaw	(vta) (2 on 3)
ahko-	(prev)	pi-naasihkawihshin	(vta) (2 on 1)

1. a) Menii *ekwa* Saanii ta-manihsewak waapank.
   b) *Ekwa* wiipac ishkwaa-wiihsinin aasha wiipac ka-maacaa!

2. a) Nika-kiiwe *ekwa tahsh* nika-wiihsin.
   b) Nika-wiihsin *ekwa tahsh* nika-nipaa.

3. a) *Tahswaa* kaa-wii-nipaayaan, awiya nitamacihik.
   b) *Tahswaa* kaa-kanooninaan, kaawin kitayapihsiin.

4. a) Mooshak *ahko* nitishaa kaa-ishi-niiminaaniwank.
   b) Kekiin ina *ahko* ihimaa kitishi-taanaapan?

5. a) Waahsa ahko-naakwan pimihsewin.
   b) Kiishpin kaa-mino-kiishikaak, waahsa ahko-naakwan.

6. a) Kekiin ina kika-*makohshe* waapank?
   b) Aanahpii miina waa-*makohsheyan*?

7. a) *Amohshahi ekaa* ci-kii-*tootamaan.*
   b) *Amohshahi* iitok *ekaa* ci-kii-piishaayaan noonkom kaa-kiishikaak.

8. a) *Amiinahi* ekaa ci-kii-piishaayan noonkom kaa-kiishaak?
   b) *Amiinahi* kekiin e-aahkosiyan?

9. a) *Naasihkaw* kitoohaan. Ta-toohaaniwan OR toohetaa.
   b) *Naasihkaw* kitootaapan. Ta-papaamipisonaaniwan OR papaamipisotaa.

10. a) *Pi-naasihkawihshin* ahpii ani-maacaayan.
    b) Ahpii ani-kiiweyan, aahti *pi-naasihkawihshin.*

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write ten (10) sentences of your own using each word from the list below.

ekwa	(pc)	makohshe	(vai)
ekwa tahsh	(pcs)	amohshahi	(pc)
tahswaa	(pc)	amii na hi	(pc)
ahko	(pc)	naasihkaw	(vta) (2 on 3)
ahko-	(prev)	pi-naasihkawihshin	(vta) (2 on 1)

Speaking Practice:

3. For practice reading and understanding. work with a partner taking turns saying sentences out loud until you completely understand the material. Then do the same with the sentences you wrote yourself.

Spelling Notes:

In Severn Ojibwe sometimes the short vowel **o** is pronounced as **i** after the consonants **s**, **t**, or **n**. For example, listen to the following words:

Word	**Sounds like**
pimipiso	pimipisi
mintito	mintiti

Listen carefully to your instructor's pronunciation and follow what he says. In this book we always write such words with an **o** even if the pronunciation varies.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise F

Using the New Words in Sentences

Read and Understand:

1. Once again, let's go back to Lesson 3; Exercise F; Dialogue A on page 42 to review the new words. The list below contains some new words introduced in dialogue A. The examples are given in sentence form below. Concentrate on understanding how each word is used. New words used throughout the sentences will be in *italic type*. Translations are on page 115.

naakwan	(vii)	ketahtawen	(pc)
nihsitawinan	(vti)	kape-	(pre)
kekishep	(pc)	maci-	(pre)
miskwaawaa	(vii)	maamahkaac	(pc)
aahte-	(prev)	ihkin	(vii)
ami ahko	(pc)	ihkito	(vai)

1. a) *Mino-naakwan* kiwaahkaahikan.
   b) *Kehte-naakwan* kiciimaan.

2. a) *Kinihsitawinaan* ina ihiwe masinahikan?
   b) *Kinihsitawinaan* ina aanti kaa-ishi-taayan?

3. a) Wiipac nikii-wanishkaa *kekishep*.
   b) Kekonen kaa-miiciyan *kekishep*?

4. a) Kii-*miskwaawaa* kekishepaa.
   b) Kikii-waapantaan ina *miskwaawaa* onaako kekishepaa.

   Note: **Kekishep** and **kekishepaa** means the same.
   "This morning (past)"
   Kekishipaayaa means "It is morning."
   Kekishepaayaak means "(That) it is morning." [Conjunct form of previous sentence.]

5. a) Wiipac *kii-aahte-miskwaawaa kekishep*.
   b) *Ekwa* ta-maacaaniwan, aasha *aahte-kimiwan*.

6. a) *Ami ahko* keniin enentamaan, aasha kekaat ta-pipoon.
   b) *Ami ahko* keniin eshi-waapantamaan *e-ihkihk*.

7. a) Mekwaac kii-nipaayaan, *ketahtawen* nikayaashim kii-takohshin.
   b) Mekwaac kii-anohkiiyaan, *ketahtawen* nikii-aahkos.

8. a) *Kape-kiishikaa* ina kika-inent waapank?
   b) *Kape-tipihkaa* ina kikii-pimohse tipihkonk?

9. a) Kehcinaac ta-*maci-kiishikaa ishi-naakwan* waapank.
   b) Mooshak *maci-ayaa*.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

10. a) *Maamahkaac* nitinentaan ekaa mahshi kaa-takohshink.
    b) *Maamahkaac* ekaa mahshi kaa-pipoonk.

11. a) *Maamahkaac ihkin* ohowe mekwaac.
    b) *Maamahkaac* ina kekiin kitinentaan *kaa-ihkink.*

12. a) Aan *ehkitot(c)?* Kaawin nika-piishaahsiin *ihkito.*
    b) Kekiin *ihkiton* otinaan.

Note: Otinaan means "he says to him/her"
Nitinaa means "I say to him/her"
Kitinaa means "you say to him/her"

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write twelve (12) sentences of your own using the words on the list below.

naakwan	(vii)	ketahtawen	(pc)
ninihsitawinaan	(vti)	kape-	(pre)
kekishep	(pc)	maci-	(pre)
miskwaawaa	(vii)	maamahkaac	(pc)
aahte-	(prev)	ihkin	(vii)
ami ahko	(pc)	ihkito	(vai)

Speaking Practice:

3. For practice reading and understanding work with a partner taking turns saying the sentences in this section out loud until you completely understand the material. Then do the same with the sentences you wrote yourself.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise G

Studying New Words

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, once again, we will go back to Lesson 3; Exercise F; Dialogue B on page 42 to review the new words. The list below contains some new words introduced from dialogue B. The examples are given in sentence form. Concentrate on understanding how each word is used in each sentence. New words will be in *italic type*. Translations are on pages 116 and 117.

tahso-kiishikaa	(pc + vii)	amihimaa	(pc)
nitishinaan	(vti)	kihkentan	(vti)
ahshawaapi	(vai)	wenci-	(prev)
wehwew	(na)	weshkaci-	(pv)
pimihse	(vai)	kitepwehtaan	(vti)
ishihse	(vai)	e-ishi-kihkentamaan	(phrase)
kaawin mahshi	(2 pcs)	e-ihkihk	(phrase)

1. a) *Tahso-kiishikaa* kipiihin.
   b) *Tahso-kiishikaa maci-kiishikaa.*

2. a) Aasha kekaat ta-kimiwan *nitishinaan.*
   b) Aanahpii ke-ishkwaa-kimiwank *eshinaman*?

3. a) Kiyaapic ina Menii *ahshawaapi*?
   b) Kekiin na (ki)ka-*ahshawaap* ani-tipihkaak?

4. a) Nikii-waapamaa *wehwew* e-pimihset(c) onaako.
   b) Kekiin na pankii kiwii-amwaa *wehwe*?

5. a) Kikii-waapamaak na nihkak kaa-*pimihsewaat(c) kekishep*?
   b) *Kitahshawaapamaak* na shiihshiipak ci-pimihsewaat(c)?

6. a) Peshik aapihta *ishihse.*
   b) Mooshak ihiwe *ishihse* ohowe mekwaac.

7. a) *Kaawin mahshi* niwii-wiihsinihsiin.
   b) Kaawin, *kaawin mahshi* niwaapamaahsiin.

8. a) *Amihimaa* ke-*ahkoshkaayaan* waapank.
   b) *Amihimaa* keniin ke-ishi-taayaan.

9. a) Aasha na *kikihkentaan* aanahpii ke-maacaayan?
   b) *Kikihkentaan* na aanahpii ke-takohshink?

10. a) Aanti *wenci-kihkentaman* wiipac ci-maci-kiishikaak?
    b) Aanahpii *wenci-kihkentaman* e-aahkosiyan?

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

11. a) *Weshkaci-anihshininiwak,* mooshak kii-kihci-anohkiiwak.
    b) *Weshkaci-ishi*-pimaatisiwin.

12. a) *Kitepwehtaan* ina kahkina kekoon *kaa-ishi*-noontaman?
    b) Ehe, *nitepwehtaan* kahkina kekoon *kaa-ishi-wiintamaakoyaan.*

13. a) Amihiwe mooshak *e-ishi-kihkentamaan* keniin.
    b) Aan tahsh kiin *e-ishi-kihkentaman*?

14. a) Amihiwe mooshak *e-ihkihk* kaa-mwaye-pipoonk.
    b) Kiwaapantaan ina *ahko* kekiin *e-ihkihk*?

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write fourteen (14) sentences of your own using each word from the list below.

taho-kiishikaa	(pc + vii)	amihimaa	(pc)
nitishinaan	(vti)	kihkentan	(vti)
ahshawaapi	(vai)	wenci-	(prev)
wehwe	(na)	weshkaci-	(pv)
pimihse	(vai)	kitepwehtaan	(vti)
ishihse	(vai)	e-ishi-kihkentamaan	(phrase)
kaawin mahshi	(2 pcs)	e-ihkihk	(phrase)

Speaking Practice:

3. For practice reading and understanding, work with a partner taking turns saying the sentences above out loud until you completely understand the material. Then do the same with the sentences you wrote yourself.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise H

How Words Are Used in Sentences

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, for the last time, we will go back to Lesson 3; Exercise G; Dialogue A on page 45 to review the new words. The list below contains some new words introduced in dialogue A. The examples are given in sentence form. Concentrate on understanding how each word is used in each sentence. New words will be in *italic type*. Translations are on pages 117 and 118.

naahpic	(pc)	aapacihtoon	(vti)
mekwaa	(pc)	naanta	(pc)
mashkihki	(ni)	kaana	(pc)
mashkihkiiwinini	(na)	naanta kaana	(pc + pc)
aana-	(pv)	amihi	(pc)
miish	(vta)	eshkam	(pc)
caakinan	(vti)	aapatan	(vii)
ahko OR otahko	(pc)	aanciko	(pc)

1. a) *Naahpic* tahkaayaa noonkom kaa-kiishikaak.
   b) *Naahpic* niminwentaan acina e-waapaminaan.

2. a) *Mekwaa tahkaayaa* shaawanonk nikii-ishaa.
   b) *Mekwaa kihci-kimiwan* kii-pi-kiiwe tipihkonk.

3. a) Keko *mashkihki aapacihtooyan* ohowe mekwaac?
   b) *Mashkihki* ina kitataawe?

4. a) *Mashkihkiiwinini* nikii-miinik *mashkihkiini*.
   b) *Mashkihkiiwinini* kewiin aahkosi.

5. a) *Otaana*-kii-wiintamawaan ekaa ci-tootank.
   b) *Anaa*-kii-wiintamawaakanoo ekaa ci-maacaat(c).

6. a) *Miish* omahkisinan mwaye-maacaat(c).
   b) *Miinihshin* nimahkisinan mwaye-maacaayaan.

7. a) Shemaak *caakinan* kinipiim.
   b) Aasha kekaat *nicaakinaan* nimiicimim.

8. a) Mooshak *ahko* keniin e-maamitoneniminaan.
   b) Mooshak *otahko* kewiin e-ontamiihket(c).

9. a) Kekiin pankii onci-*aapacihtoon*.
   b) Kewiin na pankii owii-*aapacihtoon*?

10. a) *Naanta* waapank nika-kiiwe.
    b) Kaawin *kaana* mahshi takohshinihsiin.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

11. a) *Naanta kaana* nika-pankihshin.
    b) *Naanta kaana* kaawin ta-piishaahsiin.

12. a) *Amihi* keniin ci-maacaayaan waapank.
    b) *Amihi* iitok ekaa ci-kii-piishaayaan.

13. a) *Eshkam naahpic* nikihtim ohomaa kaa-anohkiiyaan.
    b) *Eshkam* ehta niminwentaan.

14. a) *Aapatan* ohowe mekwaac niciimaan.
    b) Kiishpin ekaa *aapatank* waapank, ka-kii-*aapacihtoon*.

15. a) Ikaawin *aanciko* ani-maacaan!
    b) Kiishpin awaashihsh ekaa wiihsinit(c), *aanciko* ta-mawi.

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write fifteen (15) sentences of your own using the words from the list below.

naahpic	(pc)	aapacihtoon	(vti)
mekwaa	(pc)	naanta	(pc)
mashkihki	(ni)	kaana	(pc)
mashkihkiiwinini	(na)	naanta kaana	(pc + pc)
aana-	(pv)	amihi	(pc)
miish	(vta)	eshkam	(pc)
caakinaŋ	(vti)	aapatan	(vii)
ahko OR otahko	(pc)	aanciko	(pc)

Speaking Practice:

3. For practice reading and understanding, work with a partner taking turns saying the sentences in this section out loud until you completely understand the material. Then do the same with the sentences you wrote yourself.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Asking for Information about Kinds:

Here is a type of question from the dialogues in this exercise.

Keko mashkihki aapacihtooyan ohowe mekwaac?
What kind of medicine are you taking (using) now?

This type of question is used when you are making an enquiry about the type or kind of something. The question particle **keko** 'what' is followed by the noun that you are asking the question about and a verb in the Conjunct order. Here the verb is the Transitive Inanimate verb **aapacihtoo** 'use s.t.' with the ending **yan** 'second-person subject and third person inanimate object.'

It is easy to make questions of this kind. The verb may be Transitive Animate (vta), Transitive Inanimate (vti), and Animate Intransitive plus Object (vai+o). Here are some more examples.

TRANSITIVE ANIMATE

Keko awiiyaashiihsh waapamac?
What type of animal do you see?

TRANSITIVE INANIMATE

Keko pimihsewin waapantaman?
What kind of airplane do you see?

Keko wiiyaahs miiciyan?
What kind of meat are you eating?

ANIMATE INTRANSITIVE PLUS OBJECT

Keko paashkisikan ataaweyan?
What kind of gun are you buying?

As with other types of questions, the subject does not have to be second-person only. You can also ask similar questions with a third-person subject. In this case the noun you are asking the question about is marked with the obviative suffix, **ini** for inanimate nouns and **an** for animate nouns.

TRANSITIVE INANIMATE

Keko mashkihkiini aapacihtoot(c) ohowe mekwaac?
What kind of medicine is he/she taking (using) now?

TRANSITIVE ANIMATE

Keko awiiyaashiihshan waapamaat(c)?
What type of animal does he/she see?

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise I

Review the Words

Read and Understand:

In this exercise, once again we will review the new words you have learned in Lesson 4. Review and understand the meaning of the words listed below. Note: When they were introduced, some words and phrases may have had different prefixes and suffixes attached to them. Translations are on page 119.

Animate Nouns
kihci-ayahaa
mashkihkiiwinini
wehwew
niwiiciiwaakan
nitookimaam

Inanimate Nouns
mashkihki
makohshewin
aahkosiwin
anohkiiwin
mihsi

Animate Intransitive Verbs
manihse
pimihse
kiishkipoocike
makohshe
ihkito
ahshawaapi
ahshanke

Inanimate Intransitive Verbs
miskwaawaa
ihkin
ishihse
aapatan
naakwan
kekishepaayaa
maci-kiishikaa
tahkaayaa

Transitive Animate Verbs
kaanoosh
miish
naasihkaw
wiintamawihshin (2 on 1)
pi-naasihkawihshin (2 on 1)

Transitive Inanimate Verbs
nihsitawinan
ishinan
kihkentan
aapacihtoon
caakinan

Preverbs
aahte-
weshkaci-
aana-
tahso-
ahko-

Particles
kekishep OR kekishepaa
ami ahko OR amiyahko
ketahtawen
amihimaa
naahpic
ahko
naanta
kaana
eshkam
aanciko
niinehta
mekwaa

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Useful Expressions - Translations are on page 120.

nika-kii-tootaan niinehta.
miikwehc nitootem.
(ki)ka-pi-kanoonin naake.
amihiwe kwayahk.
amiinahi!
amohshahi!
amiicika tahsh ihi maamahkaac!
amihimaa wenci-kihkentamaan.
amohsha tepwe!
amohsha tahsh iko tepwe!
tepwe (o)hsha!
aanahpii ta-pipoon eshinaman?
amihi eshkam eshihsek.
kaawin mahshi. (statement)
Ikaawin mahshi! (command)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 4

Exercise J

Review Test

Useful Expressions:

1. This review test has one section only. Before you begin, review the meanings of the phrases very carefully. When you are ready, translate them into English. Space is provided for you below. Remember, try to do this on your own without looking at your notes. Corrections will be done by the instructor.

nika-kii-tootaan niinehta.	_____
miikwehc nitootem.	_____
(ki)ka-pi-kanoonin naake.	_____
amihiwe kwayahk.	_____
amiinahi!	_____
amohshahi!	_____
amiicika tahsh ihi maamahkaac!	_____
amihimaa wenci-kihkentamaan.	_____
amohsha tepwe!	_____
amohsha tahsh iko tepwe!	_____
tepwe (o)hsha!	_____
aanahpii ta-pipoon eshinaman?	_____
amihi eshkam eshihsek.	_____
kaawin mahshi.	_____
ikaawin mahshi!	_____

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 5

Exercise A

Phrases and Expressions

Read and Understand:

This lesson has two sections. First, we will study fifteen (15) phrases and expressions listed below. Concentrate on the meanings and pronunciations. If you have a partner to work with, take turns repeating them. Translations are on page 121.

1) Kinantawentaan ina ci-wiicihinaan?
2) Naake kaana tahsh miina ka-waapamin.
3) Kaa-ishi-maawacihitinaaniwank.
4) Piko kekoon.
5) Amohshahi ehkitot(c).
6) Keniin nitaa-kii-ishaa.
7) Kiishpin wii-ishaayan, (ki)ka-wiiciiwin.
8) Pinamaa niwii-anwep.
9) Ta-pwaahtawi-takohshin.
10) Aanti wenci-kihkentaman?
11) Aan tahsh kaa-ishi-nihsitawinaman?
12) Wiipac kii-aahte-naakwan.
13) Amihimaa wenci-nihsitohtamaan.
14) Amihimaa ke-ishi-piihinaan.
15) Ami ahko ehkitowaahpan. (**Also** amiyahko.)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise B

Some Words Are Missing

Read and Understand:

For this exercise, the phrases and expressions are given below with some words missing. See if you can fill in the blanks with the appropriate phrase or expression. You can refer to Exercise A as a guideline. Answers and translations are on page 121.

Ta-pwaahtawi-_____.

Pinamaa _____-anwep.

_____-kihkentaman?

Aan _____ kaa-ishi-_____?

Ami ahko _____.

Keniin _____-_____.

Kiishpin _____-_____, (ki)ka-_____.

Amohshahi _____.

Amihimaa _____-_____-piihinaan.

Wiipac _____-_____-naakwan.

Piko _____.

_____ ina ci-wiicihinaan?

_____ _____ _____ miina ka-waapamin.

Kaa-ishi-_____.

Amihimaa _____-_____.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise C

Expanding Phrases and Expressions

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, we will rewrite the phrases and expressions, this time, adding more words to each phrase and expression. Phrases and expressions introduced to you in Exercise A will be in *italic type*. Also, some new words will be introduced to you throughout the sentences. New vocabulary will be given further explanation afterwards. Translations are on page 122.

1) *(Ki)ka-nantawentaan ina ci-wiicihinaan* ahpii manihseyan?
2) *Naake kaana tahsh miina ka-waapamin* kaa-ishi-niiminaaniwank.
3) *Kaa-ishi-maawacihitinaaniwank* (ki)ka-ishi-waapamin kekishepaayaak.
4) *Piko kekoon* ta-ahshankaaniwan kaa-ishi-makohshaaniwank.
5) *Amohshahi ehkitot(c)* ekaa-e-wii-piishaat(c).
6) *Keniin nitaa-kii-ishaa* kiishpin ekaa ontamiihkeyaan.
7) *Kiishpin wii-ishaayan, (ki)ka-wiiciwin* kiishpin ekaa naanta inentaman.
8) *Pinamaa niwii-anwep* ahpii ishkwaa-anohkiiyaan.
9) *Ta-pwaahtawi-takohshin* kiishpin maci-kiishikaanik.
10) *Aanti wenci-kihkentaman* wiipac ci-kashkatink.
11) *Aan tahsh kaa-ishi-nihsitawinaman* ci-ishiwepahk waapank?
12) *Wiipac kii-aahte-naakwan* kaa-kii-miskwaawaak kekishepaa.
13) *Amihimaa wenci-nihsitawinamaan* ci-mino-kiishikaak waapank.
14) *Amihimaa ke-ishi-piihinaan* ci-pi-takohshiniyan.
15) *Ami ahko ehkitowaahpan* weshkaci-kihci-ayahaak.

2. This is a reading and understanding exercise only. The new phrases introduced in Exercise C, Section 1 above are listed below. Study and review them very carefully. Remember, most of these phrases are incomplete. Translations are on page 122.

1)	Ahpii manihseyan.	incomplete
2)	Kaa-ishi-niiminaaniwank.	incomplete
3)	(Ki)ka-ishi-waapamin kekishepaayaak.	incomplete
4)	Ta-ahshankaaniwan kaa-ishi-makohshaaniwank.	complete
5)	Ekaa e-wii-piishaat(c).	complete
6)	Kiishpin ekaa ontamiihkeyaan.	incomplete
7)	Kiishpin ekaa naanta inentaman.	incomplete
8)	Ahpii ishkwaa-anohkiiyaan.	incomplete
9)	Kiishpin maci-kiishikaanik.	incomplete
10)	Wiipac ci-kashkatink.	incomplete
11)	Ci-ishiwepahk waapank?	incomplete
12)	Kaa-kii-miskwaawaak kekishepaa.	incomplete
13)	Ci-mino-kiishikaak waapank.	incomplete
14)	Ci-pi-takohshiniyan.	incomplete
15)	Weshkaci-kihci-ayahaak.	complete

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

3. New Vocabulary:

Here is the new vocabulary introduced in Exercise C (2). Each word is given first in its basic form and then in the form in which it appears in the example sentence. Translations are on pages 122 and 123.

1)	manihse	vai
	manihseyan	conjunct first-person singular (I)
2)	niimi	vai
	niiminaaniwank	indefinite subject, conjunct order
3)	kekishepaayaa	vii
	kekishepaayaak	conjunct third-singular inanimate
4)	ahshanke	vai
	ahshankaaniwan	indefinite subject, independent order
5)	makohshe	vai
	makohshaaniwank	indefinite subject, conjunct
6)	ontamiihke	vai
	ontamiihkeyaan	conjunct first-person singular (I)
7)	inentan	vti
	inentaman	conjunct second-person subject/third-person singular object
10)	kashkatin	vii
	kashkatink	conjunct third-singular inanimate
11)	ishiwepan	vii
	ishiwepahk	conjunct third-singular inanimate
12)	miskwaawaa	vii
	miskwaawaak	conjunct third-singular inanimate

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 5

Verbs with Indefinite Subjects

Sometimes Animate Intransitive or Transitive Animate verbs may be used with a special ending which indicates the action being done by an unspecified person or group of persons. Here are some AI verbs used in the Independent Order with this ending, which is in **bold type**.

(1) niimi**naaniwan**
People are dancing OR there's a dance going on

(2) wiihsini**naaniwan**
People are eating.

(3) maawacihiti**naaniwan**
There's a gatherin OR, people are gathering together.

Almost any AI verb can have an indefinite subject form, and they are very common in the spoken language. For most AI verbs, the indefinite subject suffix has the form **naaniwan**. With verbs that end in certain sounds, the form of the suffix may change slightly. Notice what happens with a verb that ends in a long **aa**.

maaca**aniwan**
People are leaving.

nipa**aniwan**
People are sleeping.

Now, notice what happens if the basic verb ends in a long **e**.

pimohs**aaniwan**
People are walking.

makohsh**aaniwan**
People are feasting.

Here, the final **e** of the verb **pimohse** 'walk' and **makohshe** 'have a feast' are dropped and the indefinite subject suffix is added in the form **aaniwan**.

Indefinite subject forms can also appear in the Conjunct Order, by adding the Conjunct suffix **k**. Compare the two forms of the Ojibwe verb that means 'people are dancing' in the following table (the Conjunct suffix is in **bold type**).

	Independent	**Conjunct**
People are dancing.	niiminaaniwan	niiminaniwan**k**

Notice that in the conjunct form the final **n** of the indefinite subject suffix is often silent when the Conjunct suffix is added (please check with your instructor and follow his or her pronunciation).

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise D

Expanding Your Own Sentences

Writing Practice

1. In this exercise, write your own sentences using the words listed below. Try to expand your sentences as much as you can by using verbs, particles and past, present and future tense etc. The first two examples are done for you. Translations are on page 123.

manihse	ontamiihke
niiminaaniwan	inentam
kekishkepaayaa	kashkatin
ahshankaaniwan	ishiwepan
makohshaaniwan	miskwaawaa

1) Kiishpin nantawentaman ci-wiihinaan ahpii **manihse**yan, pi-kanoonihshin.

2) Ta-**niiminaaniwan** ahpii ishkwaa-anohkiiyank.

3) _____

4) _____

5) _____

6) _____

7) _____

8) _____

9) _____

10) _____

Speaking Practice:

2. For speaking practice, go back to Exercise C, Section 1 on page 79. Work with a partner for reading and understanding the sentences until you feel comfortable with the material. Then do the same with the sentences you wrote yourself.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise E

Translation

Review Exercise:

This is a final review exercise of the fifteen phrases and expressions introduced in this lesson. Before you begin the translation, refer to page 77, Exercise A. Study and review the meanings of these phrases very carefully. When you are ready, translate the sentences into Severn Ojibwe. Space is provided for you below. Remember, try to do this exercise without looking at your notes. Translations are on pages 123 and 124.

1. _____

   Do you want me to help you?

2. _____

   So, I guess I will be seeing you again later.

3. _____

   At the meeting.

4. _____

   Anything.

5. _____

   That's what he/she says.

6. _____

   I should go too.

7. _____

   If you want to go, I will go with you.

8. _____

   I want to rest for a while.

9. _____

   He/she will be arriving late.

10. _____

    Where/how so you know?

11. _____

    So, how did you see it will happen?

12. _____

    It disappeared quickly.

13. _____

    That's where/how I understand it.

14. _____

    I will wait for you there or could refer to; a certain date.

15. _____

    That's what they used to say.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise F

More Phrases and Expressions

Read and Understand:

In this exercise, we will continue to study some more phrases and expressions listed below. Concentrate on the meanings and pronunciations. If you have a partner to work with, take turns repeating them until you are comfortable with the material. Translations are on page 124.

1. Ikaawin maanenciken!
2. Ikaawin nanaatihkosiin!
3. Ikaawin tootan!
4. Ikaawin maci-tootan!
5. Sakamaatapin!
6. Waahkamisin!
7. Nimincinawes!
8. Ninanepewis.
9. Nishikatentaan.
10. Tetako nicaakii.
11. Manaaci-pihci-tootaason!
12. Ka-kii-tootaan ina kiinehta?
13. Kwayahk kanawenimitison.
14. Aasha miina maacii-tahkaayaa.
15. Pi-otaahpinihshin ahpii ani-maacaayan.

Negative Imperatives

Sometimes you may wish to tell someone not to do something. The most common way is to use the special negative word **ikaawin** followed by the regular imperative (command) form of the verb. In the following examples, repeated from Exercise F above, the suffix **n** at the end of the word is the suffix used to make commands addressed to a single person.

(1) Ikaawin maanenciken!
Don't cause trouble!

(2) Ikaawin nanaatihkosiin!
Don't make fun!

(3) Ikaawin tootan!
Don't do it!

(4) Ikaawin maci-tootan!
Don't do something bad!

You may wish to review the material in **Introductory Ojibwe** (Unit 1, Lesson 4, Exercise A) where imperatives are discussed.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise G

Some Words Are Missing

Read and Understand:

For this exercise, the phrases and expressions are given below with some words or syllables missing. See if you can fill in the blanks with the appropriate phrase or expression. You need to refer to Exercise F as a guideline. Corrections are on page 124.

Ni_____ ka_____taan.

Te_____ko ni_____kii.

Ni_____ci_____wes!

_____kami_____!

_____ka_____ta_____!

Manaacii-_____-tootaaoson!

Ka-_____-tootaan ina _____?

_____-otaahpinihshin _____ _____-maacaayan.

Aasha _____ _____-tahkaayaa.

Ikaawin maa _____ _____ken!

Ikaawin _____naa_____koh_____!

_____kanawenimitison.

_____tootan!

Ni_____pe_____s.

_____ _____-tootan!

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 5

Exercise H

Expanding Phrases and Expressions

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, we will rewrite the phrases and expressions by adding more words to each phrase and expression. Phrases and expressions introduced in this lesson will be in *italic type*. Also, some new words will be introduced to you throughout the sentences. New vocabulary will be given further explanation afterwards. Complete translations are on page 125.

    1) *Ikaawin maanenciken* mekwaac ishkoonooyan.
    2) *Ikaawin nanaatihkosiin*! Kiishpin nanaatihkosiiyan, awiya (ki)ka-miikaanik.
    3) *Ikaawin tootan*! (Ki)ka-pihci-tootaas.
    4) *Ikaawin maci-tootan*! Kiishpin maci-tootaman, (ki)ka-tipaahkonikoo.
    5) *Sakamaatapin* mekwaac wiihsiniyan.
    6) *Waahkamisin*! Kiishpin ekaa waahkamisiyan, (ki)ka-pahkihtehokoo.
    7) *Nimincinawes* kaa-kii-wani-kanooninaan.
    8) *Ninanepewis* ahko kaa-wiiciiwinan.
    9) *Nishikatentaan* ahko kaa-maacaayan.
    10) *Tetako nicaakii* noonkom kaa-kiishikaak.
    11) *Manaaci-pihci-tootaason* mekwaac anohkiiyan.
    12) *Ka-kii-tootaan ina kiinehta* ci-kiishihtooyan ohowe anohkiiwin?
    13) *Kwayahk kanawenimitison* ekaa ci-pihci-tootaasoyan.
    14) *Aasha miina maacii-tahkaayaa* noonkom kaa-pimikonakaak.
    15) *Pi-otaahpinihshin ahpii ani-maacaayan*, keniin e-wii-maacaayaan.

2. This is a reading and understanding exercise only. The new phrases introduced in Exercise C, Section 1 above are listed below. Study and review them very carefully. See and understand the ones that are complete and that the ones are incomplete. Make sure you understand "why" the phrase is complete or incomplete. Translations are on page 125.

1)	Mekwaac ishkoonooyan.	incomplete
2)	Kiishpin nanaatihkosiiyan, awiya (ki)ka-miikaanik.	complete
3)	(Ki)ka-pihci-tootaas.	complete
4)	Kiishpin maci-tootaman, (ki)ka-tipaahkonikoo.	complete
5)	Mekwaac wiihsiniyan.	incomplete
6)	Kiishpin ekaa waahkamisiyan, (ki)ka-pahkitehokoo.	complete
7)	Kaa-kii-wani-kanooninaan.	incomplete
8)	Amihi kekaat e-kii-nihshiwanaatisiyaan.	complete
9)	Ahko kaa-maacaayan.	incomplete
10)	Noonkom kaa-kiishikaak.	complete
11)	Mekwaac anohkiiyan.	incomplete
12)	Ci-kiishihtooyan ohowe anohkiiwin.	incomplete
13)	Ekaa ci-pihci-tootaasoyan.	incomplete
14)	Noonkom kaa-pimikonaakaak.	complete
15)	Keniin e-wii-maacaayaan.	incomplete

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

3. New Vocabulary:

Here we list the new vocabulary in Exercise H(1). For each word the first line lists the basic form of the word. The next line lists the word as it appears in the exercise. Any following lines give other forms of the basic word. Complete translations are on pages 125 and 126.

1)	ishkoonoo	vai
	ishkoonooyan	conjunct first-person
	nitishkoonoo	independent first-person
	kitishkoonoo	independent second-person
2)	miikaash	vta
	(ki)ka-miikaanik	independent third-person subject/second-person subject, future preverb
	nimiikaanaa	first-person
	kimiikaanaa	second-person
3)	tootaaso	vai
	nitootaas	independent first-person
	kitootaas	independent second-person
4)	tipaahkonike	vta
	(ki)ka-tipaahkonikoo	independent indefinite subject/second person object, future preverb
	nitipaahkonaa	independent first-person subject/third person object
	kitipaahkonaa	independent second-person subject/third-person object
6)	pahkihteho (command)	vta
	(ki)ka-pahkihtehokoo	independent indefinite subject/third-person object, future preverb
	nipahkihtewaa	independent first-person subject/third-person object
	kipahkihtewaa	independent second-person subject/third-person object
7)	kanoosh	vta
	kaa-kii-wani-kanooninaan	conjunct first-person subject/second-person object
	nikanoonaa	independent first-person subject/third-person object
	kikanoonaa	independent second-person subject/third-person object
8)	amihi kekaat	particle
	ci-kiishihtooyan	conjunct second-person subject/third-person object
12a)	kiishihtoon (command)	vti2
	nikiishihtoon	independent first-person subject/third-person object
	kikiishihtoon	independent second-person subject/third-person object
b)	anohkiiwin	noun
	nitanohkiiwin	first-person possessive
	kitanohkiiwin	second-person possessive
	otanohkiiwin	third-person possessive
14)	pimikonaakaa	vii
	pimikonaakaak	conjunct third-person inanimate

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 5

Exercise I

Expanding Your Own Sentences

Writing Practice:

1. In this exercise, write your own sentences using the words listed below. Try to expand your sentences as much as you can by using verbs, particles, preverbs and past, present, future tense, etc. The first two examples are done for you. Translations are on page 126.

ishkoonoo	kanoosh
miikaash	amihi kekaat
tootaaso	kiishihtoon
tipaahkon	anohkiiwin
pahkihteho	pimikonakaa

1) Mwaye-antawi-**ishkoonooyan**, saakitahtoon wepinikan.
2) Ikaawin **miikaason** mekwaac **ishkoonooyan**!
3) _____
4) _____
5) _____
6) _____
7) _____
8) _____
9) _____
10) _____

Speaking Practice:

2. For speaking practice, go back to Exercise H Section 1 on page 86. Work with a partner to read and understand the sentences until you feel comfortable with the material. Then do the same with the sentences you wrote yourself.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise J

Translation

Review Exercise:

This is the final review exercise of the phrases and expressions that you have been working on. Before you begin the translation, refer to page 84 Exercise F. Study and review the meanings of them very carefully. When you are ready, translate the sentences into Severn Ojibwe. Space is provided for you below. Remember, try to do this exercise without looking at your notes. Translations are on page 127.

1. _____
   Don't disobey!
2. _____
   Don't tease!
3. _____
   Don't do that!
4. _____
   Don't do bad things! (evil things)
5. _____
   Sit still!
6. _____
   Behave yourself!
7. _____
   I am sorry!
8. _____
   I am embarrassed (shy).
9. _____
   I am lonely.
10. _____
    I am totally exhausted.
11. _____
    Watch out not to hurt yourself!
12. _____
    Can you do it by yourself?
13. _____
    Take good care of yourself.
14. _____
    Already it is starting to get cold again.
15. _____
    Come and pick me up when you leave.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 6

Unit 1 Review Tests

This lesson contains review tests for Lessons 1 through 5 on pages 90 thru 94. For most of the review tests, your instructor will dictate the words or sentences for you to write. You can do the review test for Lesson 5, on your own but you must have your instructor check your translations. You may find it helpful to review your notes and lessons before trying the review materials in this section. Check your spelling and translation with your instructor when you are done.

Lesson 1 Review Test: Sixteen Buildings

Your instructor will say the words for sixteen buildings from the vocabulary you have learned in Lesson 1. Listen carefully as the instructor says each noun. For each word your instructor says, please write it in Severn Ojibwe and give the English translation. Spaces are provided for you below.

Severn Ojibwe	English Translation
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	
7.	
8.	
9.	
10.	
11.	
12.	
13.	
14.	
15.	
16.	

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Lesson 2 Review Test: My Relations

This review test has one section. Before you begin, review the words for "my relations" on page 15, sections 1 and 2. Listen carefully as the instructor says each word. For each word your instructor says, please write it in
Severn Ojibwe and give the English translation. Spaces are provided for you below. Check your spelling and translation with your instructor when you are done.

Severn Ojibwe	English Translation
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	
7.	
8.	
9.	
10.	
11.	
12.	

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 6

Lesson 3 Review Test: Preverbs

Before you begin, review the spelling and meanings of the preverbs on page 52.
Your instructor will say fourteen preverbs from the vocabulary you have learned. Listen carefully as the instructor says each preverb. For each word your instructor says, please write it in Severn Ojibwe and also write the English translation. Spaces are provided for you below. Check your spelling and translations with your instructor when you are done.

Severn Ojibwe	English Translation
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	
7.	
8.	
9.	
10.	
11.	
12.	
13.	
14.	

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Lesson 4 Review Test: Words and Phrases

This review test has one section. Before you begin, review the spelling and translation of the words and phrases on page 75. Listen carefully as the instructor says each word. For each word your instructor says, please write it in Severn Ojibwe and also write the English translation. Spaces are provided for you below. Check your spelling and translation with your instructor when you are done.

Severn Ojibwe	English Translation
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	
7.	
8.	
9.	
10.	
11.	
12.	
13.	
14.	
15.	

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; LESSON 6

Lesson 5 Review Test: Expressions and Phrases

This review test has one section. Before you begin, take some time to review the meanings of the expressions and phrases listed below. Then, when you are ready, translate them into English.

Severn Ojibwe	Translation
1. Kinantawentaan ina ci-wiicihinaan?	
2. Piko kekoon.	
3. Amohshahi ehkitot(c).	
4. Keniin nitaa-kii-ishaa.	
5. Pinamaa niwii-anwep.	
6. Ta-pwaahtawi-takohshin.	
7. Aanti wenci-kihkentaman	
8. Wiipac kii-aahte-naakwan.	
9. Amihimaa ke-ishi-piihinaan.	
10. Ikaawin maanenciken!	
11. Ikaawin nanaatihkoshiin!	
12. Ikaawin tootan!	
13. Ikaawin maci-tootan!	
14. Sakamaatiapin!	
15. Waahkamisin!	
16. Nimincinawes!	
17. Ninanepewis.	
18. Nishikatentaan.	
19. Tetako nicaakii.	
20. Manaaci-pihci-tootaason!	

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; REVIEW SECTION

Let's Look Back At What You Have Learned:

Lessons 1 - 5

Animate Nouns: - Translations are on page 128.

nimoosom	niicimohsh	mashkihkiiwinini
nikayaashim	niiciihaa	kihci-ayahaa
nipehshohtaahkoomaakan	niici-ihkwe	wehwew
nitinaahkoomaakan	niici-naape	nahsemaa
nitanohkiinaakan	niici-kihci-ayahaa	matwehikan
niwiintanohkiimaakan	niici-toohkaan	ahcanihs
shoominihs	shooshkwahikan	kinooshewahsap
niwiiciiwaakan	nitookimaam	nitootem

Pronouns:

niinehta	kiinehta	wiinehta

Inanimate Nouns:

ishkoonoowikamik	ahtaahsonikamik	kisiipiikinikewikamik
wiihsiniiwikamik	natohtamoowikamik	mashkihki
anwepiiwikamik	shimaakanihshiiwikamik	makohshewin
metawewikamik	ayamihewikamik	aahkosiwin
masinahikewikamik	kaahsaniiwikamik	maamawihitowin
kipahotookamik	waweshahitaapaanewikamik	anohkiiwin
ataawikamik	masinahikanikamik	

Animate Intransitive Verbs:

kanoohke	caakihse	wenootisi
mino-ayaa	maatanohkii	waaciye
nantawentaakosi	anwepi	kiishkipoocike
maanencike	makohshe	nanaatihkosii
manihse	sakamaatapi	ahshawaapi
waahkamisi	pimihse	mincinawesi
ahshanke	nanepewisi	ontamiihke
shikatentam	ishkoonoo	caakii
tootaaso	kanawenimitiso	nanaahkomi

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; REVIEW SECTION

Inanimate Intransitive Verbs: - Translations are on page 129.

naakwan	miskwaawaa	ihkin
aapatan	kekishepaayaa	onaakohshin
kashkatin	ishiwepan	pimikonaakaa
tahso-kiishikaa	tahso-tipihkaa	kiishowaayaa
tahkaayaa		

Transitive Animate Verbs:

naanaakacihi	masinahamaw	nanaahkom
naasihkaw	tipaahkon	wiicihi
piihi	nihsitawinaw	

Transitive Inanimate Verbs:

ishinan	ishinam	nihsitawinan
kihkentan	aapacihtoon	caakinan
tootan	kiishihtoon	tepwehtan
inentan		
ishinaakwan		

Preverbs:

kiiwe-	kii-	ka-	tahso-
kinipi-	ahko-	ka-kii-	weshkaci-
koci-	aahte-	kakwe-	pi-
naaci-	wenci-	kaa-	onci-
nehpici-	aana-	watakami-	taa-
niipaa-	pwaahtawi-		

Preverbs and Prenouns:

kape-	maci-	mino-

Preverbs that occur only in the Conjunct Order:

ci-	kaa-	ke-	kii-	e-

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; REVIEW SECTION

Particles: - Translations are on page 130.

waaciye	tahso-kiishikaa	ishkwaayaac
amihimaa	kehcin	naanta kaana
kekoon	aanciko	amiinahi!
amihiwe	eshkam	amiicika
kekishep	amiicika tahsh ihi	naahpic
ekwa tahsh	maawiin OR maawin	tahswaa
siyaaken	amohshahi	kekishepaa
ami ahko	kwayahk	maamahkaac
naake	kape-kiishikaa	mahshi
kape-tipihkaa	miikwehc	mekwaa
amohsha	iko	
ahko	tetako	

Expressions:

aanti eshaayan?
aanti waa-ishaayan?
aanti eshaat(c)?
aanti waa-ishaat(c)?
aanti eshaayek?
aanti waa-ishaayek?
aanti eshaawaat(c)?
aanti waa-ishaawaat(c)?
kaawin iko naahpic.
kaawin kehcin.
aanti eshi-anohkiiyan?
aanti waa-ishi-anohkiiyan?
aanti eshi-apiyan?
aanti waa-ishi-apiyan?
tahso-kiishikaa.
tahso-tipihkaa.
ka-maawiin siyaaken.
miikwehc nitootem.
(ki)ka-pi-kanoonin naake.
amihiwe kwayahk.
amiicika tahsh ihi maamahkaac!
amohsha tepwe!
tepwe (o)hsha!
kaawin mahshi.
kinantawentaan ina ci-wiicihinaan?
piko kekoon.
pinamaa niwii-anwep.
amihimaa ke-ishi-piihinan.

aanahpii eshaayan?
aanahpii waa-ishaayan?
aanahpii eshaat(c)?
aanahpii waa-ishaat(c)?
aanahpii eshaayek?
aanahpii waa-ishaayek?
aanahpii eshaawaat(c)?
aanahpii waa-ishaawaat(c)?
kinanaahkomin!
ikawin maanenciken!
ikaawin nanaatihkosiin!
ikaawin tootan!
ikaawin maci-tootan!
sakamaatapin!
waahkamisin!
nimincinawes!
ninanepewis!
nishikatentaan.
tetako nicaakii.
ka-kii-tootaan ina kiinehta?
kwayahk kanawenimitison.
aanahpii ta-pipoon eshinaman?
ikaawin mahshi!
keniin nitaa-kii-ishaa.

Note: More expressions and sentences on page 401.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

Lesson 1

Exercise A: **Inanimate Nouns**

1)	school	2)	restaurant	3)	restroom	4)	recreation hall
5)	band office	6)	nursing station	7)	jail	8)	store
9)	warehouse	10)	radio station	11)	police station	12)	church
13)	gas station	14)	garage	15)	library	16)	laundromat

Exercise C: **Match up Numbers and Letters**

Section 2

1) e	5) l	9) p	13) d
2) f	6) k	10) o	14) c
3) g	7) j	11) n	15) b
4) h	8) i	12) m	16) a

Classified as Living Things

a) nahsemaa	b) ahsin	c) piihswe-aanahkonaa	d) shikop
e) matwehikan	f) ahcanihsh	g) pahkweshikan	h) tihtipwepishkikan
i) wacahkohsh	j) ahsap	k) shoominihsh	l) shooniyaan
m) piihsim	n) tiiwahkihk	o) emihkwaan	p) tipihki-piihsim
q) shooshkwahikan	r) paanahkihk		

Exercise D: **Match up Pictures and Words**

ayamihewikamik	12	kaahsaniiwikamik	13
shimaakanihshiiwikamik	11	waweshahitaapaanewikamik	14
natohtamoowikamik	10	masinahikanikamik	15
ahtaahsonikamik	9	kisiipiikinikewikamik	16
metawewikamik	4	ataawikamik	8
anwepiiwikamik	3	kipahotookamik	7
wiihsiniiwikamik	2	mashkihkiiwikamik	6
ishkoonoowikamik	1	masinahikewikamik	5

Exercise E: **Translate into Severn Ojibwe**

1. masinahikewikamik
2. mashkihkiiwikamik
3. ataawikamik
4. kipahotookamik
5. metawewikamik
6. anwepiiwikamik
7. ishkoonoowikamik
8. wiihsiniiwikamik
9. kisiipiikinikewikamik
10. kaahsaniiwikamik
11. waweshahitaapaanewikamik
12. masinahikanikamik
13. ahtaahsonikamik
14. shimaakanihshiiwikamik
15. natohtamoowikamik
16. ayamihewikamik

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise G: **Questions and Answers**

Question	Answer
Where are you going?	to the school
Where do you want to go?	to the restaurant
Where is he/she going?	to the restroom
Where does he/she want to go?	to the recreation hall
Where are you (pl) going?	to the band office
Where do you (pl) want to go?	to the nursing station
Where are they going?	to the jail
Where do they want to go?	to the store
When are you going to the warehouse?	Today.
When do you want to go the radio station?	Tomorrow perhaps.
When is he/she going to the police station?	Day after tomorrow.
When does he/she want to go to the church?	Soon.
When are you (pl) going to the gas station?	Later.
When do you (pl) want to go to the garage?	Much later.
When are they going to the library?	Tomorrow maybe.
When do they want to go to the laundromat?	When they're finished working.

Exercise H: **Some Letters Missing**

1.

1.	masinahikewikamik	5
2.	mashikihkiiwikamik	6
3.	kipahotookamik	7
4.	ataawikamik	8
5.	ishkoonoowikamik	1
6.	wiihsiniiwikamik	2
7.	anwepiiwikamik	3
8.	metawewikamik	4
9.	ayamihewikamik	12
10.	shimaakanihshiiwikamik	11
11.	natohtamoowikamik	10
12.	ahtaahsonikamik	9
13.	kisiipiikinikewikamik	16
14.	masinahikanikamik	15
15.	kaahsaniiwikamik	13
16.	waweshahitaapaanewikamik	14

2.

1.	band office	
2.	nursing station	
3.	jail	
4.	store	
5.	school	
6.	restaurant	
7.	washroom	
8.	recreation hall	
9.	church	
10.	police station	
11.	radio station	
12.	warehouse	
13.	laundromat	
14.	library	
15.	gas station	
16.	garage	

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise I: **Reading and Understanding**

Question	Answer
Where are you going?	I'm going to the school
Where do you want to go?	I want to go to the restaurant
Where is he/she going?	He/she is going to the restroom
Where does he/she want to go?	He/she wants to go to the recreation hall
Where are you (pl) going?	We are going to the band office
Where do you (pl) want to go?	We want to go to the nursing station
Where are they going?	They are going to thejail
Where do they want to go?	They want to go to the store
When are you going to the warehouse?	I'm going today.
When do you want to go the radio station?	I will go tomorrow, maybe.
When is he/she going to the police station?	He/she is going the day after tomorrow.
When does he/she want to go to the church?	He/she wants to go soon.
When are you (pl) going to the gas station?	We will go later in the evening.
When do you (pl) want to go to the garage?	We will go after you (pl) finish singing.
When are they going to the library?	
When do they want to go to the laundromat?	They will go when they're done working.

Exercise J: **Review Spelling and Translation Test**

1.

1.	store	attawikamik
2.	jail	kipahotookamik
3.	nursing station	mashkihkiiwikamik
4.	band office	masinahikewikamik
5.	church	ayamihewikamik
6.	police station	shimaakanihshiiwikamik
7.	radio station	natohtamoowikamik
8.	warehouse	ahtaahsonikamik
9.	recreation hall	metawewikamik
10.	restroom	anwepiiwikamik
11.	restaurant	wiihsiniiwikamik
12.	school	ishkoonoowikamik
13.	gas station	kaahsaniiwikamik
14.	garage	waweshahitaapaanewikamik
15.	laundromat	kisiipiikinikewikamik
16.	library	masinahikanikamik

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

2.

	English	Translation
1.	Where are you going?	Aanti eshaayan?
2.	Where do you want to go?	Aanti waa-ishaayan?
3.	Where is he/she going?	Aanti eshaat(c)?
4.	Where does he/she want to go?	Aanti waa-ishaat(c)?
5.	Where are you (pl) going?	Aanti eshaayek?
6.	Where do you (pl) want to go?	Aanti waa-ishaayek?
7.	Where are they going?	Aanti eshaawaat(c)?
8.	Where do they want to go?	Aanti waa-ishaawaat(c)?
9.	When are you going there?	Aanahpii eshaayan?
10.	When do you want to go there?	Aanahpii waa-ishaayan?
11.	When is he/she going to there?	Aanahpii eshaat(c)?
12.	When does he/she want to go there?	Aanahpii waa-ishaat(c)?
13.	When are you (pl) going there?	Aanahpii eshaayek?
14.	When do you (pl) want to go there?	Aanahpii waa-ishaayek?
15.	When are they going there?	Aanahpii eshaayan?
16.	When do they want to go there?	Aanahpii waa-ishaawaat(c)?

Lesson 2

Exercise C:

2.

	Severn Ojibwe	English
1.	niici-toohkan	my name-sake
2.	niicimohsh	my cousin (cross cousin of opposite sex)
3.	niiciihaa	my spouse
4.	nikayaashim	my sweetheart
5.	nikayaashim	my ex-spouse/girlfriend
6.	nipehshohtaahkoomaakan	my close relation
7.	niwiitanohkiimaakan	my co-worker
8.	nitanohkiinaakan	my worker
9.	niici-ihkwe	my fellow woman
10.	niici-naape	my fellow man
11.	niici-kihci-ayahaa	my fellow elder
12.	nitinaahkoomaakan	my relation

3. **Repeat Translations**

1.	niwiitanohkiimaakan	my co-worker
2.	nikayaashim	my sweetheart
3.	nitanohkiinaakan	my worker
4.	nikayaashim	my ex-spouse/girlfriend
5.	nipehshohtaahkoomaakan	my close relation
6.	niici-toohkan	my name-sake
7.	niicimohsh	my cousin (cross cousin of opposite sex)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

8.	niiciihaa	my spouse
9.	niici-naape	my fellow man
10.	nitinaahkoomaakan	my relation
11.	niici-kihci-ayahaa	my fellow elder
12.	niici-ihkwe	my fellow woman

Exercise D: **My, Yours, His/Hers**

1.

my sweetheart	my ex-spouse	my close relation	my relation
your sweetheart	your ex-spouse	your close relation	your relation
his/her sweetheart	his/her ex-spouse	his/her close relation	his/her relation
my worker	my co-worker	my cousin (cross cousin of	my spouse
your worker	your co-worker	your cousin opposite sex)	your spouse
his/her worker	his/her co-worker	his/her cousin	his/her spouse
my fellow-woman	my fellow-man	my fellow-elder	my name-sake
your fellow-woman	your fellow-man	your fellow-elder	your name-sake
his/her fellow-woman	his/her fellow-man	his/her fellow-elder	his/her name-sake

2.

nimoosom	nikayaashim	nipehshohtaahkoomaakan
nitinaahkoomaakan	nitanohkiinaakan	niwiitanohkiimaakan
niicimohsh	niiciihaa	niici-ihkwe
niici-naape	niici-kihci-ayahaa	niici-toohkan
kimoosom	kikayaashim	kipeshotaakoomaakan
kitinaahkoomaakan	kitanohkiinaakan	kiwiitanohkiimaakan
kiicimohsh	kiiciihaa	kiici-ihkwe
kiici-naape	kiici-kihci-ayahaa	kiici-toohkan
omoosoman	okayaashiman	opeshotaakoomaakanan
otinaahkoomaakanan	otanohkiinaakanan	owiitanohkiimaakanan
wiicimohshan	wiiciihaan	wiici-ihkwen
wiici-naapen	wiici-kihci-ayahaan	wiici-toohkanan

3.

	English	Severn Ojibwe
1.	my sweetheart	nimoosom
2.	my ex-spouse/girlfriend	nikayaashim
3.	my close relation	nipehshohtaahkoomaakan
4.	my relation	nitinaahkoomaakan
5.	my worker	nitanohkiinaakan
6.	my co-worker	niwiitanohkiinaakan
7.	my cousin	niicimohsh
8.	my spouse	niiciihaa
9.	my fellow-woman	niici-ihkwe
10.	my fellow-man	niici-naape
11.	my fellow-elder	niici-kihci-ayahaa
12.	my name-sake	niici-toohkan

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise E: **Questions and Answers**

2. **Question**	**Positive Answer**
Does your sweetheart want to work too?	Yes, my sweetheart wants to work too.
	Negative Answer
	No, my sweetheat does not want to work too.
Question	**Positive Answer**
Does Henry's sweetheart want to work too?	Yes, Henry's sweetheart wants to work too.
	Negative Answer
	No, Henry's sweetheart does not want to work too.

Exercise F: **Mini-Dialogues**

1. A. Hello my sweetheart. How are you today?
I'm fine. How about you?
I'm really not too well right now.
Why, are you sick?
No, I'm tired because I worked too hard yesterday.
Oh yeah! I hope you will be well soon.

B. Where does your ex-spouse/girlfriend live?
I don't know. I don't watch for her.
Do you think she is fine?
I don't know. I don't watch for her.
When was the last time you saw her?
I don't know. I don't remember.

C. One of my close relations left yesterday.
Oh yeah, what is his/her name?
Susan is her name.
When will she be coming back?
She said, "I will be coming back the day after tomorrow".
Will you wait for her then?
No, I have no reason to wait for her.

D. Hello my relation. What are you doing?
Nothing, why?
Are you rich?
No, not really. Why?
I want to ask you if I could borrow a some money?
Okay, only a little.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise G: **Reading and Writing**

1. A. When will your fellow woman start working?
I don't know. She hasn't told me yet.
When do you think she will tell you?
I hope soon.
What will you do if she doesn't tell you soon?
Nothing, I am just going to stay here and wait for her.
Is there something I can help you with?
Probably not. Thank you.

   B. Did your fellow man go home already?
Yes, he went home a long time ago already.
When will he come again?
I don't know. He didn't tell me.
When he comes again, tell him I want to see him.
He might be back real soon.
Okay, for sure I will tell him.
I thank you my friend.

Exercise H: **Review Test**

1. Possessive Nouns:

a)	nimoosom	my sweetheart
b)	nikayaashim	my ex-spouse/girlfriend
c)	nipehshohtaahkoomaakan	my close relation
d)	nitinaahkoomaakan	my relation
e)	nitanohkiinaakan	my worker
f)	niwiintanohkiimaakan	my co-worker
g)	niicimohsh	my cousin (cross cousin of opposite sex)
h)	niiciihaa	my spouse
i)	niici-ihkwe	my fellow woman
j)	niici-naape	my fellow man
k)	niici-kihci-ayahaa	my fellow elder
l).	niici-tookaan	my name-sake

2.	**Possessive Nouns**	**English Translation**
a)	my sweetheart	nimoosom
b)	my ex-spouse/girlfriend	nikayaashim
c)	my close relation	nipehshohtaahkoomaakan
d)	my relations	nitinaahkoomaakan
e)	my worker	nitanohkiinaakan
f)	my co-worker	niwiintanohkiimaakan
g)	my cousin (cross cousin of opposite sex)	niicimohsh
h)	my spouse	niiciihaa
i)	my fellow woman	niici-ihkwe
j)	my fellow man	niici-naape

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

k)	my fellow elder	niici-kihci-ayahaa
l).	my name-sake	niici-tookaan

Lesson 3

Exercise C: **Learning How Preverbs Work**

A. When will you return to work again?
I don't know. I don't know yet exactly.

B. Where do you want to sleep?
Over there near the fireplace.

C. Is that right, you're leaving tomorrow?
Yes, only if its a nice day (weather wise).

D. Is your friend going today?
If it is not raining he/she will go home today.

E. Does it look like to you it will snow permanently tonight?
I hope not.

F. Does your dog get mad easily?
No, only sometimes if he/she is hungry.

G. Every day I work hard. How about you?
Yes, me too, I work hard every day.

H. Does your spouse work at night all the time?
No, only if he/she wanted to.

I. Did you go to the store late this morning?
Yes, I was sleeping.

J. Do you want to try to drink some water again?
No, I've drank too much water already.

K. The money is fast spent if not kept properly on how it is used.

Exercise E: **Dialogue I**

A. Do you want to go back to sleep when you're finished eating?
No, I want to go and get some firewood.
Do you want me to help you?
No, I can do it by myself.
Tell me if you want me to help you.
Thank you my friend. I will call you when I get back.
Maybe I will want you to help me when I saw the firewood.
That's good. I want to work too.
Okay, I guess I will see you later.

B. I will try to go again.
Every time I want to go it starts to rain.
Where do you want to try and go?

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

I'm trying to go to the feast.
Oh yeah! What are they serving?
All kinds of things they are serving, they say.
I hope most likely they are seving traditional food.
Yes, that is most likely, they say.
Is that so! I should go too.
For sure, if you go, come and get me.
Okay, wait awhile, I will ask my boss.
And, who is your boss?
My spouse.

Exercise F: **Dialogue II**

A. It looks like it is going to snow permanently today.
Where did you recognize how the day will be?
It was a very bad red-coloured sky early this morning.
What then did you recognize the red-coloured sky?
It was an evening red-coloured sky and it faded away fast.
This is what the elders use to say.
If there is an evening red-coloured sky and it suddenly fades away, it will be a bad day all day long.
That is so amazing.
That is so true the way it use to happen the way it looks the red-coloured sky.
Today, it does not happen that way.

B. When does it look like it will be winter to you?
It looks like to me, it will be a late winter.
Where do you recognize when it will be winter?
Every day I watch for the geese to fly by to the South when winter approaches.
I haven't seen them yet.
That is how I know that it is going to be a late winter.
If the geese fly by early, there will be an early winter the old timers use to say.
Do you believe that then?
Yes, it is true that is what I know the way it happened.

Exercise G: **Dialogue III**

Does your daughter get sick easily?
She does get very sick easily during the cold weather.
Does she use medicine anyway?
Yes, the doctor did give her medicine anyway.
She uses it up real fast, she uses it all the time.
Probably she is using it too much that could be why she is sick.
That is what happens sometimes if too much medicine is used, you get sick even more so.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise H: **Learning the Language**

1. a) Do you want to go back to sleep when you finish eating?
   b) When I finish eating, I want to go back to sleep.
   c) He/she wants to return to work when he/she is finished resting.

2. a) No, I want to go and cut some firewood.
   b) Do you want to go and cut some firewood tomorrow?
   c) Did Susan go to work?

3. a) Do you want me to help you?
   b) I want you to help me.
   c) He/she will want you to help him/her.

4 a) No, I can do it by myself.
   b) Are you positive you can do it by yourself?
   c) Yes, I can do it by myself.

5. a) Tell me if you want me to help you.
   b) Tell me if you want me to go with you.
   c) Tell me if he/she wants me to help him/her.

6. a) Thank you my friend. I will call you when I arrive.
   b) My friend, call me when you arrive.
   c) He/she should call his/her friend when he/she arrives.

7. a) That's good. I want to work too.
   b) That's good that you want to work too.
   c) That's good that he/she wants to work too.

8. a) Okay, I guess I will see you later.
   b) Okay, I guess we will go later.
   c) Okay, I guess we will go later

Exercise I: **Using the Language**

1. a) Now once again I will try and go.
   b) When will you try to go again?
   c) Does he/she want to try to go again?

2. a) Every time that I want to go it starts to rain.
   b) How many times did you dance yesterday?
   c) How many times did your son sing?

3. a) Where do you want to try and go?
   b) I want to try to go to the dance.
   c) Where does he/she want to try to go?

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

4. a) I'm trying to go to the feast.
   b) Are you trying to go to the feast?
   c) He/she is trying to go to the feast.

5. a) Oh yeah! What are they serving (food)?
   b) Oh yeah! What are you serving (food)?
   c) Oh yeah! What is he/she serving (food)?

6. a) All kinds of things (food) they are serving, they say.
   b) All kinds of things (food) I'm serving, he/she says.
   c) Are you serving all kinds of things (food)?

7. a) I hope they are serving traditional food also.
   b) You must like the taste of traditional food, I hope.
   c) Is Susan serving traditional food?
8. a) Yes, that is what they are saying.
   b) Yes, that is also what I'm saying.
   c) Yes, that is want I want to do.

9. a) Is that so! I should go also.
   b) Is that so, you want to go also?
   c) Is that true?

10. a) Sure, if you go, come and get me.
    b) For sure, if you go, I will go too.
    c) For sure, you come too. I will come and get you.

11. a) Okay, wait, I will ask my boss.
    b) Do you want to ask your boss first?
    c) Does he/she want to ask his/her boss first?

12. a) Who is your boss then? My spouse.
    b) Is your boss in charge of everything?
    c) Who is going with your boss?

Exercise J: **Review Test**

Preverbs:

1.	**Severn Ojibwe**	**Translation**
1.	kiiwe-	returning, going back
2.	ishi-	thus; so, there, in the certain way
3.	ci-	to, that, will, would, could, should
4.	kaa-	the one who; the one that
5.	ke-	will, would, should, could: FUTURE
6.	kinipi-	fast, quickly
7.	koci-	try to do
8.	nato-	real, natural, plain

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

9.	naaci-	get, fetch, go for
10.	nehpici-	permanently, not knowing when to quit
11.	niipaa-	at night, happening at night, nocturnal
12.	pwaahtawi-	delayed, late
13.	tahso-	so many, so much, a certain number
14.	watakmi-	easily

2.

	Translation	**Severn Ojibwe**
1.	returning, going back	kiiwe-
2.	thus; so, there, in the certain way	ishi-
3.	to, that, will, would, could, should	ci-
4.	the one who; the one that	kaa-
5.	will, would, should, could: FUTURE	ke-
6.	fast, quickly	kinipi-
7.	try to do	koci-
8.	real, natural, plain	nato-
9.	get, fetch, go for	naaci-
10.	permanently, not knowing when to quit	nehpici-
11.	at night, happening at night, nocturnal	niipaa-
12.	delayed, late	pwaahtawi-
13.	so many, so much, a certain number	tahso-
14.	easily	watakmi-

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

Lesson 4

Exercise A: **Additional Sentences**

Read and Understand:

1. a) It looks like it is going to snow permanently today.
   b) If it rains permanently, I will not leave.
   c) If you permanently quit your job, I will quit my job too.
2. a) How do you recognize what kind of day it will be? (weather wise)
   b) Do you recongnize what kind of day it will be tomorrow? (weather wise)
   c) Where do you want to put your boat?
3. a) It was a very bad red coloured sky early this morning.
   b) It looked very good, the red coloured sky this morning.
   c) I'm very happy to see the red coloured sky,
4. a) How then did you recognize the red coloured sky?
   b) Did you look at the red coloured sky this morning?
   c) It was a bad red coloured sky this morning.
5. a) There was an early dawn red coloured sky but then it faded away.
   b) If there is an early dawn red coloured sky, for sure it will be a bad day.
   c) If there is a red coloured sky and it fades away quickly, for sure it will be a bad day.
6. a) That is what the old-timers/elders use to say a long time ago.
   b) That is what the old-timers/elders use to like to look at red coloured sky.
   c) That is what the red coloured sky looks like if it wants to be a bad day. (weather wise)
7. a) If there is an early dawn red coloured sky early in the morning and suddenly it fades away, it will be a bad day all day long.
   b) If there is an early dawn red coloured sky and then it fades away quickly, for sure it will be a bad day soon.
   c) Did you see the early dawn red coloured sky this morning?
8. a) That is so amazing.
   b) You are so smart.
   c) He/she is so good-looking.
9. a) And that was what ruly use to happen, how you recognize the red coloured sky.
   b) That was how it was recognized the red coloured sky, that was how it use to happen.
   c) The way the red coloured sky is, that is how the day will be.
10. a) Now today, that is not how it is.
    b) Now today, it never happens that way.
    c) Now today, we don't see it happening that way.

Lakehead University, Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise B: **Additional Sentences II**

Read and Understand:

1. a) When does it look like to you it will be winter?
   b) Do you think it will be an early winter?
   c) Does it look like to you it will soon be summer?
2. a) To me, it looks like it will be a late winter.
   b) I think it will be a late winter.
   c) I will be late in falling asleep this evening.
3. a) How do you recognize when it will be winter?
   b) Since when did you know that soon it will be winter?
   c) Since when did you know that you are sick?
4. a) Every day I watch and wait for the geese to fly by.
   b) Every day I wait for my friends to come and visit.
   c) Every day I wait for you to come.
5. a) They fly to the south when winter approaches.
   b) Are you going south when winter approaches?
   c) Is the wind blowing from south?
6. a) I haven't seen them yet.
   b) Don't go yet!
   c) I haven't finished yet.
7. a) That is how I know it will be a late winter.
   b) That is how I know he/she will be late in arriving.
   c) That is where I am eating from too.
8. a) Old-timers use to say, if the geese fly by early, it will be winter early.
   b) Old-timers use to say, if the ducks fly away early, it will freeze up early.
   c) Old-timers use to say, if there is an early winter, in turn it will be an early summer.
9. a) Do you believe it then?
   b) Do you believe that story?
   c) I don't believe this story.
10. a) Yes, it is indeed that is true how I know that it usually happens.
    b) How then, do you usually see it to happen?
    c) A long time ago that is usually how it truly happened.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise C

Additional Sentences III

Read and Understand:

1. a) Does your daughter get sick easily?
   b) I can get sick easily when the weather is cold.
   c) My dog can get very angry easily.
2. a) He/she can get very sick easily during the cold weather.
   b) I can get very cold easily during winter.
   c) Do you get easily tired when you do something?
3. a) Does she usually use/take medicine anyway?
   b) How much medicine are you using?
   c) I think I am using too much medicine.
4. a) Yes, the doctor usually gives him/her medicine anyway.
   b) Yes, the doctor is sick too.
   c) How about the nurse, is she sick too?
5. a) But then, he/she usually uses them up quickly.
   b) I use all the money quickly.
   c) Do you use money quickly too?
6. a) He/she usually uses it too much.
   b) Do you use/take medicine all the time?
   c) No, I never use medicine.
7. a) Maybe, perhaps he/she uses too much, that is why he/she is sick.
   b) Maybe, perhaps you are using too much medicine, that is why you are sick.
   c) Maybe you're taking too much medicine to make you want to sleep.
8. a) That is what happens sometimes if medicine is used too much, you get sicker.
   b) Sometimes I use some medicine too.
   c) Sometimes it happens if too much medicine is used, people get sick even more.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise D

Review the New Words

Read and Understand:

1.	He/she is cutting firewood.	Do it a certain way.
	You tell me	Call, address, speak to
	He/she is sawing.	Me only.

1. a) Will you be cutting firewood tomorrow?
   b) Help me, I want to cut firewood.
   c) Does your father want to cut firewood too.

2. a) Tell me when you mother arrives.
   b) Tell me when you finish working.
   c) Tell me if you want money.

3. a) I was sawing when I finished cutting firewood.
   b) Do you also want to saw?
   c) When I finish sleeping I will also saw.

4. a) Never do that again.
   b) If you do that again I will never speak to you again.
   c) Do it correctly!

5. a) Call your spouse before you go home.
   b) Call your daughter when you want to leave.
   c) I will call you when I want you.

6. a) I will be going home alone the day after tomorrow.
   b) Will you be going alone when you finish sleeping.
   c) He/she will be singing alone when he/she is finished eating.

Writing Practice:

2.	cutting firewood	Do it a certain way
	tell me	cal, address, speak to
	sawing	me only

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise E: **Continuation of Review New Words**

Read and Understand:

1.	And, and so, then, and then	he/she is feasting
	wait please	it is indeed
	Every time	
	usually	get, fetch
		come and get me

1. a) Mary and Sally will get firewood tomorrow.
   b) Please hurry up and finish eating soon you will be leaving.
2. a) I will go home and then I will eat.
   b) I will eat and then I will sleep.
3. a) Every time I want to sleep, someone wakes me up.
   b) Every time I call you, you are not home.
4. a) I go to the dance all the time.
   b) Did you use to live there too?
5. a) The airplane can be seen in a distance.
   b) If it is a nice day, it can be seen in a distance.
6. a) Will you be feasting too tomorrow?
   b) When will you be feasting again?
7. a) It is indeed not possible that I can do it.
   b) It is indeed not possible that I can come today.
8. a) So it is possible that you can't come today?
   b) So are you sick too?
9. a) Go and get your ball. Let's play ball.
   b) Go and get your car. Let us go for a ride.
10. a) Come and get me when you're leaving.
    b) When you're going home, please come and get me.

Writing Practice:

2.	And, and so, then, and then	He/she is feasting
	wait! please	It is indeed
	Every time	Is that so
	Usually	get, fetch
		come and get me

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise F: **Using the New Words in Sentences**

Read and Understand:

1.	It is visible	suddenly
	I recognize it	all the time, all the way through
	this morning	bad
	red coloured sky	amazing
	faded away	happen a certain way
	that is usually	say, speak in a certain way

1. a) Your house looks nice.
   b) Your boat looks old.
2. a) Do you recognize that book?
   b) Do you recognize where you live?
3. a) I got up early this morning.
   b) what did you eat this morning?
4. a) There was a red coloured sky in the morning.
   b) Did you see the red coloured sky yesterday morning?
5. a) The red coloured sky faded away quickly this morning.
   b) Let's go, the rain has already stopped.
6. a) That is usually what I think too, that soon it will be winter.
   b) That is usually what I see happening too.
7. a) While I was sleeping my ex-spouse suddenly arrived.
   b) While I was working, I suddenly got sick.
8. a) Will you be gone all day long tomorrow?
   b) Did you walk all night long last night?
9. a) For sure, it looks like it will be a bad day tomorrow.
   b) He/she is always bad.
10. a) I think that it is amazing that he/she has not arrived yet.
    b) That is amazing that it is not winter yet.
11. a) That is amazing what is happening now.
    b) Do you think that too it is amazing what is happening?
12. a) What is he/she saying? "I am not coming", he/she is saying.
    b) You too say it, he/she says to him/her.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

Writing Practice:

2. It is visible
   I recognize it
   This morning
   red coloured sky
   faded away
   That is usually
   suddenly
   all the time, all the way through
   bad
   amazing
   happens a certain way
   say , speak in a certain way

Exercise G: **Studying New Words**

Read and Understand:

1.	every day	It is there
	I see it that way	know
	watch and wait	what purpose, why is it so
	snow goose	a long time ago
	flys by	you believe
	the time is	that is what I know to be
	not yet	it happens

1. a) Every day I wait for you.
   b) Every day is a bad day.
2. a) Soon it will rain I see it that way.
   b) When do you see that it will stop raining?
3. a) Is Mary still watching and waiting this evening?
   b) Will you be watching and waiting too this evening?
4. a) I saw a snow goose flying by yesterday.
   b) Do you also want to eat a some snow goose?
5. a) Did you see the geese fly by this morning?
   b) Are you watching and waiting for the ducks to fly by?
6. a) It is half past one.
   b) It always happens like that about this time.
7. a) I don't want to eat yet.
   b) No, I have not seen him/her yet.
8. a) That is how far I am going to go tomorrow.
   b) That is where I want to live too.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

9. a) Do you know already when you will be leaving?
   b) Do you know when he/she will arrive?
10. a) How do you know that soon it will be a bad day?
    b) When did you know that you were sick?
11. a) The old timers worked hard all the time.
    b) The old way of living.
12. a) Do you believe everthing that you hear?
    b) Yes, I believe everything that is told to me.
13. a) That is what I know too always.
    b) What do you know then?
14. a) That is what happens all the time before winter.
    b) Do you see that too that is usually what happens?

Writing Practice:

2. Everyday
   I see it a certain way
   He/she is watching and waiting
   snow goose
   he/she is flying by
   the time is
   not yet
   It is there
   you know
   what purpose, why is it so
   a long time ago
   you believe
   that is what I know to be
   it happens

Exercise H: **Learning Words How Its Used in Sentences**

Read and Understand:

1.

very	use it
during	maybe, perhaps, in some way
medicine	possible, would, perhaps
doctor	maybe so, perhaps so, is it possible so
although, in vain	it is so
give to him/her	sometimes
use it all	it is used
usually	do it anyway, regardless

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

1. a) It is very cold today.
   b) I am very happy to see you for a little while.
2. a) During the cold weather I went south.
   b) During the heavy rain he/she came home last night.
3. a) What kind of medicine are you using at this time?
   b) Are you buying medicine?
4. a) The doctor gave me medicine.
   b) The doctor is sick too.
5. a) He/she has told him/her not to do that.
   b) He/she was told not to leave.
6. a) Give him/her shoes before he/she leaves.
   b) Give me my shoes before you leave.
7. a) Use up all your water right now.
   b) Now I have almost used up my food.
8. a) I am always thinking of you too.
   b) He/she always seems busy too.
9. a) You can use some of it too.
   b) Does he/she want to use some of it too.
10. a) Maybe tomorrow I will go home.
    b) Perhaps he/she has not arrived yet.
11. a) Maybe its possible I will fall down.
    b) Maybe its possible that he/she will not come.
12. a) And so I will be leaving tomorrow too.
    b) So maybe I will not be coming.
13. a) Sometimes I am very lazy to work here.
    b) Only sometimes I am happy.
14. a) My canoe is being used at this time.
    b) If it is not being used tomorrow, you can use it.
15. a) Do not plan on going anyway.
    b) If the child does not eat, he/she will keep on crying anyway.

Writing Practice:

2.

very	use it
during	maybe, perhaps, in some way
medicine	possible, would, perhaps
doctor	maybe so, perhaps so, is it possible so
all though, in vain	it is so
give it to him/her	sometimes
use it all	it is used
usually	do it anyway, regardless

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise I: **Review the Words**

Read and Understand:

Animate Nouns
elder, old-timers
doctor
snow goose
my spouse
my boss

Inanimate Nouns
medicine
feast
sickness
job, work, employment
stick of firewood

Animate Intransitive Verbs
cutting firewod
flying by
sawing
he/she is having a feast
say, speak in a certain way
he/she is watching and waiting
he/she is serving food

Inanimate Intransitive Verbs
red coloured sky
it happens
the time is
it is being used
it is visible
it is morning
it is a bad day
the weather is cold

Transitive Animate Verbs
you call him/her
you give it to him/her
get, fetch
you tell me
come and get me

Transitive Inanimate Verbs
you recognize it
look at, which looks so, see in a certain way
to know
to use something
use it all

Preverbs
to fade away
a long time ago
all though, in vain
every
usually

Particles
this morning
so it is usually
suddenly
there
very
usually
maybe, perhaps, in some way
is it possible that, would you, perhaps
sometimes
do it anyway, regardless
me only
during

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

Useful Expressions:

I can do it myself.
Thank you my friend.
I will call you later.
That's good.
Is that so!, Is that right!
That is it indeed!
That is so amazing!
That is how I know.
It is indeed true.
That is indeed true.
That is true.
When does it look like to you it will be winter?
That is what happens sometimes.
Not yet (statement)
Not yet! (command)

Exercise J: **Review Test**

Useful Expressions:

1. I can do it myself.
Thank you my friend.
I will call you later.
That's good.
Is that so!, Is that right!
That is it indeed.
That is so amazing!
That is how I know.
It is indeed true.
That is indeed true.
It is true!
When does it look like to you it will be winter?
That is what happens sometimes.
Not yet (statement)
Not yet! (command)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Lesson 5

Exercise A: **Phrases and Expressions**

Read and Understand:

1) Do you want me to help you?
2) Perhaps I will see you again later.
3) At the gathering. (meeting)
4) Just anything.
5) That is indeed what he/she is saying.
6) I should go to.
7) If you want to go, I will go with you.
8) I want to rest for a short while.
9) He/she will be arriving late.
10) How did you find that out?
11) How then did you recognize it?
12) It faded away quickly.
13) That is how/where I understand it.
14) That is where I will wait for you.
15) That is what they used to say.

Exercise B: **Some Words are Missing**

Read and Understand:

Ta-pwaahtawi-takohshin.
Pinamaa niwii-anwep.
Aanti wenci-kihkentaman?
Aan tahsh kaa-ishi-nihsitawinaman?
Ami ahko ehkitowaahpan.
Keniin nitaa-kii-ishaa.
Kiishpin wii-ishaayan, (ki)ka-wiiciiwin.
Amohshahi ehkitot(c).
Amihimaa ke-ishi-piihinaan.
Wiipac kii-aahte-naakwan.
Piko kekoon.
Kinantawentaan ina ci-wiicihinaan?
Naake kaana tahsh miina ka-waapamin.
Kaa-ishi-maawacihitinaaniwak.
Amihimaa wenci-nihsitohtamaan.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise C: **Expanding Phrases and Expressions**

1. 1) Do you want me to help you when you're cutting wood?
   2) Perhaps I will see you later again at the dance.
   3) I will see you at the gathering in the morning.
   4) They serve just about anything at the feast.
   5) That is indeed what he/she said that he/she will not come.
   6) I should go too if I am not busy.
   7) If you want to go, I will go with you if you don't mind.
   8) I want to rest for a short while when I finish work.
   9) He/she will arrive late if its a bad day.
   10) How did you find that out it would freeze-up early.
   11) How then did you recognize what the weather would be tomorrow?
   12) This morning the red-coloured sky faded away quickly.
   13) That is how I understand that it will be a nice day tomorrow.
   14) That is where I will wait for you when you arrive.
   15) That is what the old-timers/elders use to say.

2. 1) When I cut wood.
   2) At the dance.
   3) I will see you there in the morning.
   4) They will be serving at the feast.
   5) He/she does not want to come.
   6) If I am not busy.
   7) If you don't mind.
   8) When I finish working.
   9) If its a bad day. (obviative)
   10) Early freeze-up.
   11) What the weather would be tomorrow.
   12) The red-coloured sky this morning.
   13) That it would be nice a day tomorrow.
   14) That you will be arriving.
   15) Old timers/elders.

3. **New Vocabulary:**

1) He/she is cutting firewood.
   When I am cutting firewood.
2) He/she is dancing.
   When there is a dance.
3) Be morning.
   In the morning.
4) He/she is serving food.
   People are serving food.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

5) He/she feasts.
At the feast.

6) He/she is busy.
If I am busy.

7) You think.
If you think.

10) Freeze-up.
If freeze-up.

11) Be a certain weather.
If being a certain weather.

12) A red-coloured sky.
If there is a red-coloured sky.

Exercise D: Expanding Your Own Sentences

Writing Practice:

1. He/she is cutting firewood.
There is a dance.
Be morning.
They are serving food.
There is a feast.
He/she is busy.
He/she thinks.
Be a certain weather, happen in a certain way.
There is a red-coloured sky.

1) If you want me to help you when you are cutting firewood, call me.
2) There is going to be a dance after we work.

Exercise E: Translation

Review Exercise:

1. Kinantawentaan ina ci-wiicihinaan?
2. Naake kaana tahsh miina ka-waapamin.
3. Kaa-ishi-maawacihitinaaniwank.
4. Piko kekoon.
5. Amohshahi ehkit(c).
6. Keniin nitaa-kii-ishaa.
7. Kiishpin wii-ishaayan, (ki)ka-wiiciiwin.
8. Pinamaa niwii-anwep.
9. Ta-pwaahtawi-taohshin.
10. Aanti wenci-kihkentaman?

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

11. Aan tahsh kaa-ishi-nihsitawinaman?
12. Wiipac kii-aahte-naakwan.
13. Amihimaa wenci-nihsitohtamaan.
14. Amihimaa ke-ishi-piihinaan.
15. Ami ahko ehkitowaahpan.

Exercise F: **More Phrases and Expressions**

Read and Understand:

1. Don't disobey!
2. Don't tease!/mischief
3. Don't do that!
4. Don't do bad things!
5. Sit still!
6. Behave yourself!
7. I regret it, I am sorry!
8. I am embarrassed. (shy)
9. I am lonely.
10. I am totally exhausted.
11. Be careful not to hurt yourself.
12. Are you able to do it by yourself?
13. Take good care of yourself.
14. Already its starting to get cold (weather) again.
15. Come and get/pick me when you go.

Exercise G: **Some Words are Missing**

Read and Understand:

Nishikatentaan.
Tetako nicaakii.
Nimincinawes!
Waahkamisin!
Sakamaatapin!
Manaaci-pihci-tootaason!
Ka-kii-tootaan ina kiinehta?
Pi-otaahpinihshin ahpii ani-maacaayan.
Aasha miina maacii-tahkaayaa.
Ikaawin maanenciken!
Ikaawin nanaatihkosiin!
Kwayahk kanawenimitison.
Ikaawin tootan!
Ninanepewis.
Ikaawin maci-tootan!

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise H: **Expanding Phrases and Expressions**

Read and Understand:

1.
1) Don't disobey while you're at school.
2) Don't tease! If you're teasing, someone will fight you.
3) Don't do that! You might hurt yourself.
4) Don't do bad things! If you do something bad, you will be judged by the court.
5) Sit still while you're eating.
6) Behave yourself! If you don't behave yourself, you will get a spanking.
7) I am sorry that I spoke to you wrongly.
8) I usually get embarrassed when I go with you.
9) I usually get lonely when you go.
10) I am totally exhausted today.
11) Be careful not to hurt yourself while you're working.
12) Are you able to do this by yourself to finish this job?
13) Take good care of yourself so you don't hurt yourself.
14) Already its starting to get cold (weather) again this week.
15) Come and get me when you go I would like to go too.

2.
1) While you are at school.
2) If you're teasing, someone will fight you.
3) You will hurt yourself.
4) If you're doing something bad, you will be judged by the court.
5) While you are eating.
6) If you are not behaving, you will get a spanking.
7) That I spoke to you wrongly.
8) That was almost the end of me.
9) Usually when you go.
10) Today.
11) While you're working.
12) To finish this job.
13) So you won't hurt yourself.
14) This week.
15) I want to go also.

3. **New Vocabulary:**

1) He/she is attending school
Are attending school
I am attending school
You are attending school

2) Fight him/her
He/she will fight you
I am fighting him/her
You are fighting him/her

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

3) He/she is doing something to self
I am doing something to myself
You are doing something to yourself

4) He/she is judging in court
You will be taken to court
I am taking him/her to court
You're taking him/her to court

6) You hit him/her OR You are spanking him/her.
You will get a spanking (hitting)
I am hitting him/her (spanking)
You are hitting him/her (spanking)

7) Call him/her OR Speak to him/her
I spoke to you wrongly
I am speaking to him/her
You are speaking to him/her

8) That is close/nearly
To finish it

12) You finish it
I finish it
You finish it

13) job, work, employment
my job
your job
his/her job

14) be a week
in one week

Exercise I: **Expanding Your Own Sentences**

1. He/she is attending school.
Fight him/her.
Doing something to self.
You take him/her to court.
You give him/her a spanking. (hitting)
Call him/her OR Speak to him/her.
It is close/nearly.
Finish it.
job, work
be a week

1) Before you go to school, take out the garbage.
2) Don't fight while you are at school.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise J: **Translation**

Review Exercise:

1. Ikaawin maanenciken!
2. Ikaawin nanaatihkosiin!
3. Ikaawin tootan!
4. Ikaawin maci-tootan!
5. Sakamaatapin!
6. Waahkamisin!
7. Nimincinawes!
8. Ninanepewis.
9. Nishikatentaan.
10. Tetako nicaakii.
11. Manaaci-pihci-tootaason!
12. Ka-kii-tootan ina kiinehta?
13. Kwayahk kanawenimitison.
14. Aasha miina maacii-tahkaayaa.
15. Pi-otaahpinihshin ahpii ani-maacaayan.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; ENGLISH TRANSLATIONS

Let's Look Back At What You Have Learned:

Lessons 1 - 5

Animate Nouns:

my sweetheart	my cousin (cross cousin of opposite sex)	doctor
my ex-spouse/girlfriend	my spouse	elder
my close relation	my fellow woman	snow goose
my relation	my fellow man	tobacco
my worker	my fellow elder	drum
my co-worker	my name-sake	ring
raisin	iron	fish net
my spouse	my boss	my friend

Pronouns:

I alone, me only	you alone, you only	him/her along, him/her only

Inanimate Nouns:

school	warehouse	laundromat
restaurant	radio station	dug/medicine
restroom	police station	feast
recreation hall	church	sickness/illness
band office	gas station	gathering/meeting
jail	garage	work/employment
store	library	

Animate Intransitive Verbs:

remember	get used up	be rich
be fine, be well, be in good	start work	shake hands
be wanted	rest	saw things
disobey	feast	do mean things
get firewood	sit quietly	be on the lookout
to behave	fly along	be sorry
give food to people	be embarrassed	be busy
be bored, lonely	attend school	burned out/exhausted
do s.t. to oneself	take care of oneself	be thankful

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; ENGLISH TRANSLATIONS

Inanimate Intransitive Verbs:

be visible	be a red-coloured sky	happen a certain way
be useful	be morning	be late afternoon
freeze up	happen so, be such weather	be a week
every day	every night	be warm weather
be cold (weather)		

Transitive Animate Verbs:

watch for s.o.	borrow from s.o., write to s.o.	thank s.o.
fetch s.o., approach s.o.	judge s.o.	help s.o.
wait for s.o.	recognize s.o.	

Transitive Inanimate Verbs:

see s.t. a certain way	see a certain way	recognize s.t.
know s.t., find s.t. out	use s.t.	use up s.t.
do s.t. so	finish s.t.	believe s.t.
think so of s.t.		recognize s.t. by sight
look so, appear so		

Preverbs:

returning, going back	past tense	will, shall	so many, so much
fast, quickly	as far as, as long as	be able to	long ago
try to do	fade away, disappear	try, attempt	during
get, fetch, go for	what purpose, cause	did	hither, towards
permanently	although, in vain	easily	from there, cause
at night	delayed, late		would, could

Preverbs and Prenouns:

all the way	bad	good, nice

Preverbs that occur only in the Conjunct Order:

to, that, will	the one who	will, would	able to	that

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 1; ENGLISH TRANSLATIONS

Particles:

hello!, greetings!	every day	last
certain location, certain way of	probably, possibly	it is possible
something	regardless, anyway	is that so, is that right!
so is that	sometimes, once in a while	it is so
this morning	(exclamation of amazement)	really, very, to a high degree
and then	likely, must be	so many times, everytime
(exclamation of surprise)	it is indeed so	this morning
it is usually	right, correct, straight	amazing
later	all day	yet
all night	thanks, thank you	
it is indeed	obviously	
formerly, used to	extremely, extensively	

Expressions:

Where are you going?	When are you going?
Where do you want to go?	When do you want to go?
Where is he/she going?	When is he/she going?
Where does he/she want to go?	When does he/she want to go?
Where are they going? (pl)	When are you going? (pl)
Where do you want to go? (pl)	When do you want to go? (pl)
Where are you going?	When are you going?
Where do they want to go?	When do they want to go?
Not really.	I thank you.
Probably not.	Don't disobey!
Where do you work?	Don't get into mischief!
Where do you want to work?	Don't do that!
Where are you sitting?	Don't do bad things!
Where do you want to sit?	Settle down! (sit still!)
Every day	Behave yourself!
Every night	I am sorry!
I hope not.	I am embarrassed. (shy)
Thanks my friend!	I am lonely, bored.
I will call you later.	I am burned out/exhausted!
That's good.	Can you do it by yourself.
That is so amazing!	Take good care of yourself.
That's true!	When do you see it being winter?
It is true!	Not yet!
Not yet.	I should go too.
Do you want me to help you?	
Anything.	**Note:** More expressions and sentences on page 401.
I want to rest for a while.	
I will wait there.	

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Part Two



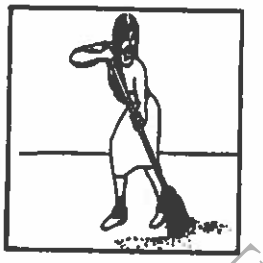
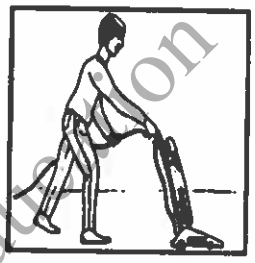
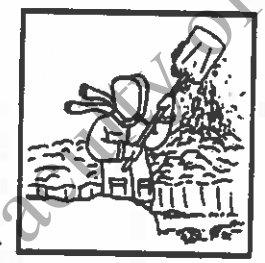
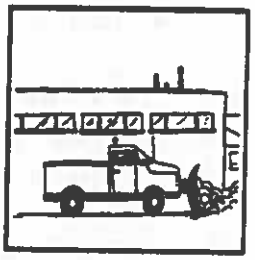
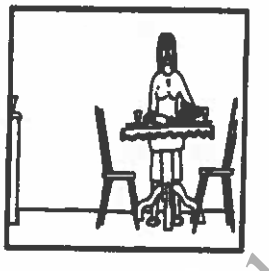
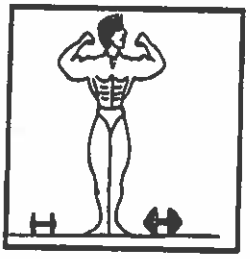
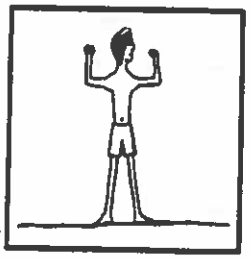
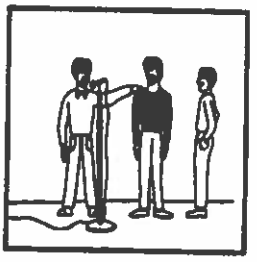
Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Onikamook
Singers

Exercise A

Animate Intransitive Verbs

Listen carefully as your instructor says these words. Each word will be repeated three or four times.

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 
7. 
8. 
9. 
10. 
11. 
12. 
13. 
14. 
15. 
16. 

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise B

Pronunciation Practice

1. For review of the 16 pictures from the previous page, listen carefully to your instructor saying the following words and imitate what you hear. Translations are on page 220.

1)	payehkinike	9)	kwayaantahcike
2)	kaahsiinike	10)	pimitaapii
3)	wepahike	11)	pimiwane
4)	wiihkwepahike	12)	piminike
5)	nanahacike	13)	pimoocike
6)	kisiipiikinike	14)	mashkawii
7)	wepahaakone	15)	niinamii
8)	tawehkonehike	16)	wiintamaake

2. Listen carefully as your instructor says these words. Words are broken down for you into syllables to help you identify the pronunciations. Spend some time to repeat them on your own or with your partner.

1)	pa ye hki ni ke	9)	kwa yaa nta hci ke
2)	kaa hsii ni ke	10)	pi mi taa pii
3)	we pa hi ke	11)	pi mi wa ne
4)	wii hkwe pa hi ke	12)	pi mi ni ke
5)	na na ha ci ke	13)	pi moo ci ke
6)	ki sii pii ki ni ke	14)	ma shka wii
7)	we pa haa ko ne	15)	nii na mii
8)	ta we hko ne hi ke	16)	wii nta maa ke

3. For writing practice, rewrite the words using section one as a guideline. Space is provided for you below.

1.	_____	9.	_____
2.	_____	10.	_____
3.	_____	11.	_____
4.	_____	12.	_____
5.	_____	13.	_____
6.	_____	14.	_____
7.	_____	15.	_____
8.	_____	16.	_____

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise C

Understanding the Meaning of the Words

Writing Practice:

1. Here is the list of sixteen Animate Intransitive Verbs once again. In this exercise, before you begin, review the meaning of the words. Then translate them into Severn Ojibwe. Translations are on page 220.

1) clean things
2) wipe things for cleaning
3) sweep the floor
4) vacuum cleaning
5) tidy things
6) washing clothes
7) shovelling snow
8) snow-plow
9) be ready or available things
10) go along by sled or sleigh
11) carry pack along on back
12) carry things along on one's shoulder
13) carry things
14) strong
15) weak
16) announce to people

2. Here is a list of all the items you have learned given in mixed order. Use the numbered pictures on page 131 to match up numbers and letters in the space provided for you below. Answers are on page 220.

a) pimoocike
b) mashkawii
c) niinamii
d) wiintamaake
e) payehkinike
f) kaahsiinike
g) wepahike
h) kisiipiikinike
i) piminike
j) pimiwane
k) pimitaapii
l) kwayaantahcike
m) nanahacike
n) tawehkonehike
o) wepahaakone
p) wiihkwepahike

1. ____ 5. ____ 9. ____ 13. ____
2. ____ 6. ____ 10. ____ 14. ____
3. ____ 7. ____ 11. ____ 15. ____
4. ____ 8. ____ 12. ____ 16. ____

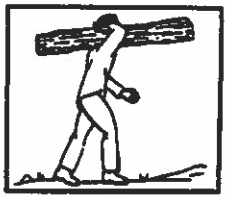
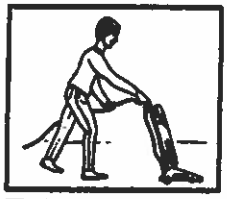
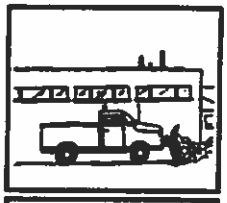
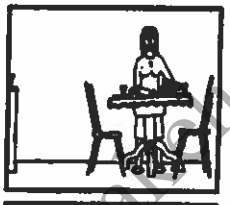
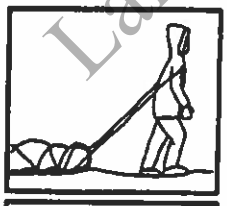
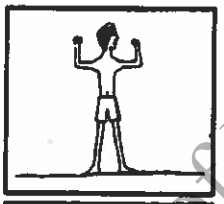
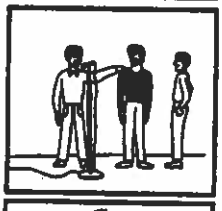
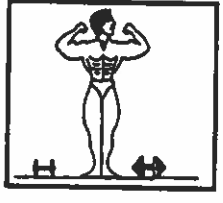
Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 1

Exercise D

Match Up Pictures and Words

In this exercise, there are sixteen (16) pictures listed below in mixed order. Accompanying the words is a small box to the right of each word. Using a pencil, match up pictures and words by writing the appropriate number in each box. Use page 131 for corrections.

1.  piminike ☐
2.  pimiwane ☐
3.  wiihkwepahike ☐
4.  tawehkonehike ☐
5.  nanahacike ☐
6.  kwayaantahcike ☐
7.  pimitaapii ☐
8.  wepahaakone ☐
9.  kiisiipiikinike ☐
10.  niinamii ☐
11.  kaahsiinike ☐
12.  wepahike ☐
13.  pimoocike ☐
14.  payehkinike ☐
15.  wiintamaake ☐
16.  mashkayii ☐

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise E

Translation into English

Here is the list once again of all sixteen verbs given in mixed order in Severn Ojibwe. Translate them into English. The space is provided for you in the right of each word. Try to do this translation on your own without looking at previous translations. Translations are on page 221.

1) wepahike _____
2) pimoocike _____
3) kaahsiinike _____
4) niinamii _____
5) payehkinike _____
6) wiintamaake _____
7) piminike _____
8) wiihkwepahike _____
9) mashkawii _____
10) kisiipiikinike _____
11) pimiwane _____
12) tawehkonehike _____
13) nanahacike _____
14) kwayaantahcike _____
15) pimitaapii _____
16) wepahaakone _____

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise F

Singular Forms

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, we will add the first-person and second-person forms for each of the new verbs we have learned. Listen carefully as the instructor says the following words. This time, we will not use the pictures, just numbers. Translations are on page 221.

1)	nipayehkinike kipayehkinike payehkinike	2)	nikaahsiinike kikaahsiinike kaahsiinike	3)	niwepahike kiwepahike wepahike	4)	niwiihkwepahike kiwiihkwepahike wiihkwepahike
5)	ninanahacike kinanahacike nanahacike	6)	nikisiipiikinike kikisiipiikinike kisiipiikinike	7)	niwepahaakone kiwepahaakone wepahaakone	8)	nitawehkonehike kitawehkonehike tawehkonehike
9)	nikwayaantahcike kikwayaantahcike kwayaantahcike	10)	nipimitaapii kipimitaapii pimitaapii	11)	nipimiwane kipimiwane pimiwane	12)	nipiminike kipiminike piminike
13)	nipimoocike kipimoocike pimoocike	14)	nimashkawii kimashkawii mashkawii	15)	niniinamii kiniinamii niinamii	16)	niwiintamaake kiwiintamaake wiintamaake

Writing Practice:

2. Now you know sixteen Animate Intransitive Verbs. For writing practice, write each word as follows: Answers are on page 222.

I'm _____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

You're _____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

He/she _____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

3. Let's also practice some **negative forms** using the words listed below. Remember to use correct negative forms. **Kaawin + verb + hsiin.**

payehkinike	wepahike	nanahacike	wepahaakone
kaahsiinike	wiihkwepahike	kisiipiikinike	tawehkonehike

1) I'm not _____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

2) You're not_____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

3) He/she's not_____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise G

Questions and Answers in Singular Forms

Speaking Practice:

Using the words in sentences that you have learned. In this exercise for speaking, work in pairs taking turns asking questions and answers both positive and negative. Use the phrases from Exercise F section numbers 1, 2, and 3. Translations are on page 223.

Here are some examples:

Question	Positive Answer	Negative Answer
Kipayehkinike na?	Ehe, nipayehkinike.	Kaawin, kaawin nipayehkinikeshsiin.
Payehkinike na Sam?	Ehe, payehkinike Sam.	Kaawin, kaawin payehkinikehsiin Sam.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise H

Plural Forms

1. In this exercise, you will be learning the plural forms of the Animate Intransitive Verbs we have introduced in this lesson. Listen carefully as your instructor says the following words. The prefixes and suffixes that make these words plural are in **bold type**. Translations are on pages 223 and 224.

1) **ni**payehkinikemin **ki**payehkinikemin kipayehkinikenaawaa payehkinikewak	2) **ni**kaahsiinikemin **ki**kaahsiinikemin kikaahsiinikenaawaa kaahsiinikewak	3) **ni**wepahikemin **ki**wepahikemin **ki**wepahikenaawaa wepahikewak	4) **ni**wiihkwepahikemin **ki**wiihkwepahikemin **ki**wiihkwepahikenaawaa wiihkwepahikewak
5) **ni**nanahacikemin **ki**nanahacikemin **ki**nanahacikenaawaa nanahacikewak	6) **ni**kisiipiikinikemin **ki**kisiipiikinikemin **ki**sisiipiikinikenaawaa kisiipiikinikewak	7) **ni**wepahaakonemin **ki**wepahaakonemin **ki**wepahaakonenaawaa wepahaakonewak	8) **ni**tawehkonehikemin **ki**tawehkonehikemin **ki**tawehkonehikenaawaa tawehkonehikewak
9) **ni**kwayaantahcikemin **ki**kwayaantahcikemin **ki**kwayaantahcikenaawaa kwayaantahcikewak	10) **ni**pimitaapiimin **ki**pimitaapiimin **ki**pimitaapiinaawaa pimitaapiiwak	11) **ni**pimiwanemin **ki**pimiwanemin **ki**pimiwanenaawaa pimiwanewak	12) **ni**piminikemin **ki**piminikemin **ki**piminikenaawaa piminikewak
13) **ni**pimoocikemin **ki**pimoocikemin **ki**pimoocikenaawaa pimoocikewak	14) **ni**mashkawiimin **ki**mashkawiimin **ki**mashkawiinaawaa mashkawiiwak	15) **ni**niinamiimin **ki**niinamiimin **ki**niinamiinaawaa niinamiiwak	16) **ni**wiintamaakemin **ki**wiintamaakemin **ki**wiintamaakenaawaa wiintamaakewak

Question and Answer:

2. You can also ask and answer questions using the plural forms that you have just learned. Translations are on page 224.

Question	**Answer**
Kipayehkinikenaawaa na? Kipayehkinikenaawaa na?	Ehe, nipayehkinikemin. (exclusive) Kaawin, kaawin nipayehkinikehsiimin.
Kika-payehkinikemin na? Kika-payihkinikemin na?	Ehe, kika-payehkinikemin. (inclusive) Kaawin, kaawin kika-payehkinikehsiimin.
Payehkinikewak na? Payehkinikewak na?	Ehe, payehkinikewak. Kaawin, kaawin payehkinikehsiiwak.

Now, write question and answer pairs using the plural verb forms using the word listed below.

kaahsiinike

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 1

Paradigms:

3 a) In this lesson, you have learned the meanings of sixteen **Animate Intransitive Verbs**, including singular and plural forms, and also positive and negative forms. Below are complete positive paradigms for some of these verbs. For convenience, we have also listed the number codes that indicate the person and number of each verb form given. This is just a reminder. You have already used these person and number codes in Introductory and Intermediate levels. (You may wish to review your notes or consult your instructor if you are unsure of what each number code stands for.) Translations are on pages 224 and 225.

1 niwepahike	1 ninanahacike	1 nikisiipiikinike
2 kiwepahike	2 kinanahacike	2 kikisiipiikinike
3 wepahike	3 nanahacike	3 kisiipiikinike
13 niwepahikemin	13 ninanahacikemin	13 nikisiipiikinikemin
21 kiwepahikemin	21 kinanahacikemin	21 kikisiipiikinikemin
22 kiwepahikenaawaa	22 kinanahacikenaawaa	22 kikisiipiikinikenaawaa
33 wepahikewak	33 nanahacikewak	33 kisiipiikinikewak

b) Now, write paradigms for the following verbs listed below.

	wepahaakone	**tawehkonehike**	**kwayaantahcike**
1	_____	_____	_____
2	_____	_____	_____
3	_____	_____	_____
13	_____	_____	_____
21	_____	_____	_____
22	_____	_____	_____
33	_____	_____	_____

c) Write negative paradigms for the following. The first set of examples has been done for you.

	pimiwane	**piminike**
1 kaawin nipimitaapiihsiin	1 _____	1 _____
2 kaawin kipimitaapiihsiin	2 _____	2 _____
3 kaawin pimitaapiihsiin	3 _____	3 _____
13 kaawin nipimitaapiihsiimin	13 _____	13 _____
21 kaawin kipimitaapiihsiimin	21 _____	21 _____
22 kaawin kipimitaapiihsiinaawaa	22 _____	22 _____
33 kaawin pimitaapiihsiiwak	33 _____	33 _____

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 1

Exercise I

Dialogues

Read and Understand:

1. Read and understand the following dialogues. Concentrate on singular verbs and how they are used in the dialogues. Words introduced to you in this Lesson are in *italic type*. Also, some words will be introduced to you throughout the dialogues. If you find any new words, underline them. New vocabulary and English translations will be explained aferwards. Translations are on pages 225 and 226.

A. Waaciye nitootem. Aan entootaman?
Waaciye nitootem. Mekwaac *nipayehkinike*.
Kah! Kinantawentaan ina ci-wiicihinaan?
Ehe, *kimashkawii* na? Kiishpin ekaa ontamiihkeyan pi-wiicihihshin.
Kaawin nitoontamiihkehsiin ohowe mekwaac.
Aanahpii tahsh ke-piishaayan?
Shemaak nika-piishaa. Kinantawentaan ina kekoon ci-piitooyaan?
Kaawin. Amii piko ishi-piishaan. Aasha kahkina kekoon nitayaan ke-aapacihtooyahk.
Amihiwe kwayahk. Aasha nipi-maacaa.
Ahaaw, naake kaana tahsh ka-waapamin.

B. Waaciye nitoonci-wiicitaamaakan.
Aan eshi-ayaayan noonkom kaa-kekishepaayaak?
Noonkom piko nitishi-wanishkaa.
Kah! Kikii-pwaatawi-kawihshim na eni-tipihkaak?
Kaawin, kaawin kwayahk nitoonci-nipaahsiin tipihkonk.
Awiya na kikii-amacihik tipihkonk?
Ehe, awiya kii-*kaahsiinike* kape-tipihk tipihkonk kaa-ishi-taayaan. Kiin tahsh wiin, aan entootaman?
Akwaciink nitashiiwihtoo ohowe mekwaac.
Kah! Aan entootaman?
Nipayehkinike akwaciink. *Niwepahike* kaye *niwepahaakone*.

New Vocabulary:

A. **Nitayaan** *nid* My possession, I have it
B. **Nitoonci-wiicitaamaakan** *na* my neighbour
Kawihshimo *vai* go to bed, lie down on a bed
Eni-tipihkaak *vii* last evening
Tipihkonk *vii* last night
Amacihi *vta* wake s.o. up
Kaa-ishi-taayaan *vai* where I live (location)
Nitashiiwihtoo *vai* do things in a certain location

Note: Kape-tipihk and **kape-tipihkaa** means the same which is "all night".

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write two dialogues of your own. Try to include some of the AI verbs listed on Exercise B on page 132 in each dialogue.

Speaking Practice:

3. For speaking practice, work with a partner by reading the dialogues in this lesson, as well as the new ones you wrote yourself. Take turns with your partner so you have the opportunity to say each line.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise J

Review Test

Animate Intransitive Verbs:

1. This review test has two sections. Before you begin, review the spelling and meanings of the words very carefully. When you are ready, translate them into English. Remember, try to answer without looking at your notes. Translations are on page 226.

Severn Ojibwe	Translation
1. payehkinike	
2. kaahsiinike	
3. wepahike	
4. wiihkwepahike	
5. nanahacike	
6. kisiipiikinike	
7. wepahaakone	
8. tawehkonehike	
9. kwayaantahcike	
10. pimitaapii	
11. pimiwane	
12. piminike	
13. pimoocike	
14. mashkawii	
15. niinamii	
16. wiintamaake	

Note: Check your translations when you have finished.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

2. In this section, before you begin, review the spelling and the meaning of the words very carefully. When you are ready, translate them into Severn Ojibwe. Translations are on page 227.

English	Severn Ojibwe
1. clean things	
2. wipe things for cleaning	
3. sweep the floor	
4. vacuum cleaning	
5. tidy things	
6. wash clothes	
7. shovelling snow	
8. snow-plow	
9. be ready or available things	
10. go along by sled or sleigh	
11. carry pack along on back	
12. carry thing along on one's shoulder	
13. carry things	
14. be strange	
15. be weak	
16. announce to people	

Note: Check your translations when you have finished.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise A

First and Second-Person Transitive Verbs

You have already learned how to form the sentences with Transitive Verbs. Here are more TA and TI verbs that you can learn how to use. Translations for sections 1 and 2 are on pages 227 and 228.

1. In this exercise, there are twelve (12) TA verbs and twelve (12) TI verbs introduced to you. Listen carefully as your instructor repeats them. Let's begin with the first person singular subject forms. In these forms the grammatical object is third-person.

	VTA	VTI
1)	Nipaahpihaa	Nipaahpihtoon
2)	Nikihkenimaa	Nikihkentaan
3)	Nikaanaa	Nikaatoon
4)	Nikanoonaa	Nikanootaan
5)	Ninaasihkawaa	Ninaasihkaan
6)	Nishikatenimaa	Nishikatentaan
7)	Nipahkihtehwaa	Nipahkihtehaan
8)	Nikanawaapamaa	Nikanawaapantaan
9)	Nimihkawaa	Nimihkaan
10)	Nitakwanahwaa	Nitakwanahaan
11)	Nitanaamenimaa	Nitanaamentaan
12)	Nitayamiihtamawaa	Nitayamiihtaan

Repeat this exercise until you completely understand the meaning of the words and have mastered the pronunciation.

2. Let's repeat the exercise with the second-person singular forms. Again, remember that the grammatical object is third-person.

	VTA	VTI
1)	Kipaahpihaa	Kipaahpihtoon
2)	Kikihkenimaa	Kikihkentaan
3)	Kikaanaa	Kikaatoon
4)	Kikanoonaa	Kikanootaan
5)	Kinaasihkawaa	Kinaasihkaan
6)	Kishikatenimaa	Kishikatentaan
7)	Kipahkihtehwaa	Kipahkihtehaan
8)	Kikanawaapamaa	Kikanawaapantaan
9)	Kimihkawaa	Kimihkaan
10)	Kitakwanahwaa	Kitakwanahaan
11)	Kitanaamenimaa	Kitanaamentaan
12)	Kitayamiihtamawaa	Kitayamiihtaan

Repeat these words until you completely understand the meaning of the words and have mastered the pronunciation.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise B

Third-Person Transitive Verbs

1. In this exercise, you will continue to practice the pronunciation of these words listed below. Listen carefully as the instructor repeats them with third-person singular object. Translations are on page 228.

	VTA	VTI
1)	Opaahpihaan	Opaahpihtoon
2)	Okihkenimaan	Okihkentaan
3)	Okaanaan	Okaatoon
4)	Okanoonaan	Okanootaan
5)	Onaasihkawaan	Onaasihkaan
6)	Oshikatenimaan	Oshikatentaan
7)	Opahkihtehwaan	Opahkihtehaan
8)	Okanawaapamaan	Okanawaapantaan
9)	Omihkawaan	Omihkaan
10)	Otakwanahwaan	Otakwanahaan
11)	Otanaamenimaan	Otanaamentaan
12)	Otayamiihtamawaan	Otayamiihtaan

Repeat these words until you completely understand the meaning of the words and have mastered the pronunciation.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise C

Questions and Answers
First, Second-Person Forms Only

You have just learned the meaning of these twelve TA verbs and TI verbs.

1. In this exercise, you will form the sentences by asking simple questions and answers. Listen to and imitate these sets of examples. Examples will be given in first or second-person form only. Let's begin with TA verbs. Translations are on pages 228 and 229.

	Question	**Answer**
A.	Kipaahpihaa na Saanii?	Ehe, nipaahpihaa
	OR	
		Negative Answer
		Kaawin, kaawin nipaahpihaahsiin.
B.	Kikihkenimaa na Saanii?	Ehe, nikihkenimaa.
	OR	
		Kaawin, kaawin nikihkenimaahsiin.
C.	Kikaanaa na kimoosom?	Ehe, nikaanaa.
	OR	
		Kaawin, kaawin nikaanaahsiin.
D.	Kikanoonaa na Menii?	Ehe, nikanoonaa.
	OR	
		Kaawin, kaawin nikanoonaahsiin.

Let's also do some examples with TI verbs.

A.	Kipaahpihtoon ina kimahkisin?	Ehe, nipaahpihtoon.
	OR	
		Kaawin, kaawin nipaahpihtoohsiin.
B.	Kikihkentaan ina ci-kiiweyan?	Ehe, nikihkentaan.
	OR	
		Kaawin, kaawin nikihkentansiin.
C.	Kikaatoon ina kipaashkisikan?	Ehe, nikaatoon.
	OR	
		Kaawin, kaawin nikaatoohsiin.
D.	Kikanootaan ina kekoon?	Ehe, nikanootaan.
	OR	
		Kaawin, kaawin nikanootansiin.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write questions and answers using the new verbs listed below by using the model above. For this exercise, concentrate on questions that have a second-person subject, and answers that have a first-person subject. Translations are on page 229.

VTA	VTI
ninaasihkawaa	ninaasihkaan
nishikatenimaa	nishikatentaan
nipahkihtehwaa	nipahkihtehaan
nikanawaapamaa	nikanawaapantaan

Speaking Practice:

3. Now, work with a partner asking and answering questions with the words you have learned in this lesson. Take turns so that you both have an opportunity to participate.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise D

Questions and Answers
Third-Person with Obviative

1. In this exercise, you will form sentences by asking questions and answers. Listen to and imitate these sets of examples. Examples will be given in third-person forms only. Obviative endings are in bold type. Translations are on pages 229 and 230.

	Question		Answer
A.	Opaahpihaan**an** na Saaniiwa**n**?		Ehe, opaahpihaa**n**.
		OR	
			Kaawin, kaawin opaahpihaahsiin.
B.	Okihkenimaa**n** na Saaniiwa**n**?		Ehe, okihkenimaa**n**.
		OR	
			Kaawin, kaawin okihkenimaahsiin.
C.	Okaanaa**n** na omoosoma**n**?		Ehe, okaanaa**n**.
		OR	
			Kaawin, kaawin okaanaahsiin.
D.	Okanoonaa**n** na Meniiwa**n**?		Ehe, okanoonaa**n**.
		OR	
			Kaawin, kaawin okanoonaahsiin.

Let's do some examples with TI verbs.

A.	Opaahpihtoon ina nisitini?		Ehe, opaahpihtoon.
		OR	
			Kaawin, kaawin opaahpihtoohsiin.
B.	Okihkentaan ina aanti ke-ishaat(c)?		Ehe, okihkentaan.
		OR	
			Kaawin, kaawin okihkentahsiin.
C.	Okaatoon ina kekoonini?		Ehe, okaatoon.
		OR	
			Kaawin, kaawin okaatoohsiin.
D.	Okanootaan ina otashiihkewin?		Ehe, okanootaan
		OR	
			Kaawin, kaawin okanootahsiin.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write questions and answers using the new verbs listed below by using the model above. For this exercise, concentrate on questions that have a third-person subject. Translations are on page 230.

VTA	VTI
onaasihkawaan	onaasihkaan
oshikatenimaan	oshikatentaan
opahkihtehwaan	opahkihtehaan
okanawaapamaan	okanawaapantaan

Speaking Practice:

3. Now, work with a partner asking and answering questions with the words you have learned in this lesson. Take turns so that you both have an opportunity to participate.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise E

Paradigms

1. Just a reminder, it is important in paradigm work to use numbers for the different persons to help in an orderly arrangement and identification of your work. The following numbers are used:

1 First-person	13 First-person exclusive
2 Second-person	21 First-person inclusive
3 Third-person	22 Second-person plural
	33 Third-person plural

Now, let's do some examples using one TA verb and one TI verb. Listen carefully as the instructor says these examples. The number code refers to the subject only. Translations are on page 230.

VTA	VTI
1 nipaahpihaa	1 nipaahpihtoon
2 kipaahpihaa	2 kipaahpihtoon
3 opaahpihaan	3 opaahpihtoon
13 nipaahpihaamin	13 nipaahpihtoomin
21 kipaahpihaamin	21 kipaahpihtoomin
22 kipaahpihaawaa	22 kipaahpihtoonaawaa
33 opaahpihaawaan	33 opaahpihtoonaawaa

Writing Practice:

2. Write out some of your own full paradigms using the verbs listed below. Check the corrections with your instructor. The verbs are listed in third-person form. Translations are on page 231.

VTA

okihkenimaan
okaanaan
okanoonaan
onaasihkawaan

a)
1_____
2_____
3_____

13_____
21_____
22_____
33_____

b)
1_____
2_____
3_____

13_____
21_____
22_____
33_____

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

c) 1_____
2_____
3_____

13_____
21_____
22_____
33_____

d) 1_____
2_____
3_____

13_____
21_____
22_____
33_____

VTI

okihkentaan
okaatoon
okanootaan
onaasihkaan

a) 1_____
2_____
3_____

13_____
21_____
22_____
33_____

b) 1_____
2_____
3_____

13_____
21_____
22_____
33_____

c) 1_____
2_____
3_____

13_____
21_____
22_____
33_____

d) 1_____
2_____
3_____

13_____
21_____
22_____
33_____

3. When you complete your own paradigms, read aloud with your partner for several times until you have mastered the pronunciation. Check with your instructor for proper pronunciation.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise F

Working With the Language

Read and Understand:

Here are some simple sentences for reading practice. Each one contains a transitive verb.

1. In this exercise, listen carefully as the instructor reads the following sentences listed below. Again, we remind you to concentrate on how transitive verbs are used in the sentences. Translations are on page 232.

   a) Nipaahpihaa ahawe naape kaa-mate-pimohset(c).
   b) Kipaahpihtoon ina nitaacimowin?

   c) Nikihkenimaa ahawe ihkwe kaa-mate-pimohset(c).
   d) Kikihkentaan ina ekaa ci-kii-tootaman kiinehta?

   e) Aan entootaman? Kikaanaa na shooniyaan?
   f) Kaatoon kipaashkisikan mwaye-maacaayan!

   g) Kiwii-kanoonaa na kikayaashim ahpii ishkwaa-anohkiiyan?
   h) Nikanootaan ishihsewin.

Writing Practice:

2. The sentences above use four TA and four TI verbs. Now try writing some sentences using four TA and TI verbs listed below. Translations are on page 232.

Ninaasihkawaa	ninaasihkaan
Nishikatenimaa	nishikatentaan
Nipahkihtehwaa	nipahkihtehaan
Nikanawaapamaa	nikanawaapantaan

Speaking Practice:

3. For speaking practice, get someone to work with you using the sentences from above plus your own. Repeat this exercise until you completely understand and have mastered the pronunciation.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise G

More Sentences

Read and Understand:

Here are some more examples of sentences with transitive verbs.

1. In this exercise, listen carefully as the instructor reads the following sentences. You can use your knowledge of Severn Ojibwe words and sentence types to help you understand these sentences. Obviative suffixes are in **bold type.** Translations are on page 232

   a) Aasha okii-mihkawaa**n** otayihsha**n.**
   b) Aasha ina okii-mihkaa**n** ciikahikani**ni**?

   c) Otakwanahwaa**n** otaanihsa**n.**
   d) Otakwahaa**n** ciimani**ni.**

   e) Otanaamenimaa**n** otootema**n.**
   f) Otanaamentaa**n** maci-kiishikaa**ni.**

   g) Otayamiihtamawaa**n** okosihsa**n.**
   h) Otayamiihtaa**n** ishihcikewini**ni.**

Writing Practice:

2. Using the sentences above as a model, write at least eight sentences of your own by using the same transitive verbs.

Speaking Practice:

3. For speaking practice, get someone to work with you using the sentences above plus your own. Repeat this exercise until you completely understand and have mastered the pronunciation.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise H

Dialogues

Read and Understand:

1. Read and understand the following dialogues. Concentrate on how transitive verbs are used in the sentences. Transitive verbs introduced in this lesson are in *italic type*. Also, some new words will be introduced to you throughout the dialogues. If you find any new words, underline them. New vocabulary will be explained afterwards. Translations are on pages 232 and 233.

A. Waaciye nitaanihs. Aan entootaman?
Mekwaac *nipaahpihaa* nitootem.
Kah! Aan entootank? Wawiyatisiihke na?
Kaawin. Nanaatihkosii. Koohkoohkohoo ishinihkaaso. *Kikihkenimaa* na?
Kaawin. Aan ishi-naakosit(c)? Wawiyasinaakosi na?
Ehe, naahpic wawiyasinaakosi. Kiwii-waapamaa na?
Ehe, naahpic nika-minwentaan ci-waapamak.
Ahaaw, nika-wiintamawaa ci-piishaat(c) kaa-ishi-taayan.
Kaawin, ikaawin mahshi! Pinamaa nika-kakwecimaa nitookimaam. Wiintamaw kitootem, naake nika-pi-*kanoonaa*.
Ahaaw, wiipac miina ka-ayamihin.

B. Waaciye nitooshim. Aan eshi-ayaayan?
Nimino-ayaa. Kiin tahsh wiin?
Nimino-ayaa keniin. Niwii-ayamihaa kitaataa, ayapi na?
Kaawin, aasha kii-maacaa.
Kah! *Kikihkentaan* ina aanahpii ke-pi-kiiwet(c)?
Kaawin, kaawin wiikaa niwiintamaakohsiin aanahpii mayaam ke-pi-kiiwet(c).
Kekoonini ina *okaatoon* kitinentaan?
Ehe, taapishkooc ohsha kekoonini e-kaatooc nitinentaan.
Aan tahsh wenci-inentaman?
Ekaa wiihkaa ohsha kekoonini e-wiintamawihshit(c).
Kitaana na ahko kakwecimaa?
Kaawin, kaawin wiihkaa mihsawaac nitayamihikohsiin.

Note: Here are partial paradigms for the new words in the above dialogues. Let's begin with dialogue A.

VAI

1 niwawiyatisiike	13 niwawiyatisiikemin
2 kiwawiyatisiike	21 kiwawiyatisiikemin
3 wawiyatisiike	22 kiwawiyatisiikenaawaa
	33 wawiyatisiikewak

VAI

1 ninanaatihkohsii	13 ninanaatihkohsiimin
2 kinanaatihkohsii	21 kinanaatihkohsiimin
3 nanaatihkohsii	22 kinanatihkohsiinaawaa
	33 nanaatihkohsiiwak

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

VAI

1 niwawiyasinaakos	13 niwawiyasinaakosimin
2 kiwawiyasinaakos	21 kiwawiyasinaakosimin
3 wawiyasinaakosi	22 kiwawiyasinaakosinaawaa
	33 wawiyasinaakosiwak

VAI

1 nitishi-taa	13 nitishi-taamin
2 kitishi-taa	21 kitishi-taamin
3 ishi-taa	22 kitishi-taanaawaa
	33 ishi-taawak

VAI

1 nitayam	13 nitayamimin
2 kitayam	21 kitayamimin
3 ayami	22 kitayaminaawaa
	33 ayamiwak

Dialogue B - Translations are on page 234.

Preverb
1 nitaana-
2 kitaana-
3 aana-

Taapishkooc is a particle which means "alike, even, at the same time"
Mihsawaac is a particle which means "even though, although"

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write your own dialogues using some of the new vocabulary you have learned in this lesson.

Speaking Practice:

3. With a partner, read over your dialogues. Be sure to take turns saying each part. Then try your partner's dialogues.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise I

More About TA Verb Types
Subject and Object Combination

Listen and Understand:

1. We know already that Transitive Animate verbs are ones that have a grammatical subject (the person or persons doing the action) and a grammatical object (the person(s) or animate thing(s) that the action of the verb is done to). And we know that the grammatical object of a Transitive Animate verb is always animate. For Transitive Animate verbs there are a large number of different possible combinations of person and number of the subject and object which may be expressed. We indicate these combinations by headings such as (**1 acting on 3**), which means a first-person singular subject **1, niin** with a third-person singular object **3, wiin**.

   We are already familiar with some of these combinations. Here are some examples with verbs we learned in this lesson. In the examples the stem of the verb is in **bold type**. Remember that the stem is the basic form of a word, to which any prefixes or suffixes are added. Translations for sections 1 and 2 are on pages 234 and 235.

(1 acting on 3)	**(2 acting on 3)**
nipaahpihaa	**kinaasihkawaa**
nikihkenimaa	**kishikatenimaa**
nikaanaa	**kipahkihtehwaa**
nikanoonaa	**kikanawaapamaa**

(3 acting on 3 obviative)

opaahpihaan
okihkenimaan
okaanaan
okanoonaan

You have already learned how to ask and answer forms using these questions. We will do some more exercises together in the next section.

You may have noticed that in each of the examples in the chart there is an ending **aa** which comes after the verb stem. As well, for each one the grammatical object is a third-person.

2. Now compare the forms in the chart above with the forms in the following chart. Again, the verb stem is in **bold type**.

(3 acting on 1)	**(3 acting on 2)**
nipaahpihik	**kipaahpi**hik
nikihkenimik	**kikihkenim**ik
nikaanik	**kikaanik**
nikanoonik	**kikanoonik**

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

(3 obviative acting on 3)

opaahpihikoon
okihkenimikoon
okaanikoon
okanoonikoon

You may have noticed that in each of the forms in this new chart there is a suffix **ik** following the verb stem. As well, each one of these verb forms has a third-person subject, unlike the forms in the previous chart, which have third-person object.

Just as before we can ask and answer questions using some of these new Transitive Animate combinations. Here's an example using the first two.

(3 acting on 2)	**(3 acting on 1)**
Q. Kipaahpihik na? Is he/she laughing at you?	**A.** Ehe, nipaahpihik. Yes, he/she is laughing at me.

Before moving on to another set of examples, work with a partner and ask and answer questions that use the person combinations presented in the sample pair just above. Try using some of the different Transitive Animate verbs introduced in this lesson, or some of the other ones you know. Take turns so that you both get an opportunity to ask and answer questions.

3. Now, let's see if we can understand how to use the final set of forms that we introduced in Exercise A. These forms have a third-person obviative subject and a third-person object: **(3 obviative acting on 3)**. One of the most common ways of using this Transitive Animate number combination is when the subject noun is possessed by a third-person. Compare the following two sentences. In the first one the subject ("friend") is possessed by a first-person. In the second one the ("friend") is possessed by a third-person.

First-person	*Possessor of Subject*
Nitootem	opaahpihaan.
My friend	is laughing at him.

Third-person	*Possessor of Subject*
Sam otooteman	opaahpihikoon.
Sam's friend	is laughing at him.

The second sentence means that Sam's friend is laughing at Sam. Notice that in the second sentence we must use the ending **ikoon**, but in the first we use the ending **aan**.

You can ask a questions such as:

Sam na otooteman opaahpihikoon?
Is Sam's friend laughing at him?

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

A positive answer would be:

Ehe, opaahpihikoon.
Yes, she's laughing at him.

Writing Practice:

Using the examples above as a model, write sentences of your own by using the TA verbs listed below.

okihkenimaan	okaanaan
okanoonaan	onaasihkawaan

Before moving on to another set of examples, make sure you understand this section.

4. There is another way to use the 3 obviative form. If the subject of a Transitive Animate verb refers back to the object of a previous sentence that contains an obviative third-person, then the subject of the second sentence must also be obviative third-person. The 3 obviative form would only be used when you have already been referring to the people involved and the subject of the action has previously been referred to in the obviative. For example:

(3 acting on 3 obviative)

Q. Janet na opaahpihaan?
Is Janet (3) laughing at him/her (3 obviative)?

(3 obviative acting on 3)

A. Ehe, opaahpihikoon.
Yes, he/she (3 obviative) is laughing at him/her (3).

Using the examples above as a model, write sentences of your own by using the TA verbs listed below.

oshikatenimaan	opahkihtehwaan

Now, let's look at two more Transitive Animate subject and object combinations.

(1 acting on 2)	**(2 acting on 1)**
kipaahpihin	kipaahpihihsh
kikihkenimin	kikihkenimihsh
kikaanin	kikaanihsh
kikanoonin	kikanoonihsh

Notice that in both these sets there is no third-person; the subject and object are only first or second-person.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

You can also ask and answer questions using these forms:

	(2 acting on 1)		(1 acting on 2)
Q.	Kipaahpihihsh na? Are you laughing at me?	**A.**	Ehe, kipaahpihin. Yes, I am laughing at you.

Using the examples above as a model, write sentences of your own by using the TA verbs listed below.

kikanoonaa kikanawaapamaa

Writing Practice:

5. Write some more questions and answers using the verbs listed below by using them on these numbers;

Q. (2 acting on 3) **A. (1 acting on 3)**
Q. (3 acting on 2) **A. (3 acting on 1)**

- mihkaw
- akwanaho

Repeat this writing practice using the same verbs above by using them on these numbers;

Q. (3 acting on 3 obviative) **A. (3 obviative acting on 3)**

Speaking Practice:

For speaking practice, get someone to work with you taking turns by asking questions and answers in sections 1 - 5. Pay particular attention to proper pronunciation and the accent of the dialect.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise J

Review Test

Transitive Animate Verbs:

1. This review test has three sections. Before you begin, review the spelling and meanings of the words. When you are ready, translate them into English. Remember, try to do this on your own without looking at your notes. Translations are on page 236.

TA Verbs	English Translation
1. nipaahpihaa	
2. kikihkenimaa	
3. okaanaan	
4. nikanoonaa	
5. kinaasihkawaa	
6. oshikatenimaan	
7. nipahkihtehwaa	
8. kikanawaapamaa	
9. omihkawaan	
10. nitakwanahwaa	
11. kitanaamenimaa	
12. otayamiihtamawaan	

Note: .Check your spelling and translations when you are finished.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Transitive Inanimate Verbs:

2. Translate the following words into English. The words are in the same order from (1 - 12) as in the previous section. Translations are on page 236.

TI Verbs	English Translation
1. nipaahpihtoon	
2. kikihkentaan	
3. okaatoon	
4. nikanootaan	
5. kinaasihkaan	
6. oshikatentaan	
7. nipahkihtehaan	
8. kikanawaapantaan	
9. omihkaan	
10. nitakwanahaan	
11. kitanaamentaan	
12. otayamiihtaan	

Note: Check your spelling and translations when you are finished.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

3. In this final review exercise, there are 24 transitive verbs listed (1 - 24) on the left hand side below in mixed order. Accompanying the English translation is a small box. Use a pencil and write the number which matches the translation in the box. Translations are on pages 236 and 237.

1.	otayamiihtaan	☐	I call s.t., I address s.t.
2.	nikanoonaa	☐	I laugh at s.t.
3.	ninaasihkaan	☐	He/she find s.o.
4.	okaanaan	☐	He/she is lonesome for s.o. (lonely)
5.	nitakwanahwaa	☐	I laugh at s.o.
6.	kikihkentaan	☐	You blame s.o.
7.	omihkawaan	☐	I cover s.t.
8.	nipahkihtehwaa	☐	He/she is lonesome for s.t. (lonely)
9.	kinaasihkawaa	☐	You know s.t.
10.	oshikatenimaan	☐	I call s.o., I address s.o.
11.	nipaahpihtoon	☐	He/she hide s.o.
12.	kikanawaapantaan	☐	You blame s.t.
13.	omihkaan	☐	You looking a t s.o.
14.	nitakwanahaan	☐	He/she is speaking for s.o.
15.	kitanaamenimaa	☐	I fetch s.t., I get s.t.
16.	okaatoon	☐	I cover s.o.
17.	kikihkenimaa	☐	I hit s.t.
18.	nipaahpihaa	☐	He/she find s.t.
19.	oshikatentaan	☐	You fetch s.o., you get s.o.
20.	nipahkihtehaan	☐	You know s.o.
21.	kitanaamentaan	☐	You looking at s.t.
22.	otayamiihtamawaan	☐	He/she is hiding s.t.
23.	nikanootaan	☐	I hit s.o.
24.	kikanawaapamaa	☐	He/she speaking for s.t.

Note: Check your answers with your instructor when you have finished.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

Exercise A

Inanimate Intransitive Verbs

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, there are sixteen new Inanimate Intransitive verbs introduced to you listed in sets below. Listen carefully as your instructor repeats them. Translations are on page 237.

1. akoote	3. kiishkaayawaa
2. pankihsin	4. paakwaa
5. mihshikamaa	7. mankihtikweyaa
6. akaahsikamaa	8. akaahsihtikweyaa
9. maamihcaashkaa	11. akontin
10. anwaahtinikamin	12. pimaapoote
	13. pimaahoote
14. kashkatin	
15. maacihtan	
16. mooshkahan	

2. To help you identify the syllables and pronunciation, we have placed a space between each one. In this section, listen carefully as your instructor repeats the words. After completing this exercise, repeat the exercise in section 1 with your partner for speaking and pronunciation practice. Do not worry about the meanings of the words for now. Concentrate on syllables and spelling.

1. a koo te	9. maa mi hcaa shkaa
2. pa nki hsin	10. a nwaa hti ni ka min
3. kii shkaa ya waa	11. a ko ntin
4. paa kwaa	12. pi maa poo te
5. mi hshi ka maa	13. pi maa hoo te
6. a kaa hsi ka maa	14. ka shka tin
7. ma nki hti kwe yaa	15. maa ci htan
8. a kaa hsi hti kwe yaa	16. moo shka han

3. The words introduced to you in this lesson are presented to you in mixed order listed below. For writing practice, fill in the missing letters to complete the words. When you are complete, check your spelling. Answers are on pages 237 and 238.

1) p_ _k_ _ _	9) a_ _ _hsi_ _ _kwe_ _ _
2) mi_ _ _ _ka_ _ _	10) an_ _ _ _ti_ _ka_ _ _
3) _ _ _ci_ _ _ n	11) pi_ _ _ _ _ _te
4) a_ _ _te	12) _ _maa_ _ _ _ e
5) m_ _sh_ _h_ _	13) a_ _ _hsi_ _ _aa
6) _ _ _mi_ _ _ _ _ _kaa	14) _ko_ _ _ _
7) _ _ _sh_ _ _ya_ _ _	15) k_ _ _k_ _ _n
8) _ _ _ki_ _ _ _	16) _ _ _ki_ _ _kwe_ _ _

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

4. The translation of each new word is given below. Study them and then do the next exercise.

1.	akoote	hang (something inanimate)
2.	pankihsin	fall (something inanimate)
3.	kiishkaayawaa	be deep water
4.	paakwaa	be shallow water
5.	mihshikamaa	be a big lake
6.	akaahsikamaa	be a small lake
7.	mankihtikweyaa	be a wide river
8.	akaahsihtikweyaa	be a narrow river
9.	maamihcaashkaa	be big waves
10.	anwaahtinikamin	be a nice and calm body of water
11.	akontin	float, be in the water
12.	pimaapoote	drift along on current
13.	pimaahoote	drift along on waves
14.	kashkatin	freeze up
15.	maacihtan	ice break up
16.	mooshkahan	flood, be high water

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise B

Translation into Severn Ojibwe

Write and Understand:

In this exercise, there are sixteen (16) new words listed below in mixed order. Translate them into Severn Ojibwe. Remember, try to do this on your own without looking at your notes. The first one has been done for you. Translations are on page 238.

1) be big waves — maamihcaashkaa
2) be a wide river
3) be a big lake
4) be shallow water
5) be a narrow river
6) freeze up
7) ice break up
8) drift along on current
9) float, be in the water
10) drift along on waves
11) fall (something inanimate)
12) flood, be high water
13) be a small lake
14) be a nice and calm body of water
15) hang (something inanimate)
16) be deep water

Note: Check your translation when you have finished.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise C

Translation into English

Write and Understand:

There are sixteen (16) new words listed below in mixed order. Translate them into English. Try to do this on your own without looking at your notes. Translations are on page 238.

1) pimaapoote _____
2) kashkatin _____
3) maamihcaashkaa _____
4) maacihtan _____
5) pimaahoote _____
6) mooshkahan _____
7) akaahsikamaa _____
8) paakwaa _____
9) akoote _____
10) akaahsihtikweyaa _____
11) mankihtikweyaa _____
12) mihshikamaa _____
13) pankihsin _____
14) kiishkaayawaa _____
15) akontin _____
16) anwaahtinikamin _____

Note: Check your translations when you have finished.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise D

Sentences

Read and Understand:

In this exercise, there are eight (8) sentences listed below. Each sentence uses one of the new words introduced to you in this lesson. Words introduced to you in this lesson are in *italic type*. If any new words are introduced to you throughout the sentences, proper translation will be given afterwards. Listen carefully and imitate as the instructor reads the sentences. Translations are on page 239.

1) *Akoote* ina kimakoot tehsapiwinink?
2) *Pankihsin* ina pimihsewin noohpimink kitinentaan?
3) *Kiishkaayawaa* ihiwe saakahikan nitishinaan.
4) Kaawin ihimaa ka-kii-ishi-pimahkwashiwehsiimin. Onsaam *paakwaa*.
5) Naahpic *mihshikamaa* saakahikan kaa-wii-ishaayaan.
6) *Akaahsikamaa* saakahikan kaa-ishi-taayaan.
7) *Mankihtikweyaa* siipi kaa-wii-antawi-ishi-kwaashkwepineyaan.
8) *Akaahsihtikweyaa* siipi kaa-kii-ishi-nihsak moos.

New Vocabulary:

Here are partial paradigms for the new words in the sentences above. Let's take a look at sentence 4 first. Translations are on page 239.

Kaawin ihimaa ka-kii-ishi-pimahkwashiwehsiimin.
"We cannot paddle there."

VAI

1 nipimahkwashiwe	13 nipimahkwashiwemin
2 kipimahkwashiwe	21 kipimahkwashiwemain
3 pimahkwashiwe	22 kipimahkwashiwenaawaa
	33 pimahkwashiwewak

Sentence 8:

Akaahsihtikweyaa siipi kaa-kii-ishi-nihsak moos.
"The river is narrow where I killed the moose."

VTA

1 ninihsaa	13 ninihsaamin
2 kinihsaa	21 kinihsaamin
3 onihsaan	22 kinihsaawaa
	33 onihsaawaan

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise E

More Sentences

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, we will repeat the exercise from the previous page using different II verbs. Once again, there are eight (8) sentences listed below. Each sentence uses one of the new words introduced to you in this lesson. Words introduced to you in this lesson are in *italic type*. If any new words are introduced to you throughout the sentences, proper translation wil be given afterwards. Listen carefully and imitate as the instructor reads the sentences. Translations are on page 239.

   1) *Maamihcaashkaa* ina kihci-saakahikan kitinentaan?
   2) Mitoni *anwaahtinikamin* saakahikan.
   3) Pimihsewin mate-*akontin* siipiink.
   4) *Pimaapoote* mihtik paawihtikonk.
   5) *Pimaahoote* ciimaan saakahikanink.
   6) Aasha kekaat ta-*kashkatin*.
   7) Aasha wiipac ta-*maacihtan* siipi.
   8) Ta-*mooshkahan* ishi-naakwan ahpii ishkwaa-*maacihtahk*.

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write your own sentences in your notebook using the same eight (8) II verbs above.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise F

Questions and Answers

Read and Understand:

In this exercise, we will form the sentences by asking simple questions and answers. Words introduced to you in this lesson are in *italic type*. If there are any new words introduced to you throughout the sentences, proper explanation will be given afterwards. Listen to and imitate these sets of sentences listed below. Remember, some of these II verbs will be written in conjunct form throughout the sentences. Translations are on page 240.

a) Q. Aanti eshi-*akootek* kimakoot?
A. Weti naaniyahii ishkwaantemink.

b) Q. Aanti kaa-ishi-*pankihsink* pimihsewin kitinentaan?
A. Naanta maawiin waasha noohpimink.

c) Q. Aminahi ihimaa waa-ishi-kwaashkwepineyan?
A. Kaawin, onsaam *kiishkaayawaa* ohomaa.

d) Q. Ihimaa tahsh wiin, onsaam ina *paakwaa* kitinentaan?
A. Kaawin, amihimaa ke-ishi-kapaahshimoyaan.

e) Q. *Mihshikamaa* ina saakahikan kaa-wii-ishaayan waapank?
A. Ehe, naahpic *mihshikamaa* shaakooc tahsh mihshiinatinoon minihtikoon.

f) Q. *Akaahsikamaa* ina saakahikan kaa-wii-ishi-pakitahweyan?
A. Ehe, *akaahsikamaa* shaakooc tahsh kinokamaa.

g) Q. *Mankihtikweyaa* ina siipi kaa-wii-antawi-ishi-nanaantawencikeyan?
A. Nahke piko, kaawin mahshi niwaapantahsiin.

h) Q. *Akaahsihtikweyaa* ina siipi kaa-wii-ishi-nooncihshipeyan?
A. Ehe, *akaahsihtikweyaa* ekwa naahpic mihshiniwak kinooshek.

New Vocabulary:

Here are partial paradigms for the new words in the sentences above. Let's begin with sentence D. Translations are on pages 240 and 241.

VAI

1 nikapaahshim	13 nikapaahshimomin
2 kikapaahshim	21 kikapaahshimomin
3 kapaahshimo	22 kikapaahshimonaawaa
	33 kapaahshimowak

Conjunct form: "**kapaahshimoyaan**" (first-person singular, "I")

Check translation in translation section.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Sentence E:

Shaakooc is a particle which means "however, nevertheless, after all".
Mihshiinatinoon is an II verb which means "be a lot of, be many of".
Minihtik is an inanimate noun singular which means "island" (plural **minihtikoon**)

Sentence F:

1 nipakitahwe	13 nipakitahwemin
2 kipakitahwe	21 kipakitahwemin
3 pakitahwe	22 kipakitahwenaawaa
	33 pakitahwewak

Conjunct form: "pakitahweyan", (second-person singular, 'you')
Kinokamaa is an II verb which means "be a long lake".
Check translations in the translation section.

Sentence H:

1 ninooncihshipe	13 ninooncihshipemin
2 kinooncihshipe	21 kinooncihshipemin
3 nooncihshipe	22 kinooncihshipenaawaa
	33 nooncihshipewak

Conjunct form: "nooncihshipeyan" (second-person singular, 'you')
Check translations in the translation section.

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write your own questions and answers in you notebook using the II verbs listed below.

akoote	kiishkaayawaa
pankihsin	paakwaa

Speaking Practice:

3. For speaking practice, get someone to work with you using the questions and answers above plus your own. Repeat this exercise with your partner until you completely understand and have mastered the pronunciation.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise G

Continuation of
Questions and Answers

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, once again, we will form the sentences by asking simple questions and answers. Words introduced to you in this lesson are in *italic type*. If there are any new words introduced to you throughout the sentences, proper explanation will be given afterwards. Listen to and imitate these sets of sentences listed below. Please note, some of these II verbs will be written in conjunct form throughout the sentences. Translations are on page 241.

a) Q. *Maamihcaashkaa* ina naawic kitishinaan?
A. Ehe, *maamihcaashkaa* ohsha ishi-naakwan.

b) Q. Ta-*anwaahtinikamin* ina ani-tipihkaak kitishinaan?
A. Nahke piko. Kaawin mahshi nimemecikaayaapatansiin.

c) Q. Kekonen ihi kaa-mate-*akontink*?
A. Minihtikwaapihk ohsha ishi-naakwan.

d) Q. Ciimaanenhs ina hi kaa-mate-*pimaapootek*?
A. Kaawin. Ciipayi-mihtikowash ohsha hi.

e) Q. Kiwaapantaan ina mihtikowash kaa-mate-*pimaahootek*?
A. Kaawin! Aanti?

f) Q. Aanahpii ta-*kashkatin* eshinaman?
A. Wiipac maawiin ta-*kashkatin* nitishinaan.

g) Q. Aasha ina kekaat ta-*maacihtan* kitinentaan?
A. Nahke piko. Kaawin nimikoshkaatentamihikohsiin.

h) Q. Ta-*mooshkahan* ina kitishinaan ahpii ishkwaa-*maacihtahk*?
A. Ka-maawiin siyaaken.

New Vocabulary:

Here are partial paradigms for the new words in the sentences above. Let's begin with sentence B. Translations are on page 241.

Kaawin mahshi nimemecikaayaapantansiin.
"I haven't checked up on it yet (by looking)."
VTI

1 nimemecikaayaapantaan
2 kimemecikaayaapantaan
3 omemecikaayaapantaan
13 nimemecikaayaapantaamin
21 kimemecikaayaapantaamin
22 kimemecikaayaapantaanaawaa
33 omemecikaayaapantaanaawaa

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Sentence D

ciipay-mihtikowash is an inanimate noun (ni) which means "coffin".

Sentence E

mihtikowash is an inanimate noun (ni) which means "wooden box/suitcase"

Sentence G

Kaawin nimikoshkaatentamihikohsiin.
"I am not worrying about it."

VTI

1 nimikoshkaatentaan
2 kimikoshkaatentaan
3 omikoshkaatentaan
13 nimikoshkaatentaamin
21 kimikoshkaatentaamin
22 kimikoshkaatentaanaawaa
33 omikoshkaatentaanaawaa

Sentence H

Ka-maawiin siyaaken OR Siyaaken maawiin kaawin.
"I hope not."

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write your own questions and answers in your notebook using the II verbs listed below.

maamihcaashkaa
akontin
kashkatin
mooshkahan

Speaking Practice:

3. For speaking practice, get someone to work with you using the questions and answers above plus your own. Repeat this exercise with your partner until you completely understand and have mastered the pronunciation.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise H

Mini-Dialogues

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, we will form mini-dialogues by using the II verbs introduced to you in this lesson. Words introduced to you in this lesson are in *italic type*. If there are any new words introduced to you throughout the dialogues, explanations will be given afterwards. Listen to and imitate these sets of dialogues listed below. Translations are on page 242.

A. Niihtaawihs na ihimaa ayaa?
Ehe, kiwii-ayamihaa na?
Ehe, niwii-kakwecimaa kekoonini.

Brother-in-law comes to the phone.

Waaciye niihtaawihs.
Aan ke-kii-ishi-wiichihinaan noonkom kaa-kiishikaak?
Kiishpin ekaa ontamiihkeyan, kiwii-kakwecimin ci-wiicihihshiyan e-wii-*akootooyaan* niciimaan.
Ahaaw, pinamaa niwii-kekishepaanehkwe.
Miikwehc niihtaawihs. Naake ka-waapamin.

B. Mah! Kinoontaan ina kekoon?
Kaawin, kekoon ina kinoontaan kitinentaan?
Ehe, kaake ohsha kekoon *pankihsin* inihtaakwan.
Aanti nehke entanihtaakwahk?
Ishpimink tanihtaakwan.
Kiwii-antawi-memecikaahcike na?
Kaawin, nikohtaac.

C. Kiwii-antawi-kwaashkwepine na?
Kaawin, onsaam *maamihcaashkaa*tok saakahikan.
Kaa-ishi-*akaahsikamaak* ohsha saakahikan kitaa-kii-ishaamin.
Ahaaw, ta-kocihcikaate.
Aanahpii tahsh waa-maacaayan?
Shemaak kaana piko, e-mwaye-onsaam-kihci-nootink.
Ahaaw, shemaak nika-kwayaancii.

D. Aan waa-tootaman noonkom ke-kiishkaak?
Niwii-antawi-namewi-pakitahwe kaa-ishi-*kiishkaayawaak* siipi.
Pahkaan niin niwii-antawi-ishi-pakitahwe.
Aanti enentaman e-wii-ishi-pakitahweyan?
Kaa-ishi-*akaahsihtikweyaak* siipi.
Name na ihimaa papaamaataketok kitinentaan?
Weshkac ahko ohowe mekwaac pimaatakepaniik ihimaa.
Siyaaken maawiin kika-kaahcitinaak.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

New Vocabulary:

Here are paradigms for the new words in the dialogues above. Let's begin with dialogue A.

Niihtaawihs is a dependent animate noun (nad) which means "my brother-in-law."

Dialogue B: - Translations are on page 243.

Inihtaakwan is a (vii) which means "sound so, be understood so."
Inehke is a (pc) which means "in direction of..."
Tanihtaakwan is a (vii) which means "to hear a sound in certain location."
Memecikaahcike is a (vai) which means "examine things, check up on things."

1 nimemecikaahcike	13 nimemecikaahcikemin
2 kimemecikaahcike	21 kimemecikaahcikemin
3 memecikaahcike	22 kimemecikaahcikenaawaa
	33 memecikaahcikewak

Dialogue C:

Ta-kocihcikaate is a phrase which means "let's try it."
Kocihtoon is a (vti2) which means "try s.t."

1 nikocihtoon	13 nikocihtoomin
2 kikocihtoon	21 kikocihtoomin
3 okocihtoon	22 kikocihtoonaawaa
	33 okocihtoonaawaa

Dialogue D:

Enentaman is a conjunct form of **inentan** which means "think so of s.t., think s.t. to be so."

VTI

1 nitinentaan	13 nitinentaamin
2 kitinentaan	21 kitinentaamin
3 otinentaan	22 kitinentaanaawaa
	33 otinentaanaawaa

Kaahcitinaak is a conjunct form of **kaahcitin** which means "catch s.o., capture s.o."

VTA

1 nikaahcitinaa	13 nikaahcitinaamin
2 kikaahcitinaa	21 kikaahcitinaamin
3 okaahcitinaan	22 kikaahcitinaawaa
	33 okaahcitinaawaan

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write two mini-dialogues of your own. Be sure to include some of the new vocabulary introduced in this lesson.

Speaking Practice:

3. For speaking practice, get someone to work with you using the dialogues in section 1 plus your own in section 2. Repeat this exercise until you completely understand and have mastered the pronunciation.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 3

Exercise I

Creative Writing

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, we will try some the creative writing by using the II verbs introduced to you in this lesson. Words introduced to you in this lesson are in *italic type*. Any new words introduced in the sentences will be explained afterwards. Listen to and imitate as your instructor reads the following sentences. Translations are on pages 243 and 244.

Aanahpii maacaat(c) kitaataa?
Aasha ohsha kii-maacaa. Wiipac kekishep kii-maacaa.
Aanahpii ke-pi-kiiwet(c)?
Nahke piko. Kaawin nitoonci-wiintamaakohsiin.
Kiwii-ayamihaa na ahpii takohshink?
Ehe, wiintamaw ci-pi-kanoonihshit(c) ahpii takohshink.
Ahaaw nika-wiintamawaa ahpii takohshink.

Father arrived and returns the call.

Waaciye nitootem. Kikii-pi-kanoonihsh na?
Ehe, kekoon e-wii-kakweciminaan.
Ahaaw, aan ke-kii-ishi-wiicihinaan noonkom kaa-kiishikaak?
Kinantawenimin ci-wiiciiwihshiyan e-wii-antawi-kwaashkwepineyaan waapank.
Aanti waa-ishaayan?
Kaa-ishi-*mihshikamaak* saakahikan.
Kitanenimaak na mihshiin kinooshek ihimaa?
Ehe, nitanenimaak mihshiin kinooshek ihimaa ohowe mekwaac.
Ahaaw, (ki)ka-wiiciiwin kiishpin ehta ekaa onsaam kihci-nootink.
Kiishpin *kiishkaayawaak* saakahikan, ta-*maamihcaashkaa*.
Kiishpin onsaam kihci-nootink, kaa-ishi-*akaahsikamaak* saakahikan ta-ishaaniwan miishkoc.

New Vocabulary:

Here are some new words given in the sentences above.

Tanenim (vta) think s.o. to be there
Nitanenimaa (singular) I think s.o. to be there
Nitanenimaak (plural) I think s.o. (pl) to be there

Here is a partial paradigm: - Translations are on page 244.

1 nitanenimaa	13 nitanenimaamin
2 kitanenimaa	21 kitanenimaamin
3 otanenimaan	22 kitanenimaawaa
	33 otanenimaawaan

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write one mini-dialogue of your own. Be sure to try to include at least one or two new words introduced in any of lesson 3.

Speaking Practice:

3. For speaking practice, get someone to work with you using the dialogue in section 1 plus your own in section 2. Repeat this exercise until you completely understand and have mastered the pronunciation.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise J

Final Review Tests

Inanimate Intransitive Verbs:

1. In this exercise, review the spelling and meanings of the words very carefully. When you are ready, translate them into English. They are in mixed order. Try to do this exercise without looking at your notes. Translations are on page 244.

Severn Ojibwe	Translation
1. anwaahtinikamin	
2. maamihcaashkaa	
3. pankihsin	
4. paakwaa	
5. akoote	
6. kiishkaayawaa	
7. mooshkahan	
8. pimaapoote	
9. kashkatin	
10. akontin	
11. mankihtikweyaa	
12. maacihtan	
13. mihshikamaa	
14. pimaahoote	
15. kiishkaayawaa	
16. akaahsikamaa	

Note: Check you translations when you have finished.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

2. In this section, before you begin, review the spelling and meanings of the words very carefully. When you are ready, translate them into Severn Ojibwe. Again, they are in mixed order. Translations are on pages 244 and 245.

English	Severn Ojibwe
1. freeze up	
2. float, be in the water	
3. be big waves	
4. ice break up	
5. be a narrow river	
6. drift along on current	
7. be a small lake	
8. hang (something inanimate)	
9. be a nice and calm body of water	
10. be shallow water	
11. be a big lake	
12. drift along on waves	
13. be a wide river	
14. flood, be high water	
15. be deep water	
16. fall (something inanimate)	

Note: Check you translations when you have finished.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 4

Exercise A

Particles

Listen and Understand:

Particles are words that cannot be changed in anyway. They do not add any prefixes or suffixes. They will always be the same as follows.

1. In this exercise, there are thirty (30) particles introduced to you listed below. Listen carefully as your instructor repeats them. Do not worry about the meanings of the words for now. Translations will be given on the next page, and also you can find them on page 245.

1.	akaamahkiink	11.	aanti nehke	21.	kihcinihkiik
2.	akaami-kihcikam	12.	aanti piko	22.	kwanta
3.	akaamihkana	13.	capashiihsh	23.	pehkihsh
4.	akaawaac	14.	ciikic	24.	pehpeshik
5.	ahpii piko	15.	enikohk	25.	namacinihkiik
6.	anaamaakonak	16.	eniwehk	26.	nawac
7.	anaamipiink	17.	inehke	27.	siitawaac
8.	anihshaa	18.	kayaash	28.	tepinaahk
9.	awahshime	19.	kaye piko	29.	tipihkonk
10.	aanta	20.	misiwe	30.	wenipan

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

English Translation

Read and Understand:

2. Here is the list of the thirty words once again given in English translation. Take some extra time to review the pronunciation and meanings with your instructor. Listen to and imitate as your instructor repeats them.

1.	akaamahkiink	- in Europe, abroad
2.	akaami-kihcikam	- across the ocean
3.	akaamihkana	- across the road or trail
4.	akaawaac	- hardly, scarcely
5.	ahpii piko	- anytime
6.	anaamaakonak	- under the snow
7.	anaamipiink	- underwater
8.	anihshaa	- by chance, at the last minute
9.	awahshime	- to greater extent, more and more
10.	aanta	- some, few
11.	aanti nehke	- whereabouts, which direction
12.	aanti piko	- anywhere
13.	capashiihsh	- low, lower level
14.	ciikic	- by, close to, near to
15.	enikohk	- with more effort, harder
16.	eniwehk	- at least, anyhow, okay but
17.	inehke	- in direction
18.	kayaash	- originally, long ago, former
19.	kaye piko	- likely, to be expected, probably
20.	misiwe	- all over, whole, everywhere
21.	kihcinihkiik	- on the right
22.	kwanta	- for no reason or purpose
23.	pehkihsh	- at the same time, while
24.	pehpeshik	- one by one
25.	namacinihkiik	- on the left
26.	nawac	- more, quite (-er)
27.	siitawaac	- barely, hardly, poorly
28.	tepinaahk	- carelessly
29.	tipihkonk	- last night
30.	wenipan	- gone, disappear

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise B

Learning the New Vocabulary

Read and Understand:

Here is the list of thirty new words once again. Match up the Severn Ojibwe words with the appropriate English translation by writing each number in the correct box. The list in Severn Ojibwe is in order but English translation is not. Try to do this without looking at your notes. You can check your answers on page 246.

1.	akaamahkiink	☐	on the right
2.	akaami-kihcikam	☐	carelessly
3.	akaamihkana	☐	last night
4.	akaawaac	☐	more, quite (-er)
5.	ahpii piko	☐	in direction
6.	anaamaakonak	☐	for no reason or purpose
7.	anaamipiink	☐	gone, disappear
8.	anihshaa	☐	barely, hardly, poorly
9.	awahshime	☐	on the left
10.	aanta	☐	at least, anyhow, okay but
11.	aanti nehke	☐	all over, whole, everywhere
12.	aanti piko	☐	one by one
13.	capashiihsh	☐	by chance, at the last minute
14.	ciikic	☐	at the same time, while
15.	enikohk	☐	under the snow
16.	eniwehk	☐	hardly, scarcely
17.	inehke	☐	more, to greater extent, more and more
18.	kayaash	☐	across the road or trail
19.	kaye piko	☐	under water
20.	misiwe	☐	anywhere
21.	kihcinihkiik	☐	originally, long ago
22.	kwanta	☐	anytime
23.	pehkihsh	☐	across the ocean
24.	pehpeshik	☐	with more effort, harder
25.	namacinihkiik	☐	in Europe, abroad
26.	nawac	☐	some, few
27.	siitawaac	☐	likely, to be expected, probably
28.	tepinaahk	☐	whereabouts, which direction
29.	tipihkonk	☐	by, close to near to
30.	wenipan	☐	low, lower level, downstairs

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise C

Translation Into Severn Ojibwe

Writing Practice:

In this exercise, we will do some more translations. Here is the list in English of thirty words you have learned in this lesson given in mixed order. Write appropriate translation in Severn Ojibwe. Try to do this without looking at your notes. Translations are on pages 246 and 247.

1) in direction _____
2) one by one _____
3) by, close to, near to _____
4) anywhere _____
5) some _____
6) at the same time, while _____
7) on the right _____
8) under the snow _____
9) likely, to be expected _____
10) whereabouts, which direction _____
11) in Europe, abroad _____
12) carelessly _____
13) under water _____
14) anytime _____
15) originally, long ago _____
16) last night _____
17) at least, anyhow, okay but _____
18) more, quite (-er) _____
19) across the ocean _____
20) on the left _____
21) with more effort, harder _____
22) gone, disappear _____
23) all over, whole, everywhere _____
24) low, lower level _____
25) more, to greater extent, more and more _____
26) barely, hardly, poorly _____
27) by chance, at the last minute _____
28) hardly, scarcely _____
29) across the road or trail _____
30) for no reason or purpose _____

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise D

Translation Into English

Writing Practice:

Here is the list once again in Severn Ojibwe of thirty words you have learned in this lesson given in mixed order. Write appropriate translation in English. Remember, you do this exercise without looking at your notes. Translations are on pages 247 and 248.

1) aanta _____
2) capashiihsh _____
3) enikohk _____
4) misiwe _____
5) kayaash _____
6) inehke _____
7) aanti nehke _____
8) pehkihsh _____
9) wenipan _____
10) kaye piko _____
11) kihcinihkiik _____
12) tepinaahk _____
13) ahpii piko _____
14) nawac _____
15) namacinihkiik _____
16) akaawaac _____
17) pehpeshik _____
18) siitawaac _____
19) akaamahkiink _____
20) akaamihkana _____
21) anihshaa _____
22) tipihkonk _____
23) anaamaakonak _____
24) ciikic _____
25) kwanta _____
26) anaamipiink _____
27) aanti piko _____
28) awahshime _____
29) eniwehk _____
30) akaami-kihcikam _____

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise E

Working With The Language

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, you will learn to form simple sentences that contains particles. Listen to and imitate these sets of examples listed below. Words introduced to you in this lesson are in *italic type*. If there are any new words introduced to you throughout the sentences, proper translation will be given afterwards. Listen carefully and imitate as the instructor reads the sentences. Translations are on page 248.

A) Ahpii ishkwaa-anohkiiyaan niwii-ishaa *akaamahkiink.*
Mooshak miikaasowin takwan *akaamahkiink.*
Akaamahkiink ina kitooncii?

B) *Akaami-kihcikam* oncii nitootem.
Mooshak nootinikewin takwan *akaami-kihcikam.*
Aasha na wiipac wii-kiiwewan otooteman *akaami-kihcikam*?

C) *Akaamihkana* niwii-ishi-aanci-taa.
Akaamihkana ina kitishi-taa?
Aanahpii *akaamihkana* waa-ishaat(c)?

D) *Akaawaac* nitepihse miicim.
Akaawaac na kikii-wanishkaa kekiship?
Akaawaac kii-tepihsewan mihsan pipoononk.

E) *Aanti piko* nika-ishi-ap.
Aanti piko ishi-ahtoon.
Aanti piko ta-kii-ishaa.

F) *Anaamaakonak* nika-ahtoon niwanihikan.
Anaamaakonak na api kitootaapaan?
Anaamaakonak ishi-nipaa nato-pine.

G) Kinooshe papaamaatake *anaamipiink.*
Shiihshiip kookii *anaamipiink.*
Kekiin na kiwaapamaa shiihshiip kaa-kookiic *anaamipiink*?

H) *Anihshaa* wiipac e-kii-kihkentamaan e-sahkitek, ekaa kaa-kii-onci-caakisoyaan.
Anihshaa wiipac e-kii-waapamak, ekaa kaa-kii-onci-nihsaapaawet(c).
Anihshaa ekaa e-onci-tahkaayaak, ekaa kaa-kii-onci-kawaciyaan.

I) *Awahshime* ani-aahkosi nitinenimaa.
Awahshime ta-tahkaayaa miina pipoonk nitinentaan.
Awahshime ta-ani-kiishowaayaa ahpii ani-siikwak.

J) *Aanta* ehta ta-maacaawak waapank.
Aanta naapewak kaawin ta-maacaahsiiwak.
Aanta ehta kii-aapatanoon mihsan tipihkonk.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 4

New Vocabulary:

Miikaasowin	*(ni)*	fight, violence. Also miikaatiwin
Takwan	*(vii)*	be there, exist
Nootinikewin	*(ni)*	war, violence
Aanci-taa	*(vai)*	move one's residence
Ishi-taa	*(vai)*	live there, reside there
Tepihse	*(va/ii)*	there is enough of s.t., be sufficient
Kookii	*(vai)*	dive
Sahkite	*(vii)*	be lit, be on fire
Caakiso	*(vai)*	be lit, be on fire, have one's house on fire
Nihsaapaawe	*(vai)*	drown
Kiishowaayaa	*(vii)*	be warm weather

Writing Practice:

2. Now, try to write one sentence each in your notebook using the particles listed below. Translations are on page 249.

akaamahkiink	ahpii piko
akaamihkana	anaamaakonak
akaawaac	anaamipiink

Speaking Practice:

3. For speaking practice, get someone to work with you using the sentences above plus your own. Go over the material with your partner and concentrate on pronunciation and the meanings of the sentences. Repeat this until you feel comfortable with the material.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise F

Learning the Language

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, we will repeat a second set of particles by forming simple sentences. Listen carefully and imitate these sets of examples listed below. Words introduced to you in this lesson are in *italic type*. If there are any new words introduced to you throughout the sentences, proper translation will be given afterwards. Translations are on pages 249 and 250.

A) *Aanti nehke* waa-ishaayan?
Aanti nehke wencinowek?
Aanti nehke eshiciwahk?

B) *Aanti piko* ishi-apin!
Aanti piko ka-kii-ishi-nipaa.
Q. Aanti waa-ishi-ahtoon ohowe?
A. *Aanti piko.*

C) *Capashiihsh* pimakoote pimihsewin.
Capashiihsh pimihsewak nihkak.
Capashiihsh pimaanahkwan noonkom kaa-kiishikaak.

D) *Ciikic* waahkaahikanink nika-ishi-kipihcii.
Ciikic makohshe-kiishikaak nika-kiiwe.
Ciikic waapahk nika-wanishkaa.

E) *Enikohk* pimipahtoon!
Enikohk wiihkopitoon piihshaakaneyaap!
Enikohk anohkiitaa mwaye-tipihkaak.

F) *Eniwehk* keniin nika-piishaa wapank.
Eniwehk piko amihi ishi-maacaan!
Eniwehk piihi ci-takohshink.

G) Ihiweti *inehke* ta-ishaaniwan.
Weti *inehke* ishi-taa.
Kiiwetinonk *inehke* onciniwe.

H) Kii-aaniman *kayaash* pimaatisiwin.
Kii-nihtaaw-anohkiiwak awiyak *kayaash.*
Kii-wenootan nato-miicim *kayaash.*

I) *Kaye piko* ta-kimiwan ke-tipihkaak.
Kaye piko na wiipac kika-maacaa kekishepaayaak?
Kaye piko na kitaataa ta-takohshin wiipac?

J) *Misiwe* ta-papaamohsenaaniwan waapank.
Amii piko *misiwe* ishi-miinihshin kishooniyaanim.
Misiwe papaami-ishaamakan aahkosiwin.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 4

New Vocabulary:

Ishiciwan	*(vii)*	flow there, flow so
Pimakoote	*(vii)*	fly along, fly by
Waapan	*(vii)*	be dawn, be morning
Pimipahtoon!	*(vai)*	run along, run by (command form)
Wiihkopitoon!	*(vti)*	pull s.t.
Anohkiitaa	*(vai)*	let's work
Amihi	*(pc)*	so it is...
Pimaatisiwin	*(ni)*	life
Nihtaa-anohkii	*(vai)*	work well, be a good worker
Wenootan	*(vii)*	be plenty of, be lots of
Papaamohse	*(vai)*	walk about, take a walk
Miinihshin!	*(vta)*	give it to me (command form)
Papaami-ishaamakan	*(vii)*	go there
Aahkosiwin	*(ni)*	sickness, illness
Ishi-taa	*(vii)*	live there, reside there

Writing Practice:

2. Now, try to write one sentence each in your notebook using the particles listed below. Translations are on page 250

aanti nehke	ciikic
aanti piko	enikohk
capashihsh	eniwehk

Speaking Practice:

3. For speaking practice, get someone to work with you using the sentences above plus your own. Go over the material with your partner and concentrate on pronunciation and the meanings of the sentences. Repeat this until you feel comfortable with the material.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Imperative Forms That Mean "Let's . . ."

Here is a sentence from Exercise E.

Enikohk anohkiitaa mwaye-tipihkaak.
Let's work hard before it get's dark.

This sentence contains the word **anohkiitaa** 'let's work,' which consists of the verb stem **anohkii** 'work' and the suffix **taa**, which adds the meaning 'let's . . .' to the meaning of the basic verb. You can add this suffix to almost any Animate Intransitive or Transitive Animate verb. Here are a few examples with Animate Intransitive Verbs.

maacaataa
kiiwetaa
niimitaa
nikamotaa

You will often find in conversation that these command forms are preceded by the word **ekwa** 'so,' as in the following example:

Ekwa anohkiitaa.
Let's work.

As well, you will often find that there are two other common ways of expressing the meaning 'let's . . .' Both of the following sentences mean 'let's work. . .'

Ta-anohkiinaaniwan.
Ka-anohkiimin.

The first uses the preverb **ta-** 'future' and the indefinite subject suffix **naaniwan**, while the second uses the preverb **ka-** 'future' and the first-person plural suffix **min**. Both of these ways of expressing 'let's...' can be used with almost any Animate Intransitive or Transitive Animate verb.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise G

Using the Language

Read and Understand:

1. Once again, we will repeat the third set of particles by forming simple sentences. Listen carefully and imitate these sets of examples as the instructor reads the sentences listed below. Words introduced to you in this lesson are in *italic type*. If there are any new words introduced to you throughout the sentences, proper translation will be given afterwards. Translations are on pages 250 and 251.

A) *Kihcinihkiik* inehke ishi-washkiin ohomaa!
Okihcinihkiik inehke ishi-niipawin!
Kihcinikiik na inehke kiwii-ishi-pimohse?

B) *Kwanta* kaa-piishaayaan ohomaa.
Kwanta ohsha ihkito!
Onsaam mishtahi *kwanta* kitayam!

C) *Pehkihsh* nika-wiihsin mekwaac anohkiiyaan.
Pehkihsh niwii-nanaantawaapamaa nitootem ahpii maahamaan.
Pehkihsh ina panki (ki)ka-maahaan ahpii taawinink ishaayan?

D) *Pehpeshik* ta-otaahpinaawak. (animate)
Pehpeshik ta-otaahpinikaatewan. (inanimate)
Pehpeshik ehta onci-otaahpinanin! (inanimate)

E) *Namacinihkiik* inehke ishi-apin!
Namacinihkiik inehke nika-ishi-pimipahtoo.
Namacinihkiik inehke ishi-washkinan ihiweti!

F) *Nawac* anoonaakohshink nika-maacaa.
Nawac tahsh wiin ahpii ani-anwaahtik maaciihkwashiweyak?
Nawac ahpii ani-mino-ayaayaan, nika-maatanohkii.

G) *Siitawaac* nikii-papaamohse onaako.
Siitawaac ina kitanohkii noonkom kaa-kiishikaak?
Siitawaac piko pimiwitoon ekaa ci-piikohsitooyan.

H) Ikaawin *tepinaahk* tootan!
Onsaam mooshak *tepinaahk* kitanohkii.
Tepinaahk piko pinamaa nika-onahtoon.

I) Kaawin kwayahk nitoonci-nipaahsiin *tipihkonk*.
Koohkoohkohoo nikii-noontawaa *tipihkonk*.
Kekiin ina kikii-saakahan *tipihkonk*?

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

J) *Wenipan* niminihkwaakan. Awiya kaana okii-otaahpinaan.
Wenipan ahpin nitayihsh. Kii-maaciipahtoo kaana.
Wenipan awiya ke-amanihsotaakosit(c).

New Vocabulary:

Washkii	*(vai)* he/she turns
Maaham	*(vai2)*goes on a shopping trip, he/she shops
Otaahpinan	*(vti)* choose s.t., accept s.t., take s.t., pick s.t. (command form)
Otaahpinikaate	*(vii)* be chosen, be taken, be accepted, be picked
Washkinan	*(vti)* turn s.t., steer s.t. (command form)
Anoonaakohshin	*(vii)* late in the afternoon
Maaciihkwashiwe	*(vai)* start to paddle, paddle off
Papaamohse	*(vai)* walk about, take a walk
Pimiwitoon	*(vti2)* carry s.t. along, carry s.t. by (command form)
Piikohsitoon	*(vti2)* break s.t. by dropping (command form)
Onahtoon	*(vti2)* arrange s.t., organize s.t., put s.t. in order, stack s.t. (command form)
Noontaw	*(vta)* hear s.o.
Saakahan	*(vai2)* go out, exit (command form)

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write one sentence each in your notebook using the particles listed below.
Translations are on page 251.

kihcinihkiink	namacinihkiink
kwanta	nawac
pehkihsh	siitawaac
pehpeshik	tepinaahk

Speaking Practice:

3. For speaking practice, get someone to work with you using the sentences above plus your own. Go over the material with your partner and concentrate on pronunciation and the meanings of the sentences. Repeat this until you feel comfortable with the material.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise H

Mini-Dialogues

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, we will form mini-dialogues by trying to include some particles introduced to you in this lesson. Words introduced to you in this lesson are in *italic type*. If there are any new words are introduced to you throughout the dialogues, proper explanation will be given after wards. Listen to and imitate these sets of dialogues listed below. Translations are on pages 251 and 252.

A. Waaciye nitootem. Aan eshi-ayaayan?
Nimino-ayaa ohowe mekwaac. Kiin tahsh wiin?
Keniin nimino-ayaa. Amii na wahawe peshik kitootem?
Ehe, *akaamahkiink* oncii.
Kah! Kipi-kiiwitamik na? Aanahpii kaa-takohshink?
Tipihkonk kii-takohshin *ciikic* kaa-ani-aapihtaa-tipihkaak.
Aani minikohk ohomaa ke-ayaat(c)?
Nahke piko. Kaawin mahshi nikakwecimaahsiin.

B. Waaciye niicihkiwesi. Aan eshi-ayaayan noonkom kaa-kiishikaak?
Kaawin tepwe nimino-ayaawamancihohsiin noonkom kaa-kiishikaak.
Kah! Aanti eshi-aahkosiyan?
Nihkaatik. *Akaamihkana* nikii-ishaa kekishepaa. *Akaawaac* nikii-pimohse.
Kiwiihsakentaan ina?
Kaawin naahpic ohowe mekwaac. *Siitawaac* nitayap.
Siyaaken maawiin wiipac (ki)ka-mino-ayaa.
Miikwehc. Siyaaken maawiin.

C. Aanahpii miina ke-nanaantawencikeyan?
Paanimaa ishkwaa-maacihtahk nika-nanaantawencike.
Kika-pimahkwashiwe ina?
Kaye piko, kaawin mahshi mayaam nikihkentansiin.
Aanti nehke ke-ishi-maacaayaan?
Kiiwetinonk *inehke* nika-ishi-maacaa kiishpin ekaa onsaam tahkaayaak.
Eniwehk hsa kitaa-kii-wiiciiwin kiishpin ekaa onsaam kihtimiyaan.
Ahaaw, kiishpin wii-piishaayan, (ki)ka-kii-piishaa.

D. Waaciye nitootem. *Kwanta* piko kaa-pi-kanooninaan.
Kah! Aan eshi-ayaayan?
Nimino-ayaa. Kiin tahsh wiin?
Keniin piko nimino-ayaa ohowe mekwaac.
Nimaamitonentaan ci-nanaantawencikeyaan waapank. Kiwii-wiiciiwihsh na?
Ahaaw, (ki)ka-wiiciiwin. Aanahpii ke-maacaayan waapank?
Ahpii piko kekishepaayaak.
Aanti mayaam kaa-wii-ishaayan?
Aanti piko. Kaawin mayaam nikihkentansiin.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 4

New Vocabulary:

Wahawe	*(pr)* this
Mino-ayaawamanciho	*(vai)* feeling well
Wiihsakentam	*(vai2)* extremely hurt, feel extreme pain
Ayapi	*(vai)* sit around, stay around
Kihkentam	*(vti2)* know
Maacihtan	*(vii)* ice break up
Hsa	*(pc)* emphatic
Taa-	*(pv1)* would, could, should, ought, can

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write two mini-dialogues of your own in your notebook, similar to the ones on the previous page. Be sure to include some of the new vocabulary introduced in this lesson.

Speaking Practice:

3. For speaking practice, get someone to work with you using the dialogues in section 1 plus your own in section 2. Repeat this exercise until you completely understand and have mastered the pronunciation.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 4

Exercise I

Creative Writing

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, we will practice creative writing by using the particles introduced to you in this lesson. Words introduced in this lesson are in *italic type*. If there are any new words introduced throughout the sentences, proper explanation will be given afterwards. Listen to and imitate as your instructor reads the following sentences. Translations are on page 252.

Aanahpii ke-pi-takohshik kitootem pakiciiwinink?
Nahke piko. Kaawin mahshi nikihkentansiin. Sookihpwan ohowe mekwaac. *Awahshime* tahsh ta-ani-kihci-sookihpwan ekwa naanta *pehkihsh* ta-ani-kinikawi-kimiwan nitinihtaan.
Kah! Amiicika tahsh ihi ci-niiskaatahk. *Misiwe* kaana piko amihi ishiwepanitok.
Anaamaakonak kaana (ki)ka-papaamohsemin ahpii ishkwaa-kihci-sookihpwahk.
Ka maawiin siyaaken onsaam mishtahi ta-sookihpwansiinoon.
Ka maawiin siyaaken. *Eniwehk* kaana *enikohk* (ki)ka-ayamihaamin ekaa onsaam mishtahi ci-sookihpwahk.
Tepinaahk hsa ekaa miihkanan nihkwaakonekin.
Ehe, *aanta* ota kanake.
Amii kaana piko ohomaa ke-ayaayahk ci-piihtooyahk ci-pooni-sookihpwahk.
Amii kaana piko ehta ke-kii-tootamahk. Ekaa ota wiin mihsawaac naanta ci-kii-ishaayahk.
Aan tahsh ke-tootamahk mekwaac piihoyahk?
Nahke piko. Oncihta kaana piko naanta kitaa-kii-tootaamin.

New Vocabulary:

Kinikawi-	*(pv)*	mixed
Ishiwepan	*(vii)*	be certain weather, happen in certain way
Hsa	*(pc)*	emphatic
Nihkaakone	*(vai/ii)*	cover over with snow
Ci-piihoyahk	*(vai)*	to wait (pl)
Ota	*(pc)*	emphatic
Mihsawaac	*(pc)*	even though, anyhow, anyway, although
Oncita	*(pc)*	puposely, jokingly
Kanake	*(pc)*	at least

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write one dialogue of your own in your notebook no less than twelve lines similar to the one above. Be sure to include as many as you can of the new words introduced in this lesson.

Speaking Practice:

3. For speaking practice, get someone to work with you using the dialogue in section 1 plus your own in section 2. Repeat this exercise until you completely understand and mastered the pronunciation.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise J

Review Test

Particles:

Here is a list of all thirty (30) particles you have learned from this lesson given in mixed order. Before you begin, review the spelling and meanings of the words very carefully. When you are ready, give translations into Severn Ojibwe. Do this exercise without looking at your notes. Translations are on pages 252 and 253.

Severn Ojibwe	Translation
1.	on the right
2.	for no reason or purpose
3.	at the same time, while
4.	one by one
5.	on the left
6.	more, quite (-er)
7.	barely, hardly, poorly
8.	carelessly
9.	last night
10.	gone, diappear
11.	whereabouts, which direction
12.	anywhere
13.	with more effort, harder
14.	at least, anyhow, okay but
15.	low, lower level
16.	by, close to, near to
17.	in direction
18.	originally, long ago, former
19.	likely, to be expected, probably
20.	all over, whole, everywhere
21.	some, few
22.	to greater extent, more and more
23.	by chance, at the last minute
24.	underwater
25.	under the snow
26.	anytime, whenever
27.	hardly, scarcely
28.	across the road or trail
29.	across the ocean
30.	in Europe, abroad

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 5

Exercise A

Review: Dubitatives

Review and Understand:

In **Introductory Ojibwe** we saw that the Ojibwe language has ways of expressing the difference between concepts that speakers are certain about and ones that they are uncertain about. When a speaker of Severn Ojibwe is uncertain about whether something is true or not, or did not witness it themselves, they frequently use a special verb suffix referred to as the **dubitative**.

1. The dubitative is expressed in English by adding words such as "seems to be" to the basic idea. For example: Translations are on pages 253 and 254.

Certain	**Uncertain**
He/she is afraid.	He/she must be afraid. He/she seems to be afraid. He/she is probably afraid.

When speakers of Ojibwe are uncertain about something, as discussed above, they will regularly use the dubitative. Similarly, if they do not have personal knowledge of the subject they are discussing, using the dubitative is normal. Compare the following two paradigms for an Animate Intransitive verb.

Certain	**Uncertain**
1 nikohtaac	nikohtaac*inaatok*
2 kikohtaac	kikohtaac*inaatok*
3 kohtaaci	kohtaaci*tok*
13 nikohtaacimin	nikohtaaci*minaatok*
21 kikohtaacimin	kikohtaaci*minaatok*
22 kikohtaacinaawaa	kikohtaaci*naawaatok*
33 kohtaaciwak	kohtaaci*tokwenak*

The following sentence is a statement of fact about Paul.

Kohtaaci Paul.	Paul is afraid.

In comparison, the next sentence indicates that the speaker is uncertain about whether Paul is afraid, so the verb is marked with the dubitative suffix.

Kohtaacitok Paul.	Paul must be afraid.

Sometimes you may find that sentences expressing uncertainty not only contain dubitative suffixes, but also particles which express uncertainty such as **naanta** and **kaana**.

Naanta kaana kohtaacitok Paul.	Paul is probably afraid.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 5

Severn Ojibwe can make subtle distinctions, for example, the following sentence does not contain a dubitative. The speaker is stating that based on his personal observation Paul looks afraid, even though he isn't certain that Paul is in fact afraid.

Kohtaaciiwi-naakosi Paul.	Paul looks afraid.

Watch for dubitatives as you listen to Native language speakers talk, and try to use them in your own speech as much as you can. Please concentrate on the following questions and answers given below.

Aan entootank kiciimiic?	Metawetok akwaaciink.
Aan entootank kimohshoom?	Anohkiitok naanta naasipiink.
Paahpaakomo na kitayihsh?	Ehe, naanta kaana aahkositok.

Please concentrate on the following second set of questions and answers listed below. Translations are on page 254.

Kitayehkos na?	Ehe, nitaahkosinaatok.
Kikihtim na?	Ehe, nitayehkosinaatok.
Kikimoot na?	Ehe, nipaawaniinaatok maawiin kaa-onci-kimootiyaan.

2. Please concentrate on the dubitatives in the mini-dialogue below. Translations are on page 254.

Aanti kitaataa?
Wiipac kekishepaa kii-maacaa*tok*.
Aanti kii-ishaa*tok*.
Okaahsi-saakahikaniink.
Aasha na ani-takohshini*tok* kitinentaan?
Nahke piko. Naanta kiyaapic pimipiso*tok*.
Aanahpii ke-pi-kiiwet(c)?
Waapank *iitok*.
Awiyan na oka-pi-wiiciiwikoon?
Kaawin kehcin. Wiin ehta *iitok* ta-pi-kiiwe.

The mini-dialogue above uses two words **kehcin** 'probably' and **iitok** 'must be, maybe, or so it is said.' **iitok** suggests a considerable degree of uncertainty on the part of the speaker. On the other hand, **kehcin**, which is similar to English 'probably', suggests a higher degree of certainty on the part of the speaker, but that one is not completely certain.

Writing Practice:

3. Now, write three or four questions and answers of you own in dubitative forms using the sentences in section 1 as a model. Also, write one mini-dialogue using the one above as a model.

Speaking Practice:

4. Work with a partner using sections 1 and 2 plus your own sentences you have just completed. Pay particular attention to dubitatives. Repeat this exercise until you completely understand the material.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise B

Review: Preterits

Review and Understand:

In **Introductory Ojibwe**, you were introduced to the use of **preterit** suffixes on verbs. These are used to indicate an action, state, or event that occurred in the past but is no longer true. You can recognize a verb that is being used in the preterit because it will contain the suffix **pan**.

Nikii-ishaamin ahko tahso-siikwan.
"We went there every spring."
(inference: "and we still do")

Nikii-ishaaminaapan ahko tahso-siikwan.
"We went there every spring but we no longer do."

Kii-nihtaawiki mitaahso ahki otaanaank.
"He was born ten years ago."
(inference: "and he is still living.")

Kii-nihtaawikiipan mitaahso ahki otaanaank.
"He was born ten years ago but he is no longer living."

Nikii-ataawe ciimaan.
"I bought a canoe."
(inference: and I still own it")

Nikii-ataawenaapan ciimaan.
"I bought a canoe but I no longer own it."

Let's take a look at the paradigm listed below. Translations are on page 254

Neutral	**Preterit**
1 nikihtim	nikihtiminaapan
2 kikihtim	kikihtiminaapan
3 kihtimi	kihtimiipan
13 nikihtiminimin	nikihtimiminaapan
21 kikihtimimin	kikihtimiminaapan
22 kikihtiminaawaa	kikihtiminaawaapan
33 kihtimiwak	kihtimiipaniik

Notice in the paradigm above that if a verb stem ends in a short vowel such as **i** or **o**, then the short vowel becomes long **ii** or **oo** in third-person singular or plural forms when the preterit suffix is added.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Writing Practice:

2. For writing practice, translate the following sentences into Severn Ojibwe. Translations are on page 255.

a. _____
I went there every winter.

b. _____
I went there every winter, but I no longer do.

c. _____
He was small four years ago.

d. _____
He was small four years ago, but he no longer is.

e. _____
I bought a plane.

f. _____
I bought a plane, but I no longer own it.

Note: Sometimes in English, terms such as "formerly" are used in a way that is similar to the use of the preterit in Severn Ojibwe. Compare the following two sentences.

Example: **Nikii-wanihike ahko weshkac.**
"I used to trap long ago.

Nikii-wanihikenaapan ahko weshkac.
"I (formerly) used to trap long ago, but I no longer do."

For further practice with the preterits, with your instructor's assistance, try to write some of your own sentences. As the English language speakers would say, "Practice makes perfect."

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise C

Review: Pejoratives

1. Sometimes Native language speakers want to indicate that something he/she is talking about is for some reason not very good. In English he/she may describe it as nasty, useless, poorly made, broken down, good-for-nothing, or worn out. In Severn Ojibwe, all these ideas are conveyed in one neat way. The suffixes are in *italic type*. Check the examples below to see how it is done. Translations are on page 255 for the next 4 sections.

Animate Nouns	**Inanimate Nouns**
emihkwaan*ihsh*	pimihsewin*ihsh*
ashikan*ihsh*	onaakan*ihsh*
animohsh*ihsh*	masinahikan*ihsh*
pahkweshikan*ihsh*	paashkisikan*ihsh*

2. As you can see from the list above, the term **Pejorative** is usually used to denote this *ihsh* suffix. Let's look at another set of examples:

Animate Nouns	**Inanimate Nouns**
ahkihk*ohsh*	masinahikanaahtik*ohsh*
atihk*ohsh*	wiihsiniiwinaahtik*ohsh*
ishkotehkaanaapihk*ohsh*	mihtik*ohsh*
atihkamek*ohsh*	mihtawak*ohsh*

3. As you can see from the list above, the form of the suffix is slightly different from the first list. Let's take a look at one more set of examples:

Animate Nouns	**Inanimate Nouns**
naape*wihsh*	mitehi*wihsh*
aanahkonaa*wihsh*	pimite*wihsh*
kinooshe*wihsh*	pepaa*wihsh*
anoominaapoo*wihsh*	coocoohshaapoo*wihsh*

4. The term **pejorative** is used to refer to this suffix. As you can see from the examples above, the first sound of the suffix varies, depending upon the last sound of the word it is being added to. As a result, the suffix has the forms **ihsh, ohsh,** and **wihsh**. To give yourself some practice of "not very good" idea, try the following words listed below. If you are not sure about any of your answers, ask your instructor.

a)	b)	c)
maank	sakime	tihtipwepishkikan
ohkaataahk	koohkoohkohoo	okaahs
name	miikihsikwaahson	kinepik
namekohs	cwaapiihsh	maacii-kitowin
piinahikan	pakiciiwin	cahkaahtehsicikan
shooniyaan	ahcikanaahtik	pahkweshikan
shooniyaawash	atihkamek	masinaahtehsicikan
memenkwe	pinaahkwaan	maacishikan

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise D

Review: Diminutives

1. How does the Native language speaker indicate that something is small? There is a special suffix referred to as the DIMINUTIVE, which is used to indicate that the noun it is added to is small. This suffix has three different forms: **nhs, enhs,** and **oonhs. Diminutive** forms can be made from animate and inanimate nouns. Here are some examples. Let's begin with *nhs*. The suffixes are in *italic type*. Translations are on page 256.

Animate Nouns	**Inanimate Nouns**
aanahkonaa*anhs*	pimite*nhs*
naape*nhs*	pepaa*nhs*
pine*nhs*	mitehi*nhs*

2. Now, let's try some examples with *enhs*.

Animate Nouns	**Inanimate Nouns**
emihkwaan*enhs*	ciishtahikan*enhs*
pahkweshikan*enhs*	ciimaan*enhs*
piihsimohkaan*enhs*	tihkinaakan*enhs*

3. Let's take a look at one more set of examples. This time, we will use the suffix *oonhs*.

Animate Nouns	**Inanimate Nouns**
waapoos*oonhs*	masinahikanaahti*koonhs*
ohkaataahk*oonhs*	wiihsiniiwinaahtik*oonhs*
ahkihk*oonhs*	minihtik*oonhs*

4. As the examples shown above, the term **diminutive** is usually used to refer to the variant forms of the "*nhs, enhs,* and *oonhs*" suffixes. To give yourself some practice this "smallness" thing, try these following words listed below. If you are not sure about any of your answers, ask your instructor.

a)
maank
amihk
name
namekohs
piinahikan
shooniyaan
shooniyaawash
memenkwe

b)
sakime
koohkoohkohoo
miikihsikwaahson
miikwan
pakiciiwin
ahcikanaahtik
atihkamek
pinaahkwaan

c)
tihtipwepishkikan
okaahs
kinepik
maacii-kitowin
cahkaahtehsicikan
pahkweshikan
masinaahtehsicikan
maacishikan

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise E

Working With the Language

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, you will learn to form simple sentences by using **dubitative**, **preterit**, **pejorative** and **diminutive** suffixes. Listen to and imitate these sets of examples listed below. Suffixes introduced to you in this lesson are in *italic type*. If any new words introduced to you throughout the sentences, proper translation will be given afterwards. Listen carefully and imitate as the instructor reads the sentences. Translations are on pages 256 and 257.

   A) Kihtimi*tok* ekaa kaa-onci-anohkiit(c).
   Kaawin awiya ohomaa, maacaa*tok*.
   Ciiweyaa. Kiiyaapic nipaa*tok*.

   B) Aasha ta-kii-takohshiniip*an*.
   Aasha na oncihcihse ci-kii-wiihsiniyaa*pan*?
   Weshkac ahpin ishkwaayaac nikii-kiiwenaam*pan*.

   C) Niwaahkaahikan*ihsh* kii-caakite tipihkonk.
   Kiciimaan*ihsh* ina kii-maaciiyaahoote?
   Opaashkisikan*ihsh* okaahsiinaan.

   D) Ahtoon onaakan wakici-wiihsiniiwinaahtik*ohsh*.
   Aasha kitahkihk*ohsh* iskaaciwaso!
   Kinepik*ohsh* otamwaan omakahkiin.

   E) Pine*wihsh* kekishepaa-nanaantawi-wiihsini.
   Memenkwe*wihsh* papaamihse.
   Mahkwa*wihsh* omiikaanan mahiinkan*enhs*an.

   F) Pinehshiinshs*enhs* kekishepaa-nikamo.
   Pimihsewin*enhs* pankihsin noohpimink.
   Piish emihkwaan*enhs*!

   G) Piitoon masinahikanaahtik*oonhs*.
   Kiminohpwaa na ohkaataahk*oonhs*?
   Atihkamek*oonhs* papaamaatake anaamipiink.

New Vocabulary:

ciiweyaa	(vii)	make no sound, be silent
oncihcihse	(vii)	be the time of, come to happen, the time has come
ishkwaayaac	(pc)	last, ultimate
caakite	(vii)	burn up, be burned up
maaciiyaahoote	(vii)	drift away on the waves
kaahsiinan	(vti)	wipe s.t., clean s.t., wash s.t.
iskaaciwaso	(vai)	boil dry
papaamihse	(vai)	fly about
miikaaso	(vai)	fight

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Writing Practice:

2. Now, try to write one sentence each in your notebook with the ending **tok**, **pan**, **ihsh**, **ohsh**, **wihsh**, **enhs**, and **oonhs** by using any nouns you can think of.

Speaking Practice:

3. For speaking practice, get someone to work with you using the sentences above plus your own. Go over the material with your partner and concentrate on pronunciation and the meanings of the sentences. Repeat this until you feel comfortable with the material.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise F

Mini-Dialogues

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, we will write mini-dialogues using **dubitative, preterit, pejorative**, and **diminutive** suffixes. Listen carefully and imitate as your instructor reads the following dialogues. Pay particular attention to the pronunciation. Repeat this exercise several times on your own. If any new words introduced to you throughout the sentences, proper explanation will be given afterwards. The suffixes are in *italic type*. Translations are on page 257.

A. Aasha na kitaataa kii-takohshin?
Kaawin, kiiyaapic ontenti.
Aasha na ta-kii-takohshinii*pan*?
Ehe, naanta maawiin ishi-ontamihse*tok*.
Ka-maawiin siyaaken naanta ishi-macihsetok.
(Ki)ka-pi-wiintamawin ahpii takohshink.
Ahaaw, kehcinaac (ki)ka-pi-kanoonin ahpi takohshihk.

B. Aanahpii kitootem ke-kiiwet(c)?
Noonkom kaa-kiishikaanik wii-kiiwe*pan*. Kaawin tahsh nitawaac. Onsaam niiskaatan.
Aan entootank ohowe mekwaac?
Nahke piko. Kiiyaapic maawiin nipaa*tok*.
Wiintamaw ci-pi-kanoonihshit(c) ahpii wanishkaat(c)?
Aasha na kikii-ishkwaa-waweshihtoon kiciimaan*enhs*?
Ehe, aasha nikii-ishkwaa-waweshihtoon.
Kipimipanihcikan*ihsh* tahsh wiin? (Ki)ka-waweshihtoon ina kaye?
Kaawin, kaawin mahshi. Kaawin nikii-tootansiin niinehta.
Kinantawentaan ina ci-wiicihinaan?
Kiishpin kaana ekaa ontamiihkeyan.
Kaawin nitootamiihkehsiin ohowe mekwaac.
Naahpic nika-minwentaan ci-wiicihinaan.
Amihiwe kwayahk. Miikwehc.

C. Kekoon ina kiwaapantaan kitinentaan, ihkwes*enhs*?
Ehe, kaake ohsha niwaapamaa mahk*oonhs* weti.
Kiwii-antawi-inaap na?
Kaawin, nikohtaac ohsha.
(Ki)ka-wiiciiwin. Antawi-inaapitaa.
Paashkisikan ta-maaciiwicikaate.
Kiinehta ishaan. (Ki)ka-piihin ohomaa.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 5

New Vocabulary:

ontenti	(vai)	be absent, be gone
ontamihse	(vai)	get busy
macihse	(vai)	have something bad happen, have things go wrong
waweshihtoon	(vti2)	fix s.t., repair s.t.
niinehta	(pr)	alone, me only
ontamiihke	(vai)	be busy
inaapitaa	(vai)	let's look (plural command)
ta-maaciiwicikaate	(vai)	will take it along with us
kiinehta	(pr)	alone, you only

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write two mini-dialogues of your own similar to the ones on the previous page. Be sure to include some dubitative, preterit, pejorative and diminutives introduced in this lesson.

Speaking Practice:

3. For speaking practice, get someone to work with you using the dialogues in section 1 plus you own from section 2. Repeat this exercise until you completely understand and have mastered the pronunciation.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise G

Creative Writing

Read and Understand:

1. In this exercise, we will use the variant suffixes introduced to you in this lesson. Suffixes introduced in this lesson are in *italic type*. If any new words are introduced throughout the sentences, proper explanation will be given afterwards. Listen to and imitate as your instructor reads the following sentences. Translations are on page 258.

Aasha kekaat oncihcihse*tok* ci-wiihsiniyank.
Aasha na kahkina awiyak takohshiniwak?
Kaawin, Powaan kaawin mahshi takohshinihsiin.
Aasha na ta-kii-takohshiniipan?
Ehe, aasha ohsha ta-kii-takohshinii*pan*.
Keko otaapaanan maaciiwinaa*pan*?
Otaapaan*enhs*an ohsha omaaciiwinaa*paniin*.
Naanta kaana piikohsewan.
Aan tahsh ke-tootamank?
Kiiyaapic kaana noomake (ki)ka-piihaamin.
Ka-maawiin siyaaken patotepiso*tok*.
Kaawin kehcin. Kiiyaapic noomake ka-piihaamin.
Kiishpin ekaa takohshink aahpita waahkaahsek, nika-maaciipis ci-nantonawak. Amii piko ohomaa ka-apimin ci-piihaayank. Ikaawin awiya ta-mikoshkaatentam.

Half Hour Later

Powaan kii-takopiso. Kaawin onci-patotepisohsiin.
Moos*oonhs*an okii-pihtahwaan. Amihiwe kaa-kii-onci-pwaatawi-takohshink.

New Vocabulary:

Powaan	(na)	Paul
keko	(pc)	what kind or sort, which one
piikohse	(vii)	get broken, break down, break by self
piikohse	(vai)	break out in a rash or pimples, have a blow out
noomake	(pc)	for a while
patotepiso	(vai)	drive off the road
kehcin	(pc)	probably, possibly
waahkaahse	(vii)	go around, be an hour
nantonaw	(vta)	to go and look for s.o.
takopiso	(vai)	arrive by vehicle
pihtaho	(vta)	hit s.o. accidentally using s.t.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Writing Practice:

2. Now, write one dialogue of your own in your notebook no less than ten lines similar to the one above. Be sure to include as many as you can of the suffixes introduced in this lesson.

Speaking Practice:

3. For speaking practice, get someone to work with you using the dialogue in section 1 plus your own in section 2. Repeat this exercise until you completely understand and have mastered the pronunciation.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise H

Suffixes: Review Tests

Read and Write:

This is the final review test for lesson 5. Translations for sections 1, 2, and 3 are on page 258.

1. There are twenty verbs listed below. Write the dubitative form of each one. Try to do this exercise without looking at your notes.

anohkii	minihkwe	paawanii	pimipahtoo
kiiwe	metawe	pimohse	wanishkaa
kohtaaci	masinahike	naasipii	aatisoohke
nipaa	nantawencike	ataawe	maacaa
wanishkaa	naatahipii	natawihiwe	wanihike

2. Write preterits using the same verbs above.

3. There are twenty-four nouns listed below. Write pejorative forms of each one. Remember, there are three different forms of suffixes.

pootawaan	shikaak	aamoo
mishtikwaan	namehtek	ihkwe
tashiikewin	ohkaataahk	pine
pakiciwin	paanahkihk	sakime
pahkweshikan	ahcikanaahtik	memenkwe
maacishikan	ataawikamik	pepaa
waawikan	sheshtak	oocii
mahkisin	peshikwaapihk	nihka

4. There are twenty-four nouns listed below. Write the diminutive forms for each one. Remember, there are three possible different forms for each suffixes. Translations are on page 259.

name	maacishikan	waapoos
aamoo	moohkomaan	maank
pepaa	masinahikan	ohkaataahk
oocii	piinahikan	ahkihk
mitehi	wiikwaahs	ataawikamik
naape	wiikwemot	sheshtak
kinooshe	shiihshiip	namehtek
sakime	waaw	ahsapaahtik

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 6

Unit 2 Review Test

This lesson contains review materials for lessons 1 through 5. For most of the exercise your instructor will dictate words or sentences for you to write. You may find it helpful to review your notes and lessons before trying the review materials in this section.

Lesson 1 Review Test: **Animate Intransitive Verbs**

Your instructor will say sixteen animate intransitive verbs from the vocabulary you have learned in Lesson 1. Listen carefully as the instructor says each verb. For each word you instructor says, please write it in Severn Ojibwe and write the English translation. The spaces are provided for you below. Corrections will be done by your instructor.

Animate Intransitive Verbs	English Translation
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	
7.	
8.	
9.	
10.	
11.	
12.	
13.	
14.	
15.	
16.	

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 6

Lesson 2 Review Test: **Transitive Verbs**

This review test has one section. Here is a list of all 24 transitive verbs you have learned in this lesson given in mixed order. Translate them into Severn Ojibwe as shown below. Be sure to indicate the verb type of each word. Do this exercise without looking at your notes. Spelling and translations are on page 259.

Severn Ojibwe	verb type	English Translation
1. nipahkihtehwaa	vta	I hit s.o.
2. kikanawaapantaan	vti	You looking at s.t.
3.		He/she is hiding s.t.
4.		I hit s.t.
5.		You fetch s.o., you get s.o.
6.		He/she is speaking for s.t.
7.		I cover s.o.
8.		You know s.o.
9.		He/she finds s.t.
10.		I fetch s.t., I get s.t.
11.		You are looking at s.o.
12.		He/she is speaking for s.o.
13.		I call s.o., I address s.o.
14.		You blame s.t.
15.		He/she hides s.o.
16.		I cover s.t.
17.		You know s.t.
18.		He/she is lonesome for s.t. (lonely)
19.		I laugh at s.o.
20.		You blame s.o.
21.		He/she is lonesome for s.o. (lonely)
22.		I call s.t., I address s.t.
23.		You laugh at s.t.
24.		He/she finds s.o.

Note: Check your spelling and translation when you are done.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 6

Lesson 3 Review Test: **Inanimate Intransitive Verbs**

Your instructor will say sixteen inanimate intransitive verbs from the vocabulary you have learned on page 174. Listen carefully as the instructor says each verb. For each word your instructor says, please write it in Severn Ojibwe and also write the English translation. The spaces are provided for you below. Corrections will be done by your instructor.

Inanimate Intransitive Verbs	English Translation
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	
7.	
8.	
9.	
10.	
11.	
12.	
13.	
14.	
15.	
16.	

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Lesson 4 Review Test: **Particles**

1. There are thirty particles listed below in Severn Ojibwe. Translate them into English. Translations are on pages 259 and 260.

1. akaamahkiink _____
2. akaami-kihcikam _____
3. akaamihkana _____
4. akaawaac _____
5. ahpii piko _____
6. anaamaakonak _____
7. anaamipiik _____
8. anihshaa _____
9. awahshime _____
10. aanta _____
11. aanti nehke _____
12. aanti piko _____
13. capashihsh _____
14. ciikic _____
15. enikohk _____
16. eniwehk _____
17. inehke _____
18. kaye piko _____
19. misiwe _____
20. kihcinihkiik _____
21. kwanta _____
22. kayaash _____
23. pehkihsh _____
24. pehpeshik _____
25. namacinihkiik _____
26. nawac _____
27. siitawaac _____
28. tepinaahk _____
29. tipihkonk _____
30. wenipan _____

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; LESSON 6

Continuation of Particles

2. There are thirty particles listed below in English in mixed order. Translate them into Severn Ojibwe. Translations are on pages 260 and 261.

1. on the right _____
2. careless _____
3. last night _____
4. more, quite(-er) _____
5. in direction _____
6. for no reason or purpose _____
7. gone, disappear _____
8. barely, hardly, poorly _____
9. on the left _____
10. at least, anyhow, okay but _____
11. all over, whole, everywhere _____
12. one by one _____
13. by chance, at the last minute _____
14. at the same time, while _____
15. under the snow _____
16. hardly, scarcely _____
17. more, to greater extent, more and more _____
18. across the road or trail _____
19. underwater _____
20. anywhere _____
21. originally, long ago _____
22. anytime _____
23. across the ocean _____
24. with more effort, harder _____
25. in Europe, abroad _____
26. same, few _____
27. likely, to be expected, probably _____
28. whereabouts, which direction _____
29. by, close to, near to _____
30. low, lower level _____

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Lesson 5 Review Test: **Dubitative**

1. There are sixteen phrases listed below. Translate them into Severn Ojibwe. Translations are on page 261.

	English Translation
1. He/she must be working.	
2. He/she must be leaving.	
3. He/she must be going home.	
4. He/she must be afraid.	
5. He/she must be sleeping.	
6. He/she must be getting up.	
7. He/she must be drinking.	
8. He/she must be playing.	
9. He/she must be writing.	
10. He/she must be hunting.	
11. He/she must be starving.	
12. He/she must be walking.	
13. He/she must be buying.	
14. He/she must be healing.	
15. He/she must be going to the shore.	
16. He/she must be sick.	

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Preterit

2. There are eight phrases listed below. Translate them into Severn Ojibwe.

1. _____
We went there every winter but we no longer do. (exc.)

2. _____
I bought a house but I no longer own it.

3. _____
He got married a long time ago but he no longer is.

4. _____
He was working there the day before yesterday but he no longer does.

5. _____
We went there many times but we no longer do. (exc.)

6. _____
She bought a car yesterday but she no longer has it.

7. _____
I (formerly) lived there a long time ago but I no longer do.

8. _____
He (formerly) hunt there ten years ago but he no longer does.

Pejorative

3. There are twelve words listed below. Write pejoratives on each one. Remember, there are three kinds of endings. Translations for sections 3 and 4 are on page 262.

emihkwaan	paanahkihk	sakime
onaakan	mihtik	memenkwe
paashkisikan	mihtawak	pimite
pimihsewin	ahkihk	aanohkonaa

Diminutive

4. There are twelve words listed below. Write diminutives on each one. Remember, there are three kinds of endings.

pine	onaakan	mahkwa
pimite	piihsimohkaan	ohkaataahk
aanahkonaa	ciimaan	tiiwahkihk
pepaa	pimihsewin	maank

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; REVIEW SECTION

Let's Look Back At What You Have Learned:

Lessons 1 - 5

Animate Nouns:

niihtaawihs	kimohshoom	kitayihsh
ashikan	miikwan	mikisi
aamoo	mishtikwaan	namehtek
sheshtak	ahsapaahtik	Powaan

Inanimate Nouns:

minihtik	pimihsewin	ciipayi-mihtikowash
wiikwaahsi-ciimaan	mihtikowash	tihkinaakan
miikaasowin	pootawaan	nootinikewin
tashiikewin	pimaatisiwin	waawikan
aahkosiwin		

Animate Intransitive Verbs:

payehkinike	kwayaantahcike	iskaaciwaso
kaahsiinike	pimitaapii	papaamihse
wepahike	pimiwane	miikaaso
wiihkwepahike	piminike	ontenti
nanahacike	pimoocike	ontamihse
kisiipiikinike	mashkawii	macihse
wepahaakone	niinamii	inaapitaa
tawehkonehike	wiintamaake	ontamiihke
kawihshimo	wawiyatisiihke	takopiso
tāshiiwihtoo	nanaatihkohsii	patotepiso
wawiyasinaakosi	kapaahshimo	akiso
ishi-taa	nooncihshipe	pimahkwashiwe
ayami	memecikaahcike	mihshiinatinoon
pakitahwe	kookii	mikoshkaatentam
aanci-taa	maaciikwashiwe	tepihse
washkii	pimipahtoo	maahan
caakiso	wiihsakentam	nihsaapaawe
saakahan	papaamohse	mino-ayaawamaciho
anohkiitaa	kohtaaci	nihtaawanohkii
ayapi	kihtimi	nihkaakone
piiho	wanihike	paahpaakomo
ayehkosi		paawanii
kimooti		

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; REVIEW SECTION

Inanimate Intransitive Verbs:

akoote	akaahsihtikweyaa	pankihsin
maamihcaashkaa	kiishkaayawaa	anwaahtinikamin
paakwaa	akontin	mihshikamaa
pimaapoote	akaahsikamaa	'pimaahoote
makihtikweyaa	kashkatin	inihtaakwan
mooshkahan	eni-tipihkaak	takwan
otaapinikaate	tanihtaakwan	kocihcikaate
sahkite	tepihse	kiishowaayaa
nihkaakone	maacihtan	ishiwepan
pimakoote	ishiciwan	waapan
tahso-niipin	tahso-siikwan	nihtaawiki
ciiweyaa	papaami-ishaamakan	oncihcihse
tahso-ahki	tahso-pipoon	maaciiyaahoote
maaciiwicikaate	caakite	waahkaahse
akite	piikohse	

Transitive Animate Verbs:

paahpihi	pahkihteho	kihkenim
kanawaapam	kaash	mihkaw
kanoosh	akwanaho	naasihkaw
anaamenim	shikatenim	ayamiihtamaw
amacihi	kaahcitin	tanenim
miinihshin	noontaw	nantonaw
pihtaho	akwaahshim	nihsi

Transitive Inanimate Verbs:

paahpihtoon	pahkihtehan	kihkentan
kanawaapantan	kaatoon	mihkan
kanootan	akwanahan	naasihkan
anaamentan	shikatentan	ayamiihtan
ayaan	memecikaayaapantan	kocihtoon
inentan	kaahcitinan	wiihkopitoon
kiiwenotan	otaapinan	washkinan
pimiwitoon	kihkentam	piikohsitoon
kaahsiinan	onahtoon	waweshihtoon
akwaahsitoon		

Preverbs:

taa-	nanaantawi-	mate-	papaami-

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; REVIEW SECTION

Pronouns:

wahawe	ikweniwak	ahawe	okweniwak

Particles:

shaakooc	tepinaahk	inehke
tipihkonk	akaamahkiink	wenipan
akaami-kihcikam	hsa	akaamihkana
kinika	akaawaac	ota
ahpii piko	mihsawaac	anaamaakonak
oncita	anaamipiink	kanake
anihshaa	kehcin	awahshime
otaanaank	aanta	ishkwaayaac
aanti nehke	keko	aanti piko
noomake	enihkohk	eniwehk
capashiihsh	ciikic	kayaash
kaye piko	misiwe	kihcinihkiik
kwanta	pehkihsh	pehpeshik
namacinihkiik	nawac	siitawaac

Expressions:

kipaahpihaa na?	kikaatoon ina kipaashkisikan?
opaahpihaan na?	okaatoon ina opaashkisikan?

Note: More expressions and phrases on page 401

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Lesson 1

Exercise B: **Pronunciation Practice**

1) clean things
2) wipe things for cleaning
3) sweeping
4) vacuuming
5) tidy things
6) wash clothes
7) shovelling snow
8) snow-plow
9) be ready or available things
10) go along by sled
11) carry pack along on back
12) carry things along on one's shoulder
13) carry things
14) strong
15) weak
16) announce to people

Exercise C: **Understanding the Meaning of the Words**

1) payehkinike
2) kaahsiinike
3) wepahike
4) wiihkwepahike
5) nanahacike
6) kisiipiikinike
7) wepahaakone
8) tawehkonehike
9) kwayaantahcike
10) pimitaapii
11) pimiwane
12) piminike
13) pimoocike
14) mashkawii
15) niinamii
16) wiintamaake

Match Up Numbers and Letters:

1. e	5. m	9. l	13. a
2. f	6. h	10. k	14. b
3. g	7. o	11. j	15. c
4. p	8. n	12. I	16. d

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise E: **Translate into English**

1) He/she is sweeping.
2) He/she is carrying things.
3) He/she is cleaning things.
4) He/she is weak.
5) He/she is wiping things for cleaning.
6) He/she is announcing to people (telling).
7) He/she is carrying things along on one's shoulder.
8) He/she is vacuuming.
9) He/she is strong.
10) He/she is washing clothes.
11) He/she is carrying pack along on back.
12) He/she is snow-plowing.
13) He/she is tidying up (things).
14) He/she is getting ready (things).
15) He/she is pulling something along on sled or sleigh.
16) He/she is shovelling snow.

Exercise F: **Singular Forms**
Read and understand:

1) I am cleaning things.
You are cleaning things.
He/she is cleaning things.

2) I am cleaning, wiping things.
You are cleaning, wiping things.
He/she is cleaning, wiping things.

3) I am sweeping.
You are sweeping.
He/she is sweeping.

4) I am vacuuming.
You are vacuuming.
He/she is vacuuming.

5) I am tidying up (things).
You are tidying up (things).
He/she is tidying up (things).

6) I am washing clothes.
You are washing clothes.
He/she is tidying up (things).

7) I am shovelling snow.
You are shovelling snow.
He/she is shovelling snow.

8) I am snow-plowing.
You are snow-plowing.
He/she is snow-plowing.

9) I am getting things ready.
You are getting things ready.
He/she is getting things ready.

10) I am pulling something on sled.
You are pulling something on sled.
He/she is pulling something on sled.

11) I am carrying a pack on my back.
You are carrying a pack on your back.
He/she is carrying something along on his/her back.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

12) I am carrying something along on my shoulders.
You are carrying something along on your shoulders.
He/she is carrying something along on his/her shoulders.

13) I am carrying things.
You are carrying things.
He/she is carrying things.

14) I am strong.
You are strong.
He/she is strong.

15) I am weak.
You are weak.
He/she is weak.

16) I am telling (announcing).
You are telling (announcing).
He/she is telling (announcing).

Writing Practice:

Nipayehkinike	Nikaahsiinike	Niwepahike
Niwiihkwepahike	Ninanahacike	Nikisiipiikinike
Niwepahaakone	Nitawehkonehike	Nikwayaantahcike
Nipimitaapii	Nipimiwane	Nipiminike
Nipimoocike	Nipimiwane	Nipiminike
Nipimoocike	Nimashkawii	Niniinamii
Niwiintamaake		
Kipayehkinike	Kikaahsiinike	Kiwepahike
Kiwiihkwepahike	Kinanahacike	Kikisiipiikinike
Kiwepahaakone	Kitawehkonehike	Kikwayaantahcike
Kipimitaapii	Kipimiwane	Kipiminike
Kipimoocike	Kimashkawii	Kiniinamii
Kiwiintamaake		
Payehkinike	Kaahsiinike	Wepahike
Wiihkwepahike	Nanahacike	Kisiipiiikinike
Wepahaakone	Tawehkonehike	Kwayaantahcike
Pimitaapii	Pimiwane	Pimiminike
Pimoocike	Mashkawii	Niinamii
Wiintamaake		

Negative Forms:

1) Kaawin nipayehkinikehsiin.
Kaawin ninanahacikehsiin.
Kaawin nikaahsiinikehsiin.
Kaawin nikisiipiikinikehsiin.

Kaawin niwepahikehsiin.
Kaawin niwepahaakonehsiin.
Kaawin niwiihkwepahikehsiin.
Kaawin nitawehkonehikehsiin.

2) Kaawin kipayehkinikehsiin.
Kaawin kinanahacikehsiin.
Kaawin kikaahsiinikehsiin.
Kaawin kikisiipiikinikehsiin.

Kaawin kiwepahikehsiin.
Kaawin kiwepahaakonehsiin.
Kaawin kiwiihkwepahikehsiin.
Kaawin kitawehkonehikehsiin.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

3) Kaawin payehkinikehsiin. Kaawin wepahikehsiin.
Kaawin nanahacikehsiin. Kaawin wepahaakonehsiin.
Kaawin kaahsiinikehsiin. Kaawin wiihkwepahikehsiin.
Kaawin kisiipiikinikehsiin. Kaawin tawehkonehikehsiin.

Exercise G: **Questions and Answers in Singular Form**

Speaking Practice:

Question	Positive Answer	Negative Answer
Are you cleaning up?	Yes, I'm cleaning up.	No, I'm not cleaning up.
Is Sam cleaning up?	Yes, Sam is cleaning up.	No, Sam is not cleaning up.

Exercise H: **Plural Forms**

1) We are cleaning up. (exc)
We are cleaning up. (inc)
You (pl) are cleaning up.
They are cleaning up.

2) We are cleaning things. (exc)
We are cleaning things. (inc)
You (pl) are cleaning things.
They are cleaning things.

3) We are sweeping.(exc)
We are sweeping. (inc)
You (pl) are sweeping.
They are sweeping.

4) We are vacuuming. (exc)
We are vacuuming. (inc)
You (pl) are vacuuming.
They are vacuuming.

5) We are tidying up. (exc)
We are tidying up. (inc)
You (pl) are tidying up.
They are tidying up.

6) We are washing clothes. (exc)
We are washing clothes. (inc)
You (pl) are washing clothes.
They are washing clothes.

7) We are shovelling snow. (exc)
We are shovelling snow. (inc)
You (pl) are shovelling snow.
They are shovelling snow.

8) We are snow-plowing. (exc)
We are snow-plowing. (inc)
You (pl) are snow-plowing.
They are snow-plowing.

9) We are getting things ready. (exc)
We are getting things ready. (inc)
You (pl) are getting things ready.
They are getting things ready.

10) We are pulling something on the sled. (exc)
We are pulling something on the sled. (inc)
You (pl) are pulling something on the sled.
They are pulling something on the sled.

11) We are carrying a pack on our back. (exc)
We are carrying a pack on our back. (inc)
You (pl) are carrying a pack on your back.
They are carrying a pack on their back.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

12) We are carrying something along on our shoulder. (exc)
We are carrying something along on our shoulder. (inc)
You (pl) are carrying something along on your shoulder.
They are carrying something along on their shoulder.

13) We are carrying things. (exc)
We are carrying things. (inc)
You (pl) are carrying things.
They are carrying things.

14) We are strong. (exc)
We are strong. (inc)
You (pl) are strong.
They are strong.

15) We are weak. (exc)
We are weak. (inc)
You (pl) are weak.
They are weak.

16) We are making an announcement. (exc)
We are making an announcement. (inc)
You (pl) are making an announcement.
They are making an announcement.

2. **Questions and Answers:**

Question	**Answer**
Are you (pl) cleaning up?	Yes, we (exc) are cleaning up.
Are you (pl) cleaning up?	No, we (exc) are not cleaning up.
Are we (inc) going to clean up?	Yes, we (inc) are going to clean up.
Are we (inc) going to clean up?	No, we (inc) are not going to clean up.
Are they cleaning up?	Yes, they are cleaning up.
Are they cleaning up?	No, they are not cleaning up.

He/she is cleaning things.

3 a) **Paradigms**

1	I am sweeping.	13	We are sweeping. (exc)
2	You are sweeping.	21	We are sweeping. (inc)
3	He/she is sweeping.	22	You (pl) are sweeping.
		33	They are sweeping.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

	1	I am tidying up.	13	We are tidying up. (exc)
	2	You are tidying up.	21	We are tidying up. (inc)
	3	He/she is tidying up.	22	You (pl) are tidying up.
			33	They are tidying up.
	1	I am washing clothes.	13	We are washing clothes. (exc)
	2	You are washing clothes.	21	We are washing clothes. (inc)
	3	He/she is washing clothes.	22	You (pl) are washing clothes.
			33	They are washing clothes.
b)	1	Niwepahaakone	13	Niwepahaakonemin
	2	Kiwepahaakone	21	Kiwepahaakonemin
	3	Wepahaakone	22	Kiwepahaakonenaawaa
			33	Wepahaakonewak
	1	Nitawehkonehike	13	Nitawehkonehikemin
	2	Kitawehkonehike	21	Kitawehkonehikemin
	3	Tawehkonehike	22	Kitawehkonehikenaawaa
			33	Tawehkonehikewak
	1	Nikwayaantahcike	13	Nikwayaantahcikemin
	2	Kikwayaantahcike	21	Kikwayaantahcikemin
	3	Kwayaantahcike	22	Kikwayaantahcikemin
			33	kwayaantahcikewak

c) **Negative Paradigms:**

	1	Kaawin nipimiwanehsiin.	13	Kaawin nipimiwanehsiimin.
	2	Kaawin kipimiwanehsiin.	21	Kaawin kipimiwanehsiimin.
	3	Kaawin pimiwanehsiin.	22	Kaawin kipimiwanehsiinaawaa.
			33	Kaawin pimiwanehsiiwak.
	1	Kaawin nipiminikehsiin.	13	Kaawin nipiminikehsiimin.
	2	Kaawin kipiminikehsiin.	21	Kaawin kipiminikehsiimin.
	3	Kaawin piminikehsiin.	22	Kaawin kipiminikehsiinaawaa.
			33	Kaawin piminikehsiiwak.

Exercise I: **Dialogues**

Read and Understand:

A. Hello my friend. What are you doing?
Hello my friend. I am cleaning right now.
Oh yah! Do you want me to help you?
Yes, are you strong? If you are not busy, come and help me.
I am not busy right now.
When will you come then?

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

I will come right away. Do you want me to bring something?
No, just come as you are. I have everything we need to use.
That's good Then I will be on my way.
Okay, I guess I will see you later.

B. Hello my neighbour. How are you this morning?
I just got up now.
Oh yeah! Did you go to bed late last night?
No, I didn't sleep too good last night.
Did someone keep you awake last night?
Yes, someone was cleaning all night last night at my place.
What about you, what are you doing?
I'm busy outside right now.
Oh yeah! What are you doing?
I am cleaning up outside. I am sweeping and also I am shovelling snow.

Exercise J: **Review Test**

Animate Intransitive Verbs

English Translation

1. He/she is cleaning up.
2. He/she is cleaning up things.
3. He/she is sweeping.
4. He/she is vacuuming.
5. He/she is tidying up.
6. He/she is washing clothes.
7. He/she is shovelling snow.
8. He/she is snow-plowing.
9. He/she is getting things ready.
10. He/she is pulling something on sled.
11. He/she is carrying a pack on back.
12. He/she is carrying something on shoulder.
13. He/she is carrying something.
14. He/she is strong.
15. He/she is weak.
16. He/she is making an announcement.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

2. **Severn Ojibwe**

1. payehkinike
2. kaahsiinike
3. wepahike
4. wiihkwepahike
5. nanahacike
6. kisiipiikinike
7. wepahaakone
8. tawehkonehike
9. kwayaantahcike
10. pimitaapii
11. piminiwane
12. piminike
13. pimoocike
14. mashkawii
15. niinamii
16. wiintamaake

Lesson 2

Exercise A: **First and Second-Person Transitive Verbs**

1.	**VTA**	**VTI**
1)	I am laughing at him/her.	I am laughing at it.
2)	I know him/her.	I know it.
3)	I am hiding him/her.	I am hiding it.
4)	I am calling him/her.	I am calling it.
5)	I am fetching him/her.	I am fetching it.
6)	I am missing him/her.	I am lonely.
7)	I am hitting him/her.	I am hitting it.
8)	I am looking at him/her.	I am looking at it.
9)	I found him/her.	I found it.
10)	I am covering him/her.	I am covering it.
11)	I am blaming him/her.	I am blaming it.
12)	I am speaking for (on behalf of) him/her.	I am speaking for it.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

2.

	VTA	VTI
1)	You are lauging at him/her.	You are laughing at it.
2)	You know him/her.	You know it.
3)	You are hiding him/her.	You are hiding it.
4)	You are calling him/her.	You are calling it.
5)	You are fetching him/her.	You are fetching it.
6)	You are missing him/her.	You are missing it.
7)	You are hitting him/her.	You are hitting it.
8)	You arelooking at him/her.	You are looking at it.
9)	You found him/her.	You found it.
10)	You cover him/her.	You cover it.
11)	You are blaming him/her.	You blame it.
12)	You are speaking for him/her.	You are speaking for it.

Exercise B:

	VTA	VTI
1)	He/she is laughing at him/her.	He/she is laughing at it.
2)	He/she knows him/her.	He/she knows that.
3)	He/she is hiding him/her.	He/she is hiding it.
4)	He/she is calling him/her.	He/she is calling it.
5)	He/she is fetching him/her.	He/she is fetching it.
6)	He/she is missing him/her.	He/she is missing it.
7)	He she is hitting him/her.	He/she is hitting it.
8)	He/she is looking at him/her.	He/she is looking at it.
9)	He/she found him/her.	He/she found it.
10)	He/she covers him/her.	He/she covers it.
11)	He/she is blaming him/her.	He/she blames it.
12)	He/she is speaking for him/her.	He/she is speaking for it.

Exercise C:

Questions and Answers
First, Second-Person Forms Only

	Question	Answer
A.	Are you lauging at Sally?	Yes, I am lauging at her. No, I am not laughing at her.
B.	Do you know Sally?	Yes, I know her. No, I don't know her.
C.	Are you hiding your sweetheart?	Yes, I am hiding him/her. No, I am not hiding him/her.
D.	Are you calling Mary?	Yes, I am calling her. No, I am not calling her.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

TI Verb

A.	Are you laughing at your shoe?	Yes, I am laughing at it. No, I am not laughing at it.
B.	Do you know that you are going?	Yes, I know. No, I don't know.
C.	Are you hiding your gun?	Yes, I am hiding it. No, I am not hiding it.
D.	Are you calling something?	Yes, I am calling it. No, I am not calling it.

Writing Practice:

2. **VTA**

I am fetching him/her.
I am missing him/her. (lonely)
I am hitting him/her.
I am looking at him/her.

VTI

I am fetching it.
I am lonely.
I am hitting it.
I am looking at it.

Exercise D: **Questions and Answers**
Third-Person with Obviative

	Question	Answer
A.	Is he/she laughing at Sally?	Yes, he/she is laughing at her. No, he/she is not laughing at her.
B.	Does he/she know Sally?	Yes, he/she knows her. No, he/she does not know her.
C.	Is he/she hiding he/her sweetheart?	Yes, he/she is hiding his/her sweetheart. No, he/she is not hiding his/her sweetheart.
D.	Is he/she calling Mary?	Yes, he/she is calling her. No, He/she is not calling her.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

TI Verbs

A. Is he/she laughing at my feet?
Yes, he/she is laughing at it.
No, he/she is not laughing at it.

B. Does he/she know where to go?
Yes, he/she knows.
No, he/she does not know.

C. Is he/she hiding something?
Yes, he/she is hiding it.
No, he/she is not hiding it.

D. Is he/she call his/her village?
Yes, he/she is calling it.
No, he/she is not calling it.

Writing Practice:

VTA

He/she is fetching him/her.
He/she is missing him/her.
He/she is hitting him/her.
He/she is looking at him/her.

VTI

He/she is fetching it.
He/she is lonely.
He/she is hitting it.
He/she is looking at it.

Exercise E:

Paradigms

1 Niin
2 Kiin
3 Wiin

13 Niinawint
21 Kiinawint
22 Kiinawaa
33 Wiinawaa

VTA

1 I am laughing at him/her.
2 You're laughing at him/her.
3 He/she is laughing at him/her.

13 We (exc) are laughing at him/her.
21 We (inc) are laughing at him/her.
22 You (pl) are laughing at him/her.
33 They are laughing at him/her.

VTI

1 I am laughing at it.
2 You're laughing at it.
3 He/she is laughing at it.

13 We (exc) are laughing at it.
21 We (inc) are laughing at it.
22 You're (pl) are laughing at it.
33 They are laughing at it.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Writing Practice:

VTA

a)
1 Nikihkenimaa
2 Kikihkenimaa
3 Okikihkenimaan

13 Nikihkenimaamin
21 Kikihkenimaamin
22 Kikihkenimaawaa
33 Okikihkenimaawaan

b)
1 Nikaanaa
2 Kikaanaa
3 Okaanaan

13 Nikaanaamin
21 Kikaanaamin
22 Kikaanaawaa
33 Okaanaawaan

c)
1 Nikanoonaa
2 Kikanoonaa
3 Okanoonaan

13 Nikanoonaamin
21 Kikanoonaamin
22 Kikanoonaawaa
33 Okanoonaawaan

d)
1 Ninaasihkawaa
2 Kinaasihkawaa
3 Onaasihkawaan

13 Ninaasihkawaamin
21 Kinaasihkawaamin
22 Kinaasihkawaawaa
33 Onaasihkawaawaan

VTI

a)
1 Nikihkentaan
2 Kikihkentaan
3 Okihkentaan

13 Nikihkentaamin
21 Kikihkentaamin
22 Kikihkentaamin
33 Okihkentaanaawaa

b)
1 Nikaatoon
2 Kikaatoon
3 Okaatoon

13 Nikaatoomin
21 Kikaatoomin
22 Kikaatoonaawaa
33 Okaatoonaawaa

c)
1 Nikanootaan
2 Kikanootaan
3 Okanootaan

13 Nikanootaamin
21 Kikanootaamin
22 Kikanootanaawaa
33 Okanootanaawaa

d)
1 Ninaasihkaan
2 Kinaasihkaan
3 Onaasihkaan

13 Ninaasihkaamin
21 Kinaasihkaamin
22 Kinaasihkaanaawaa
33 Onaasihkaanaawaa

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise F: **Working with the Language**

Read and Understand:

a) I am laughing at that man walking over there.
b) Are you laughing at my story?
c) I know that woman walking over there.
d) Do you know that you can't do that by yourself?
e) What are you doing? Are you hiding the money?
f) Hide your gun before you leave.
g) Do you want to call your ex-spouse when you finish work?
h) I am speaking for the situation.

Writing Practice:

I am fetching him/her.	I am fetching it.
I am missing him/her. (lonely)	I am lonely.
I am hitting him/her.	I am hitting it.
I am looking at him/her.	I am looking at it.

Exercise G: **More Sentences**

Read and Understand:

a) He/she has already found his/her dog.
b) Has he/she already found the axe?
c) He/she is covering up his/her daughter.
d) He/she is covering up the boat. (canoe)
e) He/she is blaming his/her friend.
f) He/she is blaming the bad weather.
g) He/she is speaking for his/her son. (on behalf of)
h) He/she is speaking for the situation.

Exercise H: **Dialogues**

Read and Understand:

A. Hello my daughter. What are you doing?
I am laughing at my friend right now.
Oh yeah! What is he/she doing? Is he/she doing something funny?
No, he/she is being mischievious. He/she is called an owl.
Do you know him/her?
No, what does he/she look like? Does he/she look cute/funny?
Yes, he/she is very cute/funny. Do you want to see him/her?
Yes, I would be very happy to see him/her.
Okay, I will tell him/her to come to my home.
No, not yet! Wait awhile I will ask my boss.
Tell your friend I will call him/her later.
Okay, I will talk to you again soon.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

B. Hello, my nephew. How are you?
I am well. How about you?
I am fine too. I wanted to speak to your father, Is he home?
No, he left already.
Oh yeah! Do you know when he will be home?
No, he never tells me exactly when he will be home.
Do you think he is hiding something?
Yes, it seems like he is hiding something, I think.
Why do you think so?
He never tells me anything.
Do you ever ask him?
No, I never do, he never talks to me anyway.

VAI

1 I am doing something funny.
2 You are doing something funny.
3 He/she is doing something funny.

13 We (exc) are doing something funny.
21 We (inc) are doing something funny.
22 You (pl) are doing something funny.
33 They are doing something funny.

VAI

1 I am being mischievious.
2 You are being mischievious.
3 He/she is being mischievious.

13 We (exc) are being mischievious.
21 We (inc) are being mischievious.
22 You (pl) are being mischievious.
33 They are being mischievious.

VAI

1 I look cute/funny.
2 You look cute/funny.
3 He/she looks cute/funny.

13 We (exc) look cute/funny.
21 We (inc) look cute/funny.
22 You (pl) look cute/funny.
33 They look cute/funny.

VAI

1 I live there.
2 You live there.
3 He/she lives there.

13 We (exc) live there.
21 We (inc) live there.
22 You (pl) live there.
33 They live there.

VAI

1 I am speaking.
2 You are speaking.
3 He/she is speaking.

13 We (exc) are speaking.
21 We (inc) are speaking.
22 You (pl) are speaking.
33 They are speaking.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Dialogue B

Preverb

1. even though I ...
2. even though you ...
3. even though

Exercise I: **More About TA Verb Types**
Subject and Object Combinations

Listen and Understand:

(1 acting on 2)

I am laughing at him/her.
I know him/her.
I am hiding him/her.
I am calling him/her.

(2 acting on 3)

You are fetching him/her.
You are lonely for him/her.
You are hitting him/her.
You are looking at him/her.

(3 acting on 3 obviative)

He/she is laughing at him/her.
He/she knows him/her.
He/she is hiding him/her.
He/she is calling him/her.

2. (3 acting on 1)

He/she is laughing at me.
He/she knows me.
He/she is hiding me.
He/she is calling me.

(3 acting on 2)

He/she is laughing at you.
He/she knows you.
He/she is hiding you.
He/she is calling you.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

(3 obviative acting on 3)

He/she is laughing at him/her.
He/she knows him/her.
He/she is hiding him/her.
He/she is calling him/her.

Writing Practice:

He/she knows him/her.
He/she is calling him/her.
He/she is hiding him/her.
He/she is fetching him/her.

He/she is lonely for him/her.
He/she is hitting him/her.

(1 acting on 2)

I am laughing at you.
I know you.
I am hiding you.
I am calling you.

(2 acting on 1)

You are laughing at me.
You know me.
You are hiding me.
You are calling me.

Writing Practice:

(2 acting on 3)
Q. Kimihkawaa na?
(1 acting on 3)
A. Ehe, nimihkawaa.

(3 acting on 2)
Q. Kimihkawik na?
(3 acting on 1)
A. Ehe, nimihkawik.

(2 acting on 3)
Q. Kitakwanawaa na?
(1 acting on 3)
A. Ehe, nitakwanawaa.

(3 acting on 2)
Q. Kitakwanahook na?
(3 acting on 1)
A. Ehe, nitakwanahook.

(3 acting on 3 obviative)
Q. Omihkawaan na?
(3 obviative acting on 3)
A. Ehe, omihkaakoon.

(3 acting on 3 obviative)
Q. Otakwanshwaan na?
(3 abviative acting on 3)
A. Ehe, otakwanahokoon.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise J: **Final Review for Lesson 2**

Transitive Animate Verbs:

1. **English Translations:**

    1. I am laughing at him/her.
    2. You know him/her.
    3. He/she is hiding him/her.
    4. I am calling him/her.
    5. I am fetching him/her.
    6. He/she is lonely for him/her.
    7. I am hitting him/her.
    8. You are looking at him/her.
    9. He/she found him/her.
    10. I am covering him/her.
    11. I am blaming him/her.
    12. He/she is speaking for him/her.

Transitive Animate Verbs:

2. **English Translations:**

    1. I am laughing at it.
    2. You know it.
    3. He/she is hiding it.
    4. I am speaking for it.
    5. I am fetching it.
    6. He/she is lonely.
    7. I am hitting it.
    8. You are looking at it.
    9. He/she found it.
    10. I am covering it.
    11. I am blaming it.
    12. He/she is speaking for it.

3.
    1. He/she is speaking for s.t.
    2. I call s.o. I address s.o.
    3. I fetch s.t. I get s.t.
    4. He/she is hiding s.o.
    5. I cover s.o.
    6. You know s.t.
    7. He/she finds s.o.
    8. I hit s.o.
    9. You fetch s.o. You get s.o.
    10. He/she is lonesome for s.o.
    11. I laugh at s.t.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

12. You are looking at s.t.
13. He/she find s.t.
14. I cover s.t.
15. You blame s.o.
16. He/she is hiding s.t.
17. You know s.o.
18. I laugh at s.o.
19. He/she is lonely.
20. I hit s.t.
21. You blame s.t.
22. He/she is speaking for s.o.
23. I call s.t. I address s.t.
24. You are looking at s.o.

Lesson 3

Exercise A: **Inanimate Intransitive Verbs**

Read and Understand:

1.
1. hang
2. fall
3. be deep water
4. be shallow water
5. be a big lake
6. be a small lake
7. be a wide lake
8. be a narrow lake
9. be big waves
10. be nice and calm body of water
11. float, be in the water
12. drift along on current
13. drift along on waves
14. freeze up
15. ice break up
16. flood, be high water

3.
1. paakwaa
2. mihshikamaa
3. maacihtan
4. akoote
5. mooshkahan
6. maamihcashkaa
7. kiishkaayawaa
8. pankihsin
9. akaahsihtikweyaa
10. anwaahtinikamin

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

11. pimaapoote
12. pimaahoote
13. akaahsikamaa
14. akontin
15. kashkatin
16. mankihtikweyaa

Exercise B: **Translation into Severn Ojibwe**

Write and Understand:

1. maamihcaashkaa
2. mankihtikweyaa
3. mihshikamaa
4. paakwaa
5. akaahsihtikweyaa
6. kashkatin
7. maacihtan
8. pimaapoote
9. akontin
10. pimaahoote
11. pankihsin
12. mooshkahan
13. akaahsikamaa
14. anwaahtinikamin
15. akoote
16. kiishkaayawaa

Exercise C: **Translation into English**

Write and Understand:

1. drift along on current
2. freeze up
3. be big waves
4. ice break up
5. drift along on waves
6. flood, be high water
7. be a small lake
8. be shallow water
9. hang s.t.
10. be a narrow river
11. be a wide river
12. be a big lake
13. fall s.t.
14. be a deep water
15. float, be in the water
16. be nice and calm body of water

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Exercise D: **Sentences**

Read and Understand:

1. Is your coat hanging on the chair?
2. Do you think the airplane crashed into the bush?
3. That lake looks deep to me.
4. We can't go paddle there. It is too shallow.
5. The lake is very big where I want to go.
6. The lake is small where I live.
7. The river is wide where I want to go and fish.
8. The river is narrow where I killed the moose.

New Vocabulary:

VAI

1	I paddle	13	We paddle (exc)
2	You paddle	21	We paddle (inc)
3	He/she paddles	22	You (pl) paddle
		33	They paddle

VTA

1	I kill s.o.	13	We kill s.o.(exc)
2	You kill s.o.	21	We kill s.o. (inc)
3	He/she kills s.o.	22	You (pl) kill s.o.
		33	They kill s.o.

Exercise E: **More Sentences**

Read and Understand:

1. Do you think the big lake has big waves?
2. It is a very nice and calm lake.
3. There is an airplane in the river over there.
4. There is a branch drifting along on current by the rapids.
5. The canoe is drifting along on waves on the lake.
6. Very soon it will be freeze up.
7. Very soon the ice in the river will break up.
8. It looks like there will be a flood after the ice breaks up.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise F: **Questions and Answers**

Read and Understand:

a) Q. Where is your coat hanging?
A. Over there beside the door.

b) Q. Where do you think the airplane crashed.
A. Perhaps maybe far away in the bush.

c) Q. Is that where you want to go fishing?
A. No, the water is too deep here.

d) Q. How about there, do you think the water is too shallow?
A. No, that is where I will go swimming.

e) Q. Is it a big lake where you want to go tomorrow?
A. Yes, it is a very big lake although there are many islands.

f) Q. Is it a small lake where you want to set your fish net?
A. Yes, it is a small lake although it is a long lake.

g) Q. Is it a wide river where you want to go hunting?
A. I don't know, I haven't seen it yet.

h) Q. Is it a small river where you want to go duck hunting?
A. Yes, it is a small river and very many fish.

New Vocabulary:

VAI

1	I am swimming.	13	We are swimming. (exc)
2	You are swimming.	21	We are swimming. (inc)
3	He/she is swimming.	22	You (pl) are swimming.
		33	They are swimming.

Sentence F:

1	I am fishing with a net.	13	We are fishing with a net. (exc)
2	You are fishing with a net.	21	We are fishing with a net. (inc)
3	He/she is fishing with a net.	22	You (pl) are fishing with a net.
		33	They are fishing with a net.

Sentence H:

1	I am hunting ducks.	13	We are hunting ducks. (exc)
2	You are hunting ducks.	21	We are hunting ducks. (inc)
3	He/she is hunting ducks.	22	You (pl) are hunting ducks.
		33	They are hunting ducks.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Writing Practice:

hang s.t.
fall s.t.
deep water
shallow water

Exercise G: **Continuation of Questions and Answers**

Read and Understand:

a) Q. Does it look like the waves are big in the middle of the lake?
A. Yes, it looks like there are big waves.

b) Q. Do you see it that the water will be nice and calm this evening.
A. I don't know. I haven't checked up on it yet.

c) Q. What is that thing that is floating?
A. It looks like a rock island.

d) Q. Is that a small canoe drifting along on current?
A. No, it is a coffin.

e) Q. Do you see that wooden box drifting along on current?
A. No, where?

f) Q. When do you see that it will freeze up?
A. I see that it will probably freeze up soon.

g) Q. Do you think the ice will break up soon?
A. I don't know. I am not worried about it.

h) Q. Do you see it there will be a flood when the ice breaks up?
A. I hope not.

New Vocabulary:

VTI

1	I am checking up on it.	13	We are checking up on it. (exc)
2	You are checking up on it.	21	We are checking up on it. (inc)
3	He/she is checking up on it.	22	You (pl) are checking up on it.
		33	They are checking up on it.

VTI

1	I am worrying about it.	13	We are worrying about it. (exc)
2	You are worrying about it.	21	We are worrying about it. (inc)
3	He/she is worrying about it.	22	You (pl) worrying about it.
		33	They are worrying about it.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Writing Practice:

- be big waves
- float, be in the water
- freeze up
- flood, be high water

Exercise H: **Mini-Dialogues**

Read and Understand:

A. Is my brother-in-law there?
Yes, do you want to talk to him?
Yes, I want to ask him something.

Hello my brother-in-law.
How can I help you today?
If you are not busy, I want to ask you to help me. I want to hang up my boat.
Okay, wait I want to eat my breakfast.
Thank you my brother-in-law. I will see you later.

B. Listen! Do you hear something?
No, do you think you heard something?
Yes, I thought it sounds like something fell.
What direction did it sound like?
It sounds like it came from up there.
Do you want to go and check up on it?
No, I am scared.

C. Do you want to go fishing?
No, the lake has big waves.
We should go to a small lake.
Okay, lets give it a try.
When do you want to go then?
I guess right away, before it gets too windy.
Okay, I will get ready immediately.

D. What do you want to do today?
I want to go trout fishing with a net where the river is deep.
I am going to a different place to fish with a net.
Where, do you think you want to go to fish with a net?
Where the river is narrow.
Do you think there is a trout swimming around there?
A long time ago about this time, they use to swim around there.
I sure hope you will catch them.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

New Vocabulary:

Dialogue B:

1	I am checking up on things.	13	We are checking up on things. (exc)
2	You are checking up on things.	21	We are checking up on things. (inc)
3	He/she is checking up on things.	22	You (pl) are checking up on things.
		33	They are checking up on things.

Dialogue C:

1	I am trying it.	13	We are trying it. (exc)
2	You are trying it.	21	We are trying it. (inc)
3	He/she is trying it.	22	You (pl) are trying it.
		33	They are trying it.

Dialogue D:

VTI

1	I think so.	13	We think so. (exc)
2	You think so.	21	We think so. (inc)
3	He/she thinks so.	22	You (pl) think so.
		33	They think so.

VTA

1	I caught s.o.	13	We caught s.o. (exc)
2	You caught s.o.	21	We caught s.o. (inc)
3	He/she caught s.o.	22	You (pl) caught s.o.
		33	They caught s.o.

Exercise I: **Creative Writing**

Read and Understand:

A. When is your father leaving?
He left already. He left early this morning.
When will he be coming home?
I don't know. He didn't tell me.
Do you want to talk to him when he arrives.
Yes, tell him to call me when he arrives.
Okay, I will tell him when he arrives.

Hello my friend. Did you call me?
Yes, I want to ask you something.
Okay, how can I help today?

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

I want you to go with me, I want to go fishing tomorrow.
Where do you want to go?
Where there is a big lake.
Do you think that there are plenty of fish there?
Yes, I think there are plenty of fish there at this time.
Okay, I will go with you if only it isn't too windy.
If the lake is deep, there will be big waves.
If it is too windy, we will go to a small lake instead.

New Vocabulary:

1	I think s.o. to be there.	13	We think s.o. to be there. (exc)
2	You think s.o. to be there.	21	We think s.o. to be there. (inc)
3	He/she thinks s.o. to be there.	22	You (pl) think s.o. to be there.
		33	They think s.o. to be there.

Exercise J: **Final Review Lesson 3**

1. **Inanimate Intransitive Verbs:**

1. it is calm, clear water
2. be big waves
3. fall s.t.
4. be shallow water
5. hang
6. be deep water
7. flood, be high water
8. drift along on current
9. freeze up
10. float, be in the water
11. be wide river
12. ice break up
13. be big lake
14. drift along on waves
15. be deep water
16. be small lake

2. **Severn Ojibwe:**

1. kashkatin
2. akontin
3. maamihcaashkaa
4. maacihtan
5. akaahsihtikweyaa
6. pimaapoote
7. akaahsikamaa
8. akoote

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

9. anwaahtinikamin
10. paakwaa
11. mihshikamaa
12. pimaahoote
13. makihtikweyaa
14. mooshkahan
15. kiishkaayawaa
16. pankihsin

Lesson 4

Exercise A: **Particles**

Listen and Understand:

1. in Europe, abroad
2. across the ocean
3. across the road or trail
4. hardly, scarcely
5. anytime, whenever
6. under the snow
7. under the water
8. by chance, at the last minute
9. to greater extent, more and more
10. some, few
11. whereabouts, which direction
12. anywhere
13. low, lower level
14. by, close to, near to
15. with more effort, harder
16. at least, anyhow, okay but
17. in direction
18. originally, long ago, former
19. likely, to be expected, probably
20. all over, whole, everywhere
21. on the right
22. for no reason or purpose
23. at the same time, while
24. one by one
25. on the left
26. more, quite
27. barely, hardly, poorly
28. carelessly
29. last night
30. gone, disappear

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise B: **Learning the New Vocabulary**

1. in Europe, abroad
2. across the ocean
3. across the road or trail
4. hardly, scarcely
5. anytime, whenever
6. under the snow
7. under the water
8. by chance, at the last minute
9. to greater extent, more and more
10. some, few
11. whereabouts, which direction
12. anywhere
13. low, lower level
14. by, close to, near to
15. with more effort, harder
16. at least, anyhow, okay but
17. in direction
18. originally, long ago, former
19. likely, to be expected, probably
20. all over, whole, everywhere
21. on the right
22. for no reason or purpose
23. at the same time, while
24. one by one
25. on the left
26. more, quite
27. barely, hardly, poorly
28. carelessly
29. last night
30. gone, disappear

Exercise C: **Translation into Severn Ojibwe**

1. inehke
2. pehpeshik
3. ciikic
4. aanti piko
5. aanta
6. pehkihsh
7. kihcinihkiik
8. anaamaakonak
9. kaye piko
10. aanti nehke
11. akaamahkiink

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

12. tepinaahk
13. anaamipiink
14. ahpii piko
15. kayaash
16. tipihkonk
17. eniwehk
18. nawac
19. akaami-kihcikam
20. namacinihkiik
21. enikohk
22. wenipan
23. misiwe
24. capashiihsh
25. awashime
26. siitawaac
27. anihshaa
28. akaawaac
29. akaamihkaana
30. kwanta

Exercise D: **Translation into English**

1. some, few
2. low, lower level
3. with more effort, harder
4. all over, whole, everywhere
5. originally, long ago, former
6. in direction
7. whereabouts, which direction
8. at the same time, while
9. gone, disappear
10. likely, to be expected
11. on the right
12. carelessly
13. anytime
14. more, quite
15. on the left
16. hardly, scarcely
17. one by one
18. barely, hardly, poorly
19. in Europe, abroad
20. across the road or trail
21. by chance, at the last minute
22. last night
23. under the snow
24. by, closer to, near to
25. for no reason or purpose

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

26. underwater
27. anytime
28. to greater extent, more and more
29. at least, anyhow, okay but
30. across the ocean

Exercise E: **Working the Language**

Read and Understand:

A) When I finish with work I want to go to Europe.
There is always fighting (war) in Europe.
Are you from Europe?

B) My friend came from across the ocean.
There is always fighting (war) in Europe.
Does his/her friend want to go home soon across the ocean?

C) I want to change my place of residence to across the road.
Do you live across the road?
When does he/she want to go across the road?

D) I scarcely had enough food.
Did you barely get out of bed this morning?
There was barely enough wood this winter.

E) I will just sit anywhere.
Just put it anywhere.
He/she will go anywhere.

F) I will set my trap under the snow.
Is your vehicle under the snow?
The partridge sleeps under the snow.

G) The fish is swimming underwater.
The duck is diving underwater.
Do you also see the duck diving underwater.

H) By chance I found out quickly there was a fire that is why I didn't get burned.
By chance I saw him early enough that is why he didn't drown.
By chance it was not cold that is why I didn't freeze.

I) I think he/she is getting even more sicker.
I think the weather is going to be even more colder next winter.
The weather will be even more warmer when spring comes.

J) Only a few will leave tomorrow.
Some men will not go.
Only a few wood were used last night.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Writing Practice:

- in Europe, abroad
- across the road, trail
- hardly, scarcely
- anytime
- under the snow
- underwater

Exercise F: **Learning the Language**

Read and Understand:

A) What direction do you want to go?
What direction is the wind coming from?
What direction is it flowing?

B) Just sit anywhere.
You can just sleep anywhere.
Q. Where do you want to put this?
A. Anywhere.

C) The airplane is flying low.
The geese are flying low.
The clouds are low today.

D) I will stop near the house.
Close to Christmas day I will go home.
Near morning I will get up.

E) Run hard!
Pull the rope harder.
Let us work hard before night fall.

F) Anyhow I will be coming too tomorrow.
Just go anyway!
Wait for him to arrive anyway.

G) Let's go over there in that direction.
He/she lives over there in that direction.
The wind is coming from the north direction.

H) A long time ago life was hard.
A long time ago people were constantly working.
There was plenty of traditional food a long time ago.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

I) It will likely rain tonight.
Is it likely that you will be leaving early in the morning?
Is it likely that your father will arrive sooner?

J) We will walk all over tomorrow.
Just give me all your money.
The sickness is going around all over.

Writing Practice:

whereabouts, which direction
anywhere
low, lower level
by, close to, near to
with more effort, harder
at least, anyhow, okay but

Exercise G: **Using the Language**

Read and Understand:

A) Turn on the right here!
Stand by his right side!
Do you want to walk on your right side?

B) I came here for no reason.
He is saying it for no reason.
You are talking too much for no reason.

C) I am going to eat at the same time while I am working.
I want to look for my friend at the same time when I go shopping.
Are you going to do some shopping at the same time when you go to town?

D) One by one we will take them.
One by one we will take them.
Just take them one by one.

E) Sit on the left side.
I will run on the left side.
Turn on the left side over there.

F) I will leave closer to the afternoon.
How about we paddle away when the wind calms down?
Close to the time when I am feeling well I will start working.

G) I walked around barely yesterday.
Are you working barely today?
Carry it carefully so you won't break it.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

H) Don't do it carelessly.
You are always working too carelessly.
I will just arrange it carelessly for now.

I) I did not sleep good last night.
I heard an owl last night.
Did you go out too last night?

J) My cup in no where to be seen. Someone must have taken it.
My dog has dissappeared. He must have ran away.
Everyone is gone, no one to be heard from.

Writing Practice:

- on th right
- for no reason or purpose
- at the same time
- one by one
- on the left
- more, quite
- carelessly

Exercise H: **Mini-Dialogues**

Read and Understand:

A) Hello my friend. How are you doing?
I am well right now. How about you?
I am also well. Is this one of your friends.
Yes, he/she is from Europe.
Oh yeah! Did he/she come to visit you? when did he/she arrive?
He/she arrived last night close to midnight.
How long will he/she be here?
I don't know. I haven't asked him/her yet.

B) Hello my brother. How are you today?
I am not really feeling too well today.
Oh yeah! Where are you sick?
My leg. I went across the road this morning. I barely could walk.
Are you feeling pain?
No, not too much right now. I can barely sit around.
I hope you will be getting better real soon.
Thank you. I hope so.

C) When will you go hunting again?
Much later after the ice breaks up, I will hunt.
Will you be paddling away?

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

It is possible, I don't exactly know for sure yet.
Which direction will you be going?
I will be going the north direction if it isn't too cold.
I could at least go with you if I am not too lazy.
Okay, if you want to come, you can come.

D) Hello my friend, I am calling you for no reason. (of importance)
Oh yeah! How are you?
I am fine, how about you?
As for myslelf, I am just fine too right now.
I am thinking about going hunting tomorrow. Do you want to come with me?
Okay, I will go with you. When will you leave tomorrow?
Anytime in the morning.
Where do you want to go exactly?
Anywhere. I don't exactly know.

Exercise I: **Creative Writing**

Read and Understand:

A) When is your friend arriving at the airport?
I don't know, I don't know yet. It is snowing right now.
It is going to snow even more and maybe at the same time it will start to rain I hear.
Oh yeah! So it is going to be miserable weather.
Perhaps the weather is like that all over.
We will probably walk around under the snow when it stops snowing.
I hope it won't snow too much.
I hope not. We could probably pray harder anyway that it won't snow too much.
As long as the road don't get buried with snow.
Yes, at least for some.
I guess we'll just stay here to wait for it to stop snowing.
I guess that is all we can do. We can't go anywhere anyways.
What will we do while we wait?
I don't know. We should do something anyhow. (purposely)

Exercise J: **Final Review Lesson 4**

Particles:

Ojibwe Translation:

1. kihcinihkiik
2. kwanta
3. pehkihsh
4. pehpeshik
5. namacinihkiik
6. nawac

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

7. siitawaac
8. tepinaahk
9. tipihkonk
10. wenipan
11. aanti nehke
12. aanti piko
13. enikohk
14. eniwehk
15. capashiihsh
16. ciikic
17. inehke
18. kayaash
19. kaye piko
20. misiwe
21. aanta
22. awahshime
23. anihshaa
24. anaamipiink
25. anaamaakonak
26. ahpii piko
27. akaawaac
28. akaamihkana
29. akaami-kihcikam
30. akaamahkiink

Lesson 5

Exercise A: **Review**

Read and Understand:

1. For Example:

Certain	**Uncertain**
Kohtaaci	Kohtaacitok Kohtaacitok Kohtaacitok

Certain	**Uncertain**
1 I am scared.	I must be scared.
2 You're scared.	You must be scared.
3 He/she is scared.	He/she must be scared.
13 We're scared. (exc)	We must be scared. (exc)
21 We're scared. (inc)	We must be scared. (inc)
22 You're (pl) scared.	You (pl) must be scared.
33 They're scared.	They must be scared.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

What is your younger sibling doing?
They are playing outside.

What is your grandfather doing?
He is probably working down the shore.

Is your dog throwing up?
Yes, he is probably sick.

Are you tired? Yes, I must be sick.

Are you lazy? Yes, I must be tired.

Are you stealing? Yes, I must be starving, perhaps that is why I am stealing.

2. **Mini-dialogues**

Where is your father?
He must have left early this morning.
Where could he have gone?
Pickeral Lake.
Do you think he is arriving by now?
I don't know. Maybe he is still driving.
When will he be returning?
Maybe tomorrow.
Will someone be coming with him?
Probably not. Maybe he will be coming home alone.

Exercise B: **Review Preterits**

Review and Understand:

Paradigm

Neutral	**Preterit**
1 I am lazy.	I was lazy, but no longer am.
2 You are lazy.	You were lazy, but no longer are.
3 He/she is lazy.	He/she was lazy, but no longer is.
13 We are lazy. (exc)	We were lazy, but we are no longer.
21 We are lazy. (inc)	We were lazy, but we are no longer.
22 You (pl) are lazy.	You were lazy, but no longer are.
33 They are lazy.	They were lazy, but they no longer are.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Writing Practice:

a. Nikii-ishaa weti tahso-pipoon.
b. Nikii-ishaanaapan ahko weti tahso-pipoon.
c. Kii-akaahsheshi niiwi-ahki otaanaank.
d. Kii-akaahsheshiipan niiwi-ahki otaanaank.
e. Nikii-ataawe pimihsewin.
f. Nikii-ataawenaapan pimihsewin.

Exercise C: **Review Pejoratives**

1. **Animate Nouns**

useless spoon
worn-out sock
good-for-nothing dog
spoiled flour

Inanimate Nouns

broken down airplane
broken down plate
worn-out book
broken down gun

2. **Animate Nouns**

worn-out kettle
useless caribou
broken down stove
spoiled whitefish

Inanimate Nouns

poorly made pencil
useless table
good-for-nothing branch

3. **Animate Nouns**

useless man
poorly made bannock
spoiled fish
poorly made porridge

Inanimate Nouns

useless heart
good-for-nothing lard
useless pepper
spoiled milk

4.

a)	b)	c)
loon	mosquito	bicycle
carrot	owl	pickeral
sturgeon	beadwork	snake
trout	jackfish (pike)	telephone
bag/purse	air strip	camera
money	table	flour
wallet	whitefish	television
butterfly	comb	scissors

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise D: **Review Dimunitives**

1. **Animate Nouns** **Inanimate Nouns**

little bannock	little lard
little boy, boy	little pepper
little partridge	little heart

2. **Animate Nouns** **Inanimate Nouns**

little spoon	little fork
little flour	little canoe
little clock	little cradle board

3. **Animate Nouns** **Inanimate Nouns**

little rabbit	little pencil
little carrot	little table
little elk	little island

4.

a)	b)	c)
loon	mosquito	bicycle
beaver	owl	pickeral
sturgeon	beadwork	snake
trout	feather	telephone
bag	landing strip	camera
money	table	flour
wallet	whitefish	television
butterfly	comb	scissors

Exercise E: **Working the Language**

Read and Understand:

1. A) He/she is probably lazy that is why he/she is not working.
No one here, he is probably gone.
It is silent, he must be still sleeping.

B) He/she could have arrived by now.
Is it time for us to eat already?
It has been a long time since I went home last.

C) My broken-down house burnt down last night.
Did your worn-out canoe float away?
He is cleaning up his useless gun.

D) Put the plate on top of the broken-down table.
Your worn-out kettle is boiled dry.
The useless snake is eating the frog.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

E) The useless partridge is looking for his morning meal.
The nasty butterfly is flying around.
The good-for-nothing bear is fighting the little wolf.

F) The little bird is singing in the morning.
The little airplane crashed in the bush.
Bring the little spoon!

G) Bring the little pencil.
Do you like the taste of the little carrot?
The little whitefish is swimming around under water.

Exercise F: **Mini-Dialogues**

Read and Understand:

1. A) Did your father arrive yet?
No, he is still gone.
Shouldn't he have arrived by now?
Yes, perhaps maybe he got busy.
I sure hope nothing bad happened.
I will come and tell you when he arrives.
Okay, for sure I will call you when he arrives.

B) When is your friend going home?
He wanted to go home today,
but it's too miserable (weather).
What is he doing now?
I don't know. He is probably still sleeping.
Tell him to call me when he gets up.
Did you already finish fixing up your little canoe?
Yes, I have already finished fixing it up.
What about your little out-board motor? Will you be fixing it up too?
No, not yet. I can't do it by myself.
Do you want me to help you?
Only if you are not busy.
I am not busy right now.
I would be very happy to help you.
That's good. Thank you.

C) Do you think you see something, little girl?
Yes, I think I see a bear cub over there.
Do you want to go and look?
No, I am scared.
I will go with you. Let us go and look.
We will take a gun along.
You go alone. I will wait for you here.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; TRANSLATION SECTION

Exercise G: **Creative Writing**

Read and Understand:

1. It is probably almost time for us to eat.
Has everyone arrived yet?
No, Paul has not arrived yet.
Shouldn't he have arrived by now?
Yes, he should have arrived by now.
What sort of car did he take along?
He took the little car along.
Perhaps, maybe it broke down.
What shall we do then?
Maybe we should wait for him a little while yet.
I sure hope he didn't drive off the road.
It's not possible. We will wait for him a little while yet.
If he does not arrive in half an hour, I will drive (go) to look for him. We will just sit right here to wait for him. Don't anyone get worried.

Half hour later

Paul arrived by vehicle. He did not drive off the road. He hit a little moose.
That is why he arrived late.

Exercise H: **Suffixes**

Read and Write:

1.

work	drink	be skinny	run
going home	play	walk	getting up (from bed)
scared	write	go to the shore	tell legends
sleep	hunt	buy s.t.	leave
getting up (from bed)	fetch water	heal s.o.	trap

3.

campfire	skunk	bee
head	smoked fish	woman
community	carrot	partridge
air strip	frying pan	mosquito
flour	table	butterfly
scissors	store	pepper
back	thread	house fly
shoe	one dollar	goose

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

4.	sturgeon	scissors	rabbit
	bee	knife	loon
	pepper	book	carrot
	house fly	bag/purse	kettle
	heart	birch bark	store
	man	birch bark basket	thread
	fish	duck	smoked fish
	mosquito	egg	shuttle for net making

Lesson 6

Lesson 2 Review Test: Transitive Verbs

	Severn Ojibwe	Verb Type
1.	nipahkihtehwaa	VTA
2.	kikanawaapantaan	VTI
3.	okaatoon	VTI
4.	nipahkihtehaan	VTI
5.	naasihkaw	VTA
6.	otaayamiihtaan	VTI
7.	nitakwanahwaa	VTA
8.	kikihkenimaa	VTA
9.	kimihkaan	VTI
10.	ninaasihkaan	VTI
11.	kikanawaapamaa	VTA
12.	otaayamiihtamawan	VTA
13.	nikanoonaa	VTA
14.	kitanaamentaan	VTI
15.	okaanaan	VTA
16.	nitakwanahaan	VTI
17.	kikikentaan	VTI
18.	oshikatentaan	VTI
19.	nīpaahpihaa	VTA
20.	kitanaamenimaa	VTA
21.	oshikatenimaan	VTA
22.	nikanootaan	VTI
23.	kipaahpihtoon	VTI
24.	omihkaawaan	VTA

Lesson 4 Review Test: Particles

English Translation

1. 1. in Europe, abroad
   2. across the ocean
   3. across the road, trail

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

4. hardly, scarcely
5. any time
6. under the snow
7. under water
8. by chance, at the last minute
9. even more
10. some, few
11. which direction
12. just anywhere
13. low, lower level
14. by, close to, near to
15. with great effort, harder
16. at least, anyhow, okay, but
17. in that direction
18. perhaps
19. all over, whole, everywhere
20. on the right
21. for no reason or purpose
22. originally, long ago
23. at the same time, while
24. one by one
25. on the left
26. more, quite (-er)
27. barely, hardly, poorly
28. careless
29. last night
30. gone, disappear

Continuation of Particles

2.
1. kihcinihkiik
2. tepinaahk
3. tipihkonk
4. nawaac
5. inehke
6. kwanta
7. wenipan
8. siitawaac
9. namacinihkiik
10. eniwehk
11. misiwe
12. pehpeshik
13. akaawaac
14. pehkihsh
15. anaamaakonak
16. eniwehk
17. awahshime

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

18. akaamihkana
19. anaamipiik
20. aanti piko
21. kayaash
22. ahpii piko
23. akaami-kihcikam
24. enikonk
25. akaamahkiink
26. aanta
27. kaye piko
28. aanti nehke
29. ciikic
30. capashihsh

Lesson 5

Review Test: Dubitatives

1. anohkiitok
2. maacaatok
3. kohtaacitok
4. kohtaacitok
5. nipaatok
6. wanishkaatok
7. minihkwetok
8. mitawetok
9. masinahiketok
10. nantawenciketok
11. paawanitok
12. pimohsetok
13. ataawetok
14. natawihiwetok
15. naasipiitok
16. aahkositok

2. Preterit

1. Nikii-ishaaminaapan tahso-pipoon.
2. Nikii-maniwaahkaahikanenaapan.
3. Kii-wiikitoopan weshkac.
4. Kii-anohkiipan awahsinaako.
5. Nikii-ishaaminaapan mihshiiniwaa.
6. Kii-ataawepan onaako.
7. Nikii-ishitaanapan weshkac.
8. Kii-ishi-nanaantawencikepan mitaahso ahki otaanaak.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Pejorative

3.

useless spoon	useless frying pan	useless mosquito
useless plate	useless branch	useless butterfly
useless gun	useless ear	useless lard
useless airplane	useless kettle	useless bannock

Diminutive

4.

little partridge	little plate	little bear
little lard	little clock	little carrot
little bannock	little canoe	little tea pot
little pepper	little airplane	little loon

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; ENGLISH TRANSLATIONS

Let's Look Back At What You Have Learned:

Lessons 1 - 5

Animate Nouns:

my brother-in-law	your grandfather	your dog
sock	feather	eagle
bee	head	smoked fish
thread	shuttle	Paul

Inanimate Nouns:

island	airplane	coffin
birchbark canoe	suitcase, wooden box	cradle board
fight, violence	fireplace, campfire	war, violence
village, settlement	life	back
sickness, illness		

Animate Intransitive Verbs:

clean things	be ready, available things	boil dry
wipe things for cleaning	go along by sled or sleigh	fly about
sweep the floor	carry pack along on back	fight
vacuum cleaning	carry things along on one's shoulder	absent, gone
tidy things	carry things	busy (by accident)
washing clothes	strong	it goes wrong for him
shovelling snow	weak	let's look
snow-plow	announce to people	busy (by doing things)
go to bed	do funny thiings	arrive by vehicle
be occupied certain location	do mean things to s.o.	drive off
look cute, look funny	swim	be counted, belong
live there, reside there	hunting ducks	paddle along, paddle by
speak, talk	check up on things	be a lot of, be many
fish with a net	dive	worry, be concerned
move one's residence	start paddling, paddle off	there is enough of
turns	run along, run by	go on shopping trip
burn s.o. up	feel extreme pain	drown
go out!	walk about, take a walk	feeling well, feeling better
let's work	be afraid, get scared	work well, work all the time
sits around, stays around	be lazy	cover with snow s.t. animate
wait	trap	vomit
'ire, be tired		be skinny, be starving
steal		

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; ENGLISH TRANSLATIONS

Inanimate Intransitive Verbs:

hang s.t. inanimate	be narrow river	fall down
big waves	be deep water	be calm water
be shallow water	float, be in the water	be big (as a lake)
drift along in the current	be small (as a lake)	drift álong on the waves
be wide river	freeze up	sounds like it
flood, there is high water	last evening	be there, exist
be taken	be heard certain location	being tried
be lit, be on fire	there is enough of	warm weather
cover with snow s.t. inanimate	break up	happen so, be such weather
fly along, fly by	flow there, flow so	be dawn
every summer	every spring	be born
silence	it goes here and there	the time has come
every year	every winter	drift away by waves
be taken away	burn up, be burned up	go around, be an hour
be counted, belong	break down, get broken	

Transitive Animate Verbs:

laugh at s.o.	hit s.o.	know s.o.
look at s.o.	hide s.o.	find s.o.
call, speak s.o.	cover s.o.	get s.o., fetch s.o.
suspect, blame s.o.	be lonesome for s.o.	speak for s.o.
wake s.o. up	catch s.o., capture s.o.	think s.o. to be there
gave it to me	hear s.o.	to go look for s.o.
hit s.o. accidentally	unload s.o., take s.o. off the water	kill s.o.

Transitive Inanimate Verbs:

laugh at s.t.	hit s.t.	know s.t., find s.t. out
look at s.t.	hide s.t.	find s.t.
call for, speak for	cover s.t.	get s.t., fetch s.t.
suspect, blame s.t.	be lonesome	speak for s.t.
have s.t.	examine s.t. by looking	try s.t. out
think certain way	catch s.t., capture s.t.	pull s.t.
return to s.t.	take s.t.	turn s.t., steer s.t.
carry s.t.	know	break s.t., smash s.t.
clean s.t.	set s.t. in a certain way	fix s.t., repair s.t.
unload s.t., take s.t. off the water		

Preverbs:

would, could, should	seek	visible in distance	about, around, no definite goal

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE - UNIT 2; ENGLISH TRANSLATIONS

Pronouns:

this	them	that one	those

Particles:

however, nevertheless	carelessly	in direction
last night	in Europe, abroad	gone, disappear
across the ocean	emphatic	cross the road/street
mix	hardly, scarcely	emphatic
anytime	even though, anyhow, anyway	under the snow
purposely, jokingly	underwater	at least
by chance, at the last minute	probably, possibly	to greater extent, more and more
last, behind, previously	some	last
whereabouts, which direction	what kind of sort	anywhere
for a while	with more effort, harder	at least, anyhow, okay but
low, lower level	close to, near to	originally, long ago, former
likely, to be expected	all over, whole, everywhere	on the right
for no reason or purpose	at the same time	one by one
on the left	more, quite (-er)	barely, hardly, poorly

Expressions:

Are you laughing at him/her?	Are you hiding your gun?
Is he/she laughing at him/her?	Is he/she hiding his/her gun?

Note: More expressions and phrases on page 401.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE GLOSSARY

Guide to the Glossaries

This section is divided into two parts: Anihshininiimowin-English Glossary, and English-Anihshininiimowin Glossary. The glossaries contains listings of basic words (word stems) and some prefixes. In order to make the glossaries more useful we will explain the way that entries are organized and the information they contain. We will treat the Anihshininiimowin-English and English-Anihshininiimowin sections separately, because they are organized differently.

The glossaries are intended only to be a listing of words used in the books in this series. Because there are often local variations in pronunciation and vocabulary, students are encouraged to make notes in the glossaries about aspects of the usage and vocabulary of their instructor which are not already indicated there. As well, the glossaries do not present detailed information about all the possible different forms which many Anihshininiimowin words may take, especially nouns and verbs.

In both sections the following alphabetic order is used for Anihshininiimowin words, in which long vowels are sorted after the corresponding short vowels:

a aa c e h i ii k m n o oo p s sh t w y

ANIHSHININIIMOWIN-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

In the Anihshininiimowin-English section, each entry contains at least an Anihshininiimowin HEAD WORD, an abbreviation for the WORD CLASS code, and an English translation, as in the following entry. Notice that the Anihshininiimowin head word is in **bold** print, the word class code is in *italic* type, and the English translation is in plain type.

kiiwe *vai* go home, return

Each Anihshininiimowin word is assigned a word class code. We will review examples of each type, and will explain the types of information which may be found in entries for different word classes.

Nouns

There are two main types of nouns, ANIMATE and INANIMATE. Their word class codes are as follows.

na animate noun

ni inanimate noun

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Typical entries for each are given here.

ahcaap -iik *na* bow
minihkwaakan -an *ni* cup

The head word for a noun is usually the SINGULAR form of the noun. PREFIXES and SUFFIXES may be added to this form to give extra meaning and grammatical information. The head word for a noun is followed by the form of the PLURAL suffix that the noun takes. This suffix can be added directly to the head word (minus the hyphen) to make the plural form. So for example, the entry for the noun **ahcaap** 'bow' given above contains the plural suffix **-iik.** They can be combined to give the plural form **ahcaapiik** 'bows.'

There are also two other types of nouns, which are called DEPENDENT nouns. Their word class codes are as follows.

nad	dependent animate noun
nid	dependent inanimate noun

Dependent nouns are nouns that must always occur with a POSSESSIVE prefix to indicate who the noun belongs to (the 'possessor'). Dependent nouns are nearly always words for body parts or kinship terms. In the glossary dependent nouns for kinship terms are always given in the form in which the basic word is preceded by the first-person prefix **ni** or **n.**

nimihsens -ak *nad* my older sister (E). Stem: /-mihses-/. Also: **nimihsens** (W)

The head word is the prefixed form that means 'my older sister.' You will see that after the English translation appears the notation 'Stem: /-mihses/.' The form that is given in angled brackets is called the STEM. It is the basic form of the word without any prefixes or suffixes. This is the form of the word that is used when you wish to make other forms of this word by adding prefixes or suffixes. For many glossary entries the head word and the stem are identical, so the entry does not need to give any special indication of what the stem is. As with dependent nouns, we will see that other types of words may contain information indicating that the stem is slightly different from the head word.

Entries for dependent nouns for body parts are slightly different from those for kinship terms. They are given in the form that contains the prefix **mi** or **m,** which means 'someone's.' Here is an example.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

misit **-an** *nid* foot. Stem: /-sit-/

Note that the entry is indicates what the stem of the word is.
There are also a small number of entries that have the following class code:

na-pt animate noun with participle

Entries of this type are mostly only found with names for months of the year.

kaa-tahkwekisoc piihsim *na-pt* shorter month, February

This is a noun which consists of two parts. The first part is a participle form of an Animate Intransitive verb (in this case **kaa-tahkwekisoc** 'the one which is shorter') and the second part is an animate noun (in this case **piihsim** 'moon, month')

Verbs

Apart from nouns, there are several different types of VERBS. We will first discuss the two main types of INTRANSITIVE verbs. ANIMATE INTRANSITIVE verbs are those that have an animate grammatical SUBJECT but no OBJECT. Their word class codes are as follows.

vai animate intransitive verb
vai2 animate intransitive verb (-am/aa)
vai+o animate intransitive verb + object

The head word for any animate intransitive verb is usually the THIRD-PERSON singular form, that is, the one that means 'he/she is...' Such forms have no prefix or suffix on the head entry.
Here is a typical entry for an animate intransitive *(vai)* verb.

anohkii *vai* work

The class of animate intransitive verbs referred to as *vai2* are very similar to animate intransitive verbs of the *vai* class. Here is the entry for a typical example.

saakaham *vai2* go out, exit

The entry for a verb of the *vai2* class will always have a head word that ends in **am**. *Vai2* verbs are

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

slightly different than other animate intransitive verbs because in any form that involves a FIRST- or SECOND-PERSON the end of the verb stem changes. For example the first-person form for the *vai2* verb stem just mentioned is **nisaakahaan** 'I go out' (first person).

There is one other type of animate intransitive verb, refererred to as *vai+o*. Verbs of this class resemble ordinary verbs of the *vai* class, but frequently occur with a grammatical object. There are not many verbs of this type, and only a few are used in the books in this series. Here is an entry for a verb of this type.

ataawe *vai+o* buy s.t.

INANIMATE INTRANSITIVE verbs are those that have a grammatically inanimate subject but no grammatical object. There is only one word class code for inanimate intransitive verbs.

vii inanimate intransitive verb

The head word for any inanimate intransitive verb is usually the third-person singular form, that is, the one that means 'it is...' Such forms have no prefix or suffix on the head entry.

Here is a typical entry for an inanimate intransitive *(vii)* verb.

ahte *vii* be in a certain place

Some animate intransitive verbs, particularly verbal forms of numbers, always occur in a plural form. In the glossary the head entry is the third-person plural form (the form that means 'they...'). As a result the head entry consists of the basic verb stem and the third-person plural suffix, usually **wak**. The stem is identified between diagonal slashes. Here is an example.

nihsiwak *vai* be three. Stem: /nihsi-/

Similarly, some inanimate intransitive verbs, particularly verbal forms of numbers, always occur in a plural form. In the glossary the head entry is the third-person plural form (the form that means 'they (inanimate)...'). As a result the head entry consists of the basic verb stem and the third-person plural suffix, usually **oon**. The stem is identified between diagonal slashes. Here is an example.

nihsinoon *vii* be three. Stem: /nihsin-/

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Transitive verbs are those that have a subject and an object. There are several different types of transitive verbs. Their word class codes are as follows.

vta	transitive animate verb
vti	transitive inanimate verb (-am/-aa)
vti2	transitive inanimate verb (-oo)
vti3	transitive inanimate verb (-i)

All transitive verbs have a grammatically animate subject. TRANSITIVE ANIMATE verbs are those that have a grammatically animate object.

For transitive animate verbs, the head word of the glossary entry is always the form of the verb that means you are telling someone to do the action to someone, or to some entity that is grammatically animate (this is called the IMPERATIVE form).

The entries for some transitive animate verbs contain extra information about what the stem is, as in the following example.

amo *vta* eat s.o. Stem: /amw-/

The head word is still the imperative form, but you will notice there is extra information about the stem of the word. To make other forms of the word, prefixes and suffixes are added to the form between the diagonal slashes, rather than to the head word.

The head word for some transitive animate verbs ends in **sh**. When a transitive animate verb ends in **sh**, the stem is not identical to the head word.

miish *vta* give (s.t.) to s.o. Stem: /miiN-/

Notice that the stem of this word is given in the entry as /miiN-/. The capital N means that in certain forms the final consonant of the stem is an **n** sound, as in **nimiinaa** 'I give it to him/her' (with prefix **ni** and suffix **aa**). But in others the final consonant of the stem is **sh**, as in command forms such as the head entry.

If the entry for a transitive animate verb does not contain information about the stem, then other forms of the verb may be made by adding prefixes and suffixes directly to the head word of the entry. Here is a typical example.

kanawaapam *vta* look at s.o.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Notice also that the entries for transitive animate verbs given above all contain the abbreviation 's.o.' This is short for 'someone.' We know that the grammatical object of a transitive animate verb must be animate, and so it may refer to a human being, an animal, or anything else that is classified as animate in Anihshininiimowin. For convenience, we use the abbreviation 's.o.' to refer to any of these possibilities.

Here is a typical entry for a TRANSITIVE INANIMATE verb which has the word class code *vti*.

caakisan *vti* burn s.t.

Verbs of this class nearly always have a head word that ends in **an.** To make other forms of verbs of this class it is necessary to change the final **an** to **aan** for many of the forms that will be used in the books of these series. For example, 'I am burning it up' is **nicaakisaan,** with the first person prefix **ni.** More rarely the **an** is changed to **am** when other endings are added: '(that) I burn it up' would be **caakisamaan,** with the suffix **aan.**

Here is a typical entry for a transitive inanimate verb which has the word class code *vti2*.

ahtoon *vti2* put s.t. in a certain place. Stem: /ahtoo-/

Verbs of the *vti2* class contain a long vowel **oo** at the end of the basic stem. The final **n** which follows the long **oo** in the head word is a suffix found in the command forms. You will find that nearly all of the different forms of words of the *vti2* class which you will learn also have a suffix of the form **n.**

There are very few verbs of the *vti3* class. Here is an example.

miicin *vti3* eat s.t. Stem: /miici-/

The **n** at the end of the head word is an imperative suffix. As with the *vti2* verbs, most of the forms of *vti3* forms that you will learn also have a suffix of the form **n.**

The entries for transitive inanimate verbs given above all contain the abbreviation 's.t.' This is short for 'something.' We know that the grammatical object of a transitive inanimate verb must be inanimate, and so it may refer to anything that is classified as inanimate in Anihshininiimowin. For convenience, we use the abbreviation 's.t.' in glossary entries.

Particles

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

There are several other word classes in Anihshininiimowin. There are two different types of PARTICLES. This term is used to refer to words that do not take any prefixes or suffixes to indicate information such as person or number. Here are the word class codes for the two types of particles.

pc	uninflected particle
nu	number particle

The term 'uninflected particle' emphasizes that these particles never take suffixes for what are sometimes called 'inflectional' information, such as person and number. Here is a typical entry for an uninflected particle.

mitoni *pc* really, entirely so, completely. Also: **tetako**

The number particles are forms of numbers which never take any prefixes or suffixes. Here is a typical entry for a number particle.

peshik *nu* one

In Anihshininiimowin, numbers may take many different forms. This means that not all of them are number particles. Some may be verbs, prenouns, or preverbs.

Pronouns

The word class code for PRONOUNS is as follows.

pr	pronoun

Here is an example of a entry for a pronoun.

niin *pr* I, me. [first person singular personal pronoun]

Prenouns and Preverbs

All of the word classes we have discussed are for items that can be words on their own. However there are certain word classes whose members never occur on their own, but must always be followed by another word.

pren	prenoun
prev	preverb
pre	preverb and prenoun

A PRENOUN must always be directly followed by a noun. The head word of the entry for a prenoun is

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

always followed by a hyphen, to indicate that the prenoun must be followed by a noun. Because prenouns may be followed by many different nouns, the entry for a prenoun does not attempt to list any of the possible combinations (examples will be presented in several different lessons in the books in this series). A typical example of an entry for a prenoun follows.

shiipaa- *pren* beneath

A PREVERB must always be directly followed by a verb. The head word of the entry for a preverb is always followed by a hyphen, to indicate that the preverb must be followed by a verb. Because preverbs may be followed by many different verbs, the entry for a preverb does not attempt to list any of the possible combinations (examples will be presented in several different lessons in the books in this series). A typical example of an entry for a preverb follows.

saakici- *prev* out

Some elements may be used both as a preverb and as a prenoun. The word class code *pre* is assigned to these. A typical entry is as follows.

kihci- *pre* big, great, very

Other Information in Glossary Entries

Some glossary entries contain information about sub-dialects of Anihshininiimowin. In the section 'Writing Anihshininiimowin (Severn Ojibwe)' we discussed how in the 'Western' Anihshininiimowin communities, such as Bearskin Lake and Muskrat Dam, the sound **n** is not pronounced before another consonant. Information about pronunciation variation is recorded in glossary entries, such as the following one.

kwayaancii *vai* get ready, prepare (E). Also: **kwayaacii** (W)

This notation '(E)' indicates that the head word reflects the 'Eastern' pronunciation, which includes the sound **n** before the **c**. As an alternative form, the entry also includes the 'Western' form of the word, in which the **n** before **c** is dropped (the 'W' indicates that it is the 'Western' form):kwayaacii (W).

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Some entries also include information about alternative pronunciations of the word, as in the following entry.

aha *pr* that. Also: **ahawe**. [animate singular demonstrative]

Note that this entry also contains further information about the head word in square brackets.
A few entries for preverbs contain an abbreviation 'IC' in their translation.

waa- *prev* will, want to. IC< wii-

This abbreviation refers to INITIAL CHANGE, which is a change in the pronunciation of the vowel in the first syllable of certain forms of verbs. The notation 'IC<wii-' means that **waa-** is the form of the preverb **wii-** which has undergone Initial Change. **Wii-** also has an entry. The differences in the use of **waa-** and **wii-** are explained in the lessons.
Some entries may also tell you what the form with Initial Change is.

ishi- *prev* to. Also: in a certain place, in a certain way. Also: **shi-**. IC> **eshi-**

The notation 'IC> **eshi-**' means that the form of the preverb **ishi-** with Initial Change is **eshi-**.
Now look at the following entry, which also makes use of the right-pointing arrowhead.

ishinihkaaso *vai* be called or named a certain way. IC> **eshinihkaaso=**

The entry for this verb tells us what the form of the basic verb is when it has Initial Change. However there is an equal sign (=) at the end of the form with Initial Change. This is to indicate that appropriate endings need to be added. For example if you were asking 'someone what their name was you would need to add the suffix **yan** 'second-person Conjunct Order': **Aan eshinihkaasoyan?** 'What is your name?'
You will also find that other entries contain an arrowhead '>' or '<.'

amohsha *pc* it is indeed. < **amii ohsha**

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

The left-pointing arrowhead indicates that the head word is based on a sequence of words which are contracted, much like English 'don't' is a contraction of 'do not.'

Some entries may also contain further information about related words, aş in the following.

naaniimi *vai* keep on dancing. Reduplication of: **niimi**

The notation 'Reduplication of: **niimi**' indicates that the head word is related to the separate word **niimi** 'he/she dances' by a pattern of word formation called REDUPLICATION. In this case reduplication involves copying the first consonant of the shorter word at the beginning of the word and adding the vowel **aa,** as if the basic word **niimi** is modified and becomes **n-aa-niimi** (the hyphens are only used for illustrative purposes and are not normally written). The meaning of the reduplicated word is related to the shorter word, but slightly different. Hence **niimi** means 'he/she dances,' but **naaniimi** means 'he/she keeps on dancing.'

ENGLISH-ANIHSHININIIMOWIN GLOSSARY

In the English-Anihshininiimowin section the head word is an English word or phrase. Each head word may include reference to one or more Anihshininiimowin words. The following entry contains information about one Anihshininiimowin term.

AIRPLANE

pimihsewin -an *ni* airplane, plane

The Anihshininiimowin entry given under this head word is identical to the entry given in the Anihshininiimowin-English section.

Some headwords may include entries for more than one Anihshininiimowin term.

AND

ekwa *pc* and, and so, then, and then, wait! please

kaye *pc* and, also, too, as for.

miina *pc* and, again

tahsh *pc* and, but

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Word Class Codes

na	animate noun
ni	inanimate noun
nad	dependent animate noun
nid	dependent inanimate noun
na-pt	animate noun with particle
vai	animate intransitive verb
vai2	animate intransitive verb (-am/-aa)
vai+o	animate intransitive verb + object
vii	inanimate intransitive verb
vta	transitive animate verb
vti	transitive inanimate verb (-am/-aa)
vti2	transitive inanimate verb (-oo)
vti3	transitive inanimate verb (-i)
pc	uninflected particle
nu	number particle
pren	prenoun
prev	preverb
pre	prenoun and preverb
pr	pronoun

Other Abbreviations

s.o.	someone, something animate
s.t.	something

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

aha *pr* that. Also: **ahawe**. [animate singular demonstrative]

ahawe *pr* that. Also: **aha**. [animate singular demonstrative]

ahaweniwan *pr* that, those. [animate obviative demonstrative]

ahcaap -iik *na* bow

ahcanihsh -ak *na* ring

ahcikanaahtik -oon *ni* table. Also: **ahcikan**

ahkihk -wak -ook *na* pail, kettle

ahko *pc* usually, formerly, used to, keep on

ahko- *prev* as far as, as long as, a certain length

ahpihkwehshimon -an *ni* pillow

ahpii *pc* when, at that time

ahpii ahpin *pc* finally when

ahpii piko *pc* anytime

ahpiihci- *prev* to a certain extent. Also: **apiihci-**

ahpiihcikini *vai* be a certain size. Also: **apiihcikini**

ahpin *pc* when, since, then, for a reason, gone, subsequently

ahsap -iik *na* net

ahsapaahtik -ook *na* shuttle (with twine) for net making

ahshanke *vai* give food to people (E). Also: **ahshake** (W)

ahshawaapam *vta* lie in wait for s.o.

ahshawaapantan *vti* lie in wait for s.t., look out for s.t. (E). Also: **ahshawaapantan** (W)

ahshawaapi *vai* be on the lookout, lie in wait

ahsi *vta* put s.o. in a certain place. Stem: /ahs-/

ahsin -iik *na* stone, rock

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ahsiniiwan *vii* be rocky

ahtaahsonikamik -oon *ni* warehouse

ahtay -ak *na* pelt, fur for trade

ahte *vii* be in a certain place

ahtoon *vti2* put s.t. in a certain place. Stem: /ahtoo-/

akaahshenshi *vai* be small (E). Also: **akaahsheshi** (W)

akaahsihtikweyaa *vii* be a narrow river

akaahsikamaa *vii* be a small lake

akaamahkiink *pc* in Europe, abroad (E). Also: **akaamahkiik** (W)

akaami- *pren* across, right across

akaami-kihcikam *pc* across the ocean

akaamihkana *pc* across the road or trail

akaamink *pc* across the lake or river (E). Also: **akaamik** (W)

akaawaac *pc* hardly, scarcely

akohke *vai* stick on, adhere

akoncin *vai* float, soak (E). Also: **akocin** (W)

akontin *vii* float, soak (E). Also: **akotin** (W)

akoocin *vai* hang, be in sky (as sun, moon, and stars)

akoote *vii* hang

akwaciink *pc* outside (E). Also: **akwaciik** (W)

akwanahan *vti* cover s.t.

akwanaho *vta* cover s.o. Stem: /akwanahw-/

amacihi *vta* wake s.o. up. Stem: /amacih-/

ami ahko *pc* used to, usually

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

amihi *pc* so, it is. < **amii ihiwe**. Also: **amihiwe**

amihi *pc* that's

amihimaa *pc* that is where, there in a certain location

amihiwe *pc* so is that

amihk -wak *na* beaver

amihko-wanihikan -an *ni* trap for beaver. Also: **amihko-wanihiikan**

amihko-wiiyaahs *ni* beaver meat

amihkohkonim -iin *ni* beaver dam

amii *pc* so, it is

amiicikahi *pc* that is so

amiinahi *pc* is that so, is that right

amo *vta* eat s.o. Stem: /amw-/

amohsha *pc* it is indeed. < **amii ohsha**

amohshahi *pc* it is indeed so. < **amii ohsha ihiwe**. Also: **amohshahii**

anaamaakonak *pc* under the snow

anaamenim *vta* suspect s.o., blame s.o.

anaamentan *vti* suspect s.t., blame s.t.

anaamink *pc* under something (E). Also: **anaamik** (W)

anaamipiik *pc* underwater

ani- *prev* away from, in progress toward, gradual onset, from that time

ani-naakosi *vai* be seen going (from the speaker)

anihshaa *pc* by chance, at the last minute

anihshinaape -k *na* Indian, person

anihshinini -wak *na* Indian, person

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

anihshininiimo *vai* speak the Native language

anihshininiiwihkwe *na* Native woman, Indian woman. Also: **anihshininiihkwe**

aniipiiwaa *vii* be green

aniipiiwisi *vai* be green

animohsh -ak *na* dog

anohkii *vai* work

anohkiinaakan -ak *na* worker

anohkiiwi-kiishikaa *vii* be Monday

anohkiiwin -an *ni* job, employment, work

anoominaapoo *na* porridge

anoonaakohshin *vii* be late in the afternoon

anwaahtin *vii* be calm (not windy)

anwaahtinikamin *vii* be a nice and calm body of water

anwepiiwikamik -oon *ni* restroom/washroom

api *vai* be in a certain place, sit, be at home

apwi -yak -wak *na* paddle, oar. Also: **apoy -yak**

ashepite *vii* go backwards

ashikan -ak *na* sock

ashkipwaaw -an *ni* potato

ashtotin -an *ni* hat; cap

ataawe *vai+o* buy s.t.

ataawikamik -oon *ni* store, trading post

atihk -wak *na* caribou (locally called deer)

atihkamek -wak *na* whitefish

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

atihko-wiiyaahs *ni* caribou meat

atihtemini-piihsim *na* ripe berry month, August

awaashihsh -ak *na* child

awaashihshiiwi *vai* be a child

awahshime *pc* to greater extent, more and more

awahsinaako *pc* day before yesterday

awahsite *pc* beyond, back

awahsiwaapank *pc* day after tomorrow (E). Also: **awahsiwaapak** (W)

awanen -ak *pr* who. Also: **awenen**

awaso *vai* warm oneself

awiya -k *pr* person, someone, somebody, anyone, anybody. Also: **awiiya**

awiyaashiihsh -ak *na* animal. Also: **awiiyaashiihsh**

awiyaashiihshiwi *vai* be an animal. Also: **awiiyaashiihshiwi**

ayaa *vai* be, be there

ayaan *vti* have s.t.

ayaan *vti* my possession, it belongs to me

ayaaw *vta* have s.o., have permission to use s.o.

ayahaa -k *na* that being, person, or animate thing. Also: **ehaa, ahaa**

ayami *vai* speak, talk

ayamihaa *vai* pray

ayamihe-kiishikaa *vii* be Sunday

ayamihewikamik -oon *ni* church

ayamiihtamaw *vta* speak for s.o.

ayamiihtan *vti* speak for s.t.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ayapi *vai* sit around, stay around. Reduplication of: **api**

ayinaanemitana *nu* eighty

ayinaanew *nu* eight. Also: **enaanew**

ayinaanewaapihk *na* eight dollars

ayinaanewinoon *vii* be eight. Stem: /ayinaanewin-/

ayinaanewishaap *nu* eighteen

ayinaanewishaap tahswaapihk *na* eighteen dollars

ayinaanewiwak *vai* be eight. Stem: /ayinaanewi-/

ayinaapi *vai* look around. Reduplication of: **inaapi**

ayintootam *vai2* do something (E). Reduplication of: **tootam.** Also: **ayitootam** (W)

aacaan *pc* go!

aahkosi *vai* be sick

aahkosiwin -an *ni* sickness, illness

aahkwatin *vii* be frozen up, be frozen over

aahte- *pv* fade away, disappear

aahti *pc* please, why don't you, let me! Also: **maahti**

aakim -ak *na* snowshoe

aamoo -k *na* bee

aan *pc* how, in what manner, why, what. Also: **aani, aaniin**

aan tahsin *pc* how many

aana- *pv* in vain, to attempt, effort, anyway, anyhow,

aanahkonaa -k *na* bannock

aanahpii *pc* when?

aanci-taa *vai* move one's residence (E). Also: **aaci-taa** (W)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

aanciko *pc* to do anyway regardless of... (E). Also: **aaciko** (W)

aancipo *vai* be fat, be chubby (E). Also: **aacipo** (W)

aani *pc* how, in what manner, why, what. Also: **aaniin, aan**

aaniin *pc* how, in what manner, why, what. Also: **aan, aani**

aaniman -oon *vii* be difficult, be hard

aanimihse *vai/ii* have difficulties, run into problems, get complicated

aanimisi *vai* be difficult, be argumentative, be hard to get along with, be cranky

aanta *pc* some, few

aanti *pc* where

aanti nehke *pc* whereabouts, which direction

aanti piko *pc* anywhere

aapacihcikan -an *ni* tool, useful thing, equipment

aapacihtoon *vti2* use it. Stem: /aapacihtoo-/

aapatan *vii* be useful, be useable

aapatisi *vai* be useful

aapihsakahikan -an *ni* key

aapihta *pc* half

aapihtaa- *prev* half

aapihtawaapihk -ook *na* half dollar

aapihtawan *vii* be Wednesday

aapikoshiihsh -ak *na* mouse (W). Also: **waapikoshiihsh** (E)

aasha *pc* now, then, yet. Also: **aashay**

aashokan bridge

aatisoohkaan -an *ni* legend

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

aatisoohke *vai* tell legends

aaw *pc* well, well then, sure

caahcaamohki *vai* sneeze a lot

caakihse *vai/ii* get used up, run out, be exhausted

caakii *vai* be too tired to do anything, have no more energy

caakin *vta* use s.o. up

caakinan *vti* use s.t. up

caakisan *vti* burn s.t.

caakiso *vai* be lit, be on fire, have one's house on fire, burn up, be burned up

caakiso *vta* burn s.o. up. Stem: /caakisw-/

caakite *vii* burn up, be burned up

caam *ni* jam

cahkaahtehsicikan -an *ni* camera

capashiihsh *pc* low, lower level

ci- *prev* to, that, will, would, could, should. [conjunct future and modal]

ci-kii- *prev* could. **ci-** + **kii-** 'potential'

ciikahikan -an *ni* ax (W). Also: **waakaahkwat** (E)

ciikic *pc* by, close to, near to

ciimaan -an *ni* canoe, boat

ciipay -ak *na* ghost, corpse

ciipayi-mihtikowash -an *ni* coffin

ciishtahikan -an *ni* fork

ciiweyaa *vii* be silent, be no sound

cike *pc* for sure. Also: **cikema**

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

coocoohsh -ak *na* breast

coocoohshaapoo *ni* milk

cwaapiihsh -ak *na* jackfish. Also: **nicwaapiihsh**

e- *prev* [conjunct subordinator]

ehe *pc* yes. Also: **eha**

ehshay *pc* oh yuck!

ehta *pc* only

ekaa *pc* no, not. [conjunct negative word]

ekaawin *pc* don't (E). Also: **ikaawin** (W)

ekwa *pc* and, and so, then, and then

ekwa tahsh *pc* and so, and then, but then

emihkwaan -ak *na* spoon, ladle

eni-tipihkaak *vii* last evening. IC < **ani-tipihkaa**

enikohk *pc* with more effort, harder

eniwehk *pc* anyways, effort, at least, anyhow

eshkam *pc* sometimes

eshkan -an *ni* ice chisel

himaa *pc* there. Also: **ihimaa**

homaa *pc* here. Also: **ohomaa**

hsa *pc* emphatic

hsha *pc* [emphatic particle]. Also: **ohsha**

ihi *pr* that. Also: **ihiwe**. [inanimate singular demonstrative]

ihimaa *pc* there. Also: **himaa**

iniwe *pr* that. Also: **ihi, ihiwe, hi**. [inanimate singular demonstrative]

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ihiweti *pc* over there, that way. Also: **hiweti**

ihkin *vii* happen a certain way, be a certain problem

ihkito *vai* say, speak in a certain way

ihkwaamaciwe *vai* climb a hill

ihkwaantawe *vai* climb up a ladder or stairs (E). Also: **ihkwaatawe** (W)

ihkwe -wak *na* woman, female

ihkwesenhs -ak *na* girl (E). Also: **ihkwesehs -ak** (W)

ihpahiwe *vai* run to a certain place for cover

iitok *pc* maybe, must be

ikaawin *pc* don't (W). Also: **ekaawin** (E)

ikiweniwak *pr* those. Also: **ikiweniwak.** [animate plural demonstrative]

iko *pc* emphatic

iko *pc* [emphatic]

ina *pc* [yes-no question marker]. Also: **na.**

inaakoomaakan -ak *na* relation, person one is related to

inaapi *vai* take a look, take a peek

inankiso *vai* cost so much, have such a price, be such a date of the month (E). Also: **inakiso** (W)

inankite *vii* cost so much, have such a price (E). Also: **inakite** (W)

inehke *pc* in direction of

inentam *vai2* think so, feel so

inentan *vti* think so of s.t., think s.t. to be so

inenti *vai* be gone so long, be absent so long (E). Also: **ineti** (W)

inihtaakwan *vii* sound so, be understood so

iniweniwan *pr* those. Also: **inweniwan.** [inanimate plural demonstrative]

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ishaa *vai* go to a certain place

ishi *vta* say to s.o. Stem: /iN-/

ishi- *prev* to. Also: in a certain place, in a certain way. Also: **shi-**. IC> **eshi-**

ishi-taa *vai* live there, reside there

ishiciwan *vii* flow in a certain direction, flow so

ishihse *vii* it happens so, continues so, ran so, the time is. Also: **isihse**

ishihse *vai* fly in a certain direction

ishinan *vti* look at s.t. which looks so, see s.t. a certain way

ishinihkaaso *vai* be called or named a certain way. IC> **eshinihkaaso=**

ishinihkaate *vii* be called or named a certain way. IC> **eshinihkaate=**

ishiwepan *vii* be certain weather, happen in a certain way. IC: **eshiwepa=**

ishkii *vai* be tired of doing something

ishkooniwikamik **-oon** *ni* school

ishkoonoo *vai* attend school. Also: **ishoonoowi, ishkoonii**

ishkotehkaanaapihk **-ook** *na* stove, heater

ishkotewaapoo *ni* whisky, liquor

ishkwaa- *prev* after, completed

ishkwaahkamikan *vii* event is over

ishkwaantem **-an** *ni* door (E). Also: **ishkwaatem** (W)

ishkwaayaac *pc* end, last, ultimate

ishpimink *pc* up above (E). Also: **ishpimik** (W)

iskaaciwaso *vai* be boiled dry

iskaaciwate *vii* be boiled dry

iti *vai* have such things happen to one

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

kaa- *prev* one who, one that. [conjunct relativizer]

kaa-tahkwekisoc piihsim *na-pt* shorter month, February

kaahcitin *vta* catch s.o., capture s.o.

kaahsanii *ni* gasoline

kaahsaniiwikamik -oon *ni* gas station

kaahshaa *vii* be sharp

kaahsiin *vta* wipe s.o., clean s.o., wash s.o.

kaahsiinan *vti* wipe s.t., clean s.t., wash s.t.

kaahsiinike *vai* wipe things for cleaning

kaahsiininaakane *vai* wash dishes

kaahsiinitiso *vai* clean oneself

kaahsiinkwe *vai* wash one's face (E). Also: **kaahsiikwe** (W)

kaak -wak *na* porcupine

kaakaaki -wak *na* raven

kaana *pc* is it possible that, would you, perhaps

kaanika *pc* I wonder, I wish, I hope

kaash *vta* hide s.o., hide s.t. animate. Stem: /kaaN-/

kaatoon *vti2* hide it

kaawin *pc* no, not. Also: **kwaan**

kaawin mahshi *pc* not yet

kaawin wiihkaa *pc* never

kaawiniin *pc* no < **kaawin + wiin**

kahkiiwe *vai* to portage, make a prtage, go across land to water

kahkina *pc* all, every

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

kakwecim *vta* ask s.o.

kamaawin *pc* think not so, probably not so. <**kaawin maawin**

kanake *pc* at least

kanawaapam *vta* look at s.o.

kanawaapantan *vti* look at s.t. (E). Also: **kanawaapatan** (W)

kanawenim *vta* look after, take care of s.o.

kanawentan *vti* look after, take care of s.t.

kanoohke *vai+o* remember

kanoohkem *vta* remind s.o.

kanoohkentaw *vta* remember s.o.

kanoosh *vta* call, address, speak to s.o. Stem: /kanooN-/

kanootan *vti* call s.t., address s.t., speak to s.t.

kapaa *vai* get off, disembark

kapat -an *ni* cupboard

kape- *pre* all the time, all the way, through

kapehshiwin -an *ni* camp, campsite, hotel room

kashkatin *vii* freeze up

kashkatinoo-piihsim *na* freeze-up month, November

kashkawan *vii* be misted over, fogged in

kashkihi *vta* be able to manage, can do to s.o.; let s.o. go Stem: /kashkih-/

kashkii-tipihkaa *vii* be pitch dark

kashkii-tipihkanihse *vii* be night

kawaci *vai* be cold (of a person)

kawihshimo *vai* lie down, go to bed

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

kayaash *pc* originally, long ago, former

kaye *pc* and, also, too, as for

kaye piko *pc* likely, to be expected, probably

ke *pc* as for. See: **keniin, keniinawint, kekiin, kekiinawint, kekiinawaa, kewiin, kewiinawaa**

ke- *prev* will, should, could. [Changed future and modal]

kehcin *pc* probably,possibly

kehcinaac *pc* certainly, for sure

keka *pc* finally, eventually

kekaat *pc* nearly, almost

kekiin *pr* you too, as for you. [second person singular personal pronoun]

kekiinawaa *pr* you too, as for you. [second person plural personal pronoun]

kekiinawint *pr* us too, as for us. [first person inclusive personal pronoun] (E). Also: **kekiinawit** (W)

kekishep *pc* this morning (past). Also: **kekishepaa**

kekishepaanehkwe *vai* have breakfast

kekishepaayaa *vii* be morning

keko *pc* what kind or sort, which one or sort

kekonen -an *pr* what

keniin *pr* me too, as for me. [first person singular personal pronoun]

keniinawint *pr* us too, as for us. [first person exclusive personal pronoun]. (E) Also: **keniinawit** (W)

ketahtawen *pc* all of a sudden, suddenly

kewiin *pr* him too, her too, as for him, as for her. [third person singular personal pronoun]

kewiinawaa *pr* them too, as for them. [third person plural personal pronoun]

kicikwaashkoni *vai* jump out

kihci- *pre* big, great, very

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

kihci-ayaa *na* elder

kihci-mitaahsomitana *nu* thousand. **niishwaa kihci-mitahsomitana** 'two thousand', etc.

kihcinihkiink *pc* on the right (E). Also: **kihcinihkiik** (W)

kihcipison -an *ni* belt

kihkenim *vta* know s.o.

kihkentaakwan -oon *vii* be known

kihkentam *vai2* know

kihkentamoosh *vta* inform s.o., let s.o. know. Stem: /kihkentamooN-/

kihkentan *vti* know s.t.

kihkinoohamaw *vta* teach s.o.

kihkinoohamaw *vta* teach someting to s.o., give direction to s.o.

kihsaapaawanitiso *vai* wash oneself

kihtimi *vai* be lazy

kii- *prev* [past tense]. Also: **kiih-**. IC> **kaa-**

kiin *pr* you. [second person singular personal pronoun]

kiinawaa *pr* you. [second person plural personal pronoun]

kiinawint *pr* we, us. [first person inclusive personal pronoun] (E). Also: **kiinawit** (W)

kiinehta *pr* you alone, you only

kiinehtawaa *pr* you alone, you only (plural)

kiinehtawint *pr* we alone, us only (inclusive) (E). Also: **kiinehtawit** (W)

kiinishtam *pr* you next, you first. [second person personal pronoun]. Also: **niinihtam**

kiishihi *vta* finish s.o. Stem: /kiishih-/

kiishihtoon *vti2* finish s.t., be done with s.t. Stem: /kiishihtoo-/

kiishik *ni* sky, day

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

kiishikaa *vii* be day

kiishikaahte *vii* be moonlight

kiishipakaawi-piihsim *na* leaves are fully grown month, July

kiishisan *vti* cook s.t., done

kiishiso *vai* be cooked done

kiishite *vii* be cooked, done

kiishitepo *vai* cook

kiishiwaayaa *vii* be warm weather

kiishkaayawaa *vii* be deep water

kiishkipoocike *vai* saw things, cut things with the saw

kiishowaayaa *vii* be warm weather

kiishpin *pc* if

kiiwe *vai* go home, return

kiiwe- *prev* returning, going home, going back

kiiwekoote *vii* fly back

kiiwenotan *vti* return to s.t.

kiiwetinonk *pc* north (E). Also: **kiiwetinok** (W)

kiiwewish *vta* take s.o. home. Stem: /kiiwewiN-/

kiiwewitoon *vti* take s.t. home. Stem: /kiiwewetoo-/

kiiweyaahsin *vii* return through air, blow back

kiiwike *vai* visit (especially in one's own community)

kiiwite *vai* visit (especially outside one's own community)

kiiyaapic *pc* still, yet, more. Also: **kiyaapic**

kimiwan *vii* rain. Also: **kimowan**

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

kimooti *vai+o* steal s.t.

kinepik -ook *na* snake. Also: **kinepik -wak**

kinika *pc* mix

kinipi- *pv* fast

kinipihse *vai/ii* be quick, be fast, be used up quickly (money or time)

kinipii *vai* hurry, be quick, be fast

kinokaapawi *vai* stand tall, be tall

kinooshe -k *na* fish

kinooshenhs -ak *na* minnow (E). Also: **kinooshehs** (W)

kinwaakaash *pc* for a long time

kinwaanihkwe *vai* have long hair

kinwensh *pc* for a long time (E). Also: **kinwesh** (W)

kipaahkwahitiiwikamik -oon *ni* jail

kipihcii *vai* stop

kipihsin -oon *vii* be closed

kipihtinan *vti* block s.t. (in an action), stop s.t.

kishaakamite *vii* be hot (liquid)

kishiiciwan -oon *vii* be a fast current

kishiiwemakan *vii* be loud

kishite *vii* be hot (atmosphere)

kishiwaasi *vai* be angry, be mad

kisiihsipaso *vai* take a shower

kisiipiikii *vai* take a bath, wash self

kisiipiikinike *vai* wash clothes

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

kisiipiikinikewikamik -oon *ni* laundromat

kitohcike *vai* play a musical instrument

kiyaashk -wak *na* seagull. Also: **kiiyaashk**

koci- *pv* try to do, to attempt

kocihcikaate *vii* be tried

kocihpitan *vti* take a taste of, try a taste of s.t. inanimate

kocihpo *vta* take a taste of, try a taste of s.t. animate. Stem: /kocihpw-/

kocihtoon *vti2* try s.t. Stem: /kocihtoo-/

kohsi *vta* fear s.o., afraid of s.o. Stem: /kohs-/

kohtaaci *vai* be afraid, get scared

koncipanihcikaate *vii* be swallowed (E). Also: **kocipanihcikaate** (W)

koncipanihi *vta* swallow s.o. (E). Stem: /koncipanih-/ Also: **kocipanihi** (W). Stem: /kocipanih-/

koohkoohkohoo -k *na* owl

kookii *vai* dive

koon -ak *na* snow

kooshta *pc* oops! oh my! Also: **ooshta**

koshkosi *vai* awaken

koshkosi *vai* be awake, wake up

kotak -iyak *pr* the other. [animate alternative pronoun]

kotak -iyan *pr* the other. [inanimate alternative pronoun]

kwaashkoni *vai* jump

kwaashkwepicikan -ak *na* fishhook

kwaashkwepicike *vai* fish with a hook

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

kwaashkwepine *vai* fish with a hook

kwaashkwepish *vta* hook s.o. Stem: /kwaashkwepiN-/

kwaashkwepiso *vai* be hooked

kwanta *pc* for no reason or purpose

kwayaancii *vai* get ready, prepare (E). Also: **kwayaacii** (W)

kwayaantahcike *vai* be ready or available things (E). Also: **kwayaatahcike** (W)

kwayahk *pc* right, straight, correct(ly), proper(ly)

kwiikwiihs -ak *na* Canada jay. Also: **kwiihwiihshi -wak**

maacaa *vai* go, leave

maacaamakan *vii* go, leave

maaciciwan *vii* start to flow

maacihtan *vii* be ice breaking up

maacii- *prev* start, begin

maaciihatoo *vai* start off on a trail, go for a walk

maaciihkwashiwe *vai* start to paddle, paddle off

maaciihs -ak *na* match

maaciihse *vai/ii* fly off (as a bird), starts (as a motor)

maaciikitowin -an *ni* telephone

maaciipahiwaash *vta* run away from s.o. Stem: /maaciipahiwaaN-/

maaciipahiwaatan *vti* run away from s.t.

maaciipahiwe *vai* run away from

maaciipahtoo *vai* set out running, start running

maaciipiso *vai* set out by vehicle, speed off, drive off

maaciiwicikaate *vii* be taken away, be carried away

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

maaciiwish *vta* take along with s.o. Stem: /maaciiwiN-/

maaciiwitoon *vti* 2 take along with s.t., take s.t. away. Stem: /maaciiwitoo-/

maaciiyaahoote *vii* be carried away on the waves

maacishikan -an *ni* scissors

maacisho *vta* cut s.o. Stem: /maacishw-/

maaham *vai2* go on a shopping trip, shop

maamahkaac *pc* amazing, astounding, that is so amazing

maamaw *pc* all together, in total

maamihcaashkaa *vii* be big waves

maamitonenim *vta* think about s.o., consider s.o.

maamitonentam *vai* be thinking

maamitonentan *vti* think about s.t., consider s.t.

maanencike *vai* disobey, bother things

maank -wak *na* loon (E). Also: **maak** (W)

maashkooc *pc* perhaps, maybe, also, else

maataho *vta* scrape s.o. Stem: /maatahw-/

maatanohkii *vai* start to work

maatinawe-kiishikaa *vii* be Saturday

maawac *pc* most; most of all

maawacihitowin *ni* gathering, meeting

maawatoonan *vti* gather s.t.

maawin *pc* most likely; perhaps; maybe; must be. Also: **maawiin**

macentaakwan *vii* be dull, boring

maci- *pre* bad

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

maci-miskwaawaa *vii* be a red-coloured sky that predicts bad weather

maci-naakosi *vai* be bad looking

macihcike *vai* do something bad, get into trouble

macihpo *vta* taste s.o. who tastes bad. Stem: /macihpw-/

macihse *vai* have something bad happen, have things go wrong

mah! *pc* listen!

mahiinkan -ak *na* wolf (E). Also: **mahiikan** (W)

mahkatewaa *vii* be black

mahkatewaanihkwe *vai* have black hair

mahkatewisi *vai* be black

mahkehshi -wak *na* fox. Also: **waakohsh**

mahkisin -an *ni* shoe, moccasin

mahko-piihsim *na* bear month, May

mahkoonhs -ak *na* bear cub (E). Also: **mahkoohs** (W)

mahkwa -k *na* bear

mahshi *pc* yet

makohshe *vai* feast, give a feast

makohshe-kiishikani-piihsim *na* feast day month, December

makohshewin -an *ni* feast

makoot -ayan. Also: **-an** *ni* coat; dress; skirt; jacket

mamaanii *vai* do something bad, make mistakes

mamishim *vta* tell on s.o.

mamishintan *vta* tell on s.t. (E). Also: **mamishitan** (W)

mamisiwe- *prev* all over, everything

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

manehtek -wak *na* smoke fish

manicoohsh -ak *na* bug, insect

manihse *vai* get firewood

manipahi *vta* grab s.o., pick s.o. up quickly. Stem: /manipah-/

maniwaahkaahikane *vai* buy a house

mankihtikweyaa *vii* be a wide river (E). Also: **makihtikweyaa** (W)

manoway -ak *nad* cheek. Stem: /-anoway-/

mashkash -iik *nad* fingernail/toenail. Stem: /-ashkash-/

mashkawaahkwatin -oon *vii* be frozen solid

mashkawii *vai* be strong

mashkihki -in *ni* medicine, drug

mashkihkiiwikamik -oon *ni* nursing station

mashkihkiiwinini -wak *na* medicine person, doctor

mashkiik -oon *ni* muskeg, bog, swamp

masinaahtehsicikan -an *ni* television

masinahamaw *vta* write to or for s.o., owe to s.o., borrow from s.o.

masinahikan -an *ni* book, document, paper, letter, newspaper

masinahikanaahtik -oon *ni* pencil, pen

masinahikanikamik -oon *ni* library

masinahike *vai* write, borrow, get credit

masinahikewikamik -oon *ni* office, band office

mate- *prev* visible (at a distance)

matokwaan -an *ni* tipi. Also: **matokaan, matikwaan**

matwehikan -ak *na* drum

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

matwehike *vai* be drumming

mawi *vai* cry

mawinehike *vai* compete, attack

mayaam *pc* exactly

mekwaa *pc* while, during, at the time

mekwaac *pc* while, during, at the (same) time, now

memecikaahcike *vai* examine things, check up on things

memecikaayaapantan *vti* examine s.t., investigate s.t., check up on s.t. (by looking) (E). Also: **memecikaayaapatan** (W)

memenkwe -k *na* butterfly (E). Also: **memekwe** (W)

memepiso *vai* swing oneself

memepison -an *ni* swing, blanket cradle

metawaakan -an *ni* toy, plaything

metawe *vai* play

metawewikamik -oon *ni* recreation hall

micaap -an *nid* eye. Stem: /-caap-/

mihkaat -an *nid* leg. Stem: /-hkaat-/

mihkan *vti* find s.t.

mihkaw *vta* find s.o.

mihkwam -iik *na* ice

mihsan *ni* firewood. Stem: /mihs-/ Plural of: **mihsi**

mihsat -an *ni* stomach

mihsawaac *pc* even though, anyhow, although

nihshiin *pc* many, much, a lot

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

mihshiinatinoon *vii* be a lot of, be many of. Stem: /mihshiinatin-/

mihshiiniwaa *pc* many times, often. Also: **mihshiinwaa**

mihshiinowak *vai* be many. Stem: /mihshiino-/

mihshikamaa *vii* be a big lake

mihsi *ni* stick of firewood. Stem: /mihs-/ Plural: **mihsan** 'firewood'

mihtawak -an *nid* ear. Stem: /-htawak-/

mihtik -ook *na* tree (deciduous)

mihtik -oon *ni* stick, piece of wood, yard (measurement)

mihtikowash -an *ni* suitcase, wooden box.

miicim *ni* food

miicimihkancikan -an *ni* bait (E). Also: **miicimihkacikan -an** (W)

miicin *vti3* eat s.t. Stem: /miici-/

miihkana -n *ni* trail, path, road

miihsaweshkishii *vai* have a mustache

miihshitoone *vai* have a beard

miikaash *vta* fight s.o. Stem: /miikaaN-/

miikaaso *vai* fight

miikaasowin -an *ni* fight, violence. Also: **miikaatiwin**

miikaatan *vti* fight s.t.

miikihsikwaahson -an *ni* beaded article

miikwehc *pc* thanks

miina *pc* and, again, next

miinkwan -ak *na* feather. Also: **miikwan**

miish *vta* give (s.t.) to s.o. Stem: /miiN-/

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

miishkoc *pc* in exchange, instead of, in turn

mikaash *vta* fight s.o. Stem: /miikaaN-/

mikanakaap -an *nid* forehead. Stem: /-kanakaap-/

mikihtik -oon *nid* knee. Stem: /-kihtik-/

mikisiiwi-piihsim *na* bald eagle month, March

mikonew *nid* inside of mouth. Also: **mikwinew**. Stem: /-konew-/

mikoshkaatenim *vta* worry about s.o., be concerned about s.o.

mikoshkaatentam *vai2* worry, be concerned, wonder

mikoshkaatentan *vti* worry about s.t., be concerned about s.t.

mikot -an *nid* nose. Stem: /-kot-/

mikotashkway -an *nid* throat. Stem: /-kotashkway-/

mikwayaw -an *nid* neck. Stem: /-kwayaw-/

mincihkaawan - ak *na* mitt, glove (E). Also: **micihkaawan** (W)

mincinawesi *vai* be sorry, be regretful (E). Also: **micinawesi** (W)

minihk -an *nid* arm. Stem: /-nihk-/

minihkwaakan -an *ni* cup

minihkwe *vai* drink, drink s.t.

minihkwewin -an *ni* drink, booze

minihtik -oon *ni* island

minihtikwaapihk -oon *ni* rocky island

minikohk *pc* much, many. Also: **minikwahk**

mininc -iin *nid* finger (E). Stem: /-ninc-/. Also: **minic** (W)

mino- *pre* nice, good

mino-ayaawamaciho *vai* feel well, feel better

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

mino-kiishikaa *vii* be a nice day

mino-miskwaawaa *vii* be a red-coloured sky that predicts good weather

mino-naakosi *vai* look nice, good looking. Also: **minonaakosi**

minohpakosi *vai* taste good. Also: **minohpikosi**

minohpakwan *vii* taste good

minohpitan *vti* like taste of s.t.

minohpo *vta* like taste of s.o. Stem: /minohpw-/

minomaakosi *vai* smell nice, smell good

minomaakwan *vii* smell nice, smell good

mintito *vai* be big (E). Also: **mitito** (W)

minwaahshin *vii* be nice, look nice

minwancike *vai* eat well, enjoy one's meal (E). Also: **minwacike** (W)

minwenim *vta* like s.o.

minwentaakwan *vii* be enjoyable, be liked, be fun, be a good time, be appreciated

minwentam *vai2* be happy, be glad

minwentan *vti* like s.t., enjoy s.t.

mipiiway **-an** *nid* hair. Stem: /-piiway-/. Also: **piiway**

mipwaam **-an** *nid* thigh. Stem: /-pwaam-/

mishookan **-an** *nid* hip. Stem: /-shookan-/

mishtahi *pc* much, a lot. Also: **mistahi**

mishtikwaan **-an** *nid* head. Stem: /-shtikwaan-/

misit **-an** *nid* foot. Stem: /-sit-/

misiwe *pc* all over, everything, whole

miskosi *vai* be red

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

miskwaa *vii* be red

miskwaawaa *vii* be a red-coloured sky at dawn or after sunset

mitaahs -ak *nad* pants. Stem: /-taahs-/

mitaahsinoon *vii* be ten. Stem: /mitaahsin-/

mitaahsiwak *vai* be ten. Stem: /mitaahsi-/

mitaahso *nu* ten

mitaahso piiwaapihkonhsh -ak *na* ten cents (E). Also: **mitaahso piiwaapihkohsh** (W)

mitaahsomitana *nu* hundred. **niishwaa mitaahsomitana** 'two hundred', etc.

mitaahsoopiihikan -ak *na* ten dollar bill

mitaahswaapihk *na* ten dollars

mitaamihkan -an *nid* chin. Stem: /-taamihkan-/

mitehi -in *nid* heart. Stem: /-tehi-/

mitenan -iin *nid* tongue. Stem: /-tenan-/

mitihs -iin *nid* navel. Stem: /-tihs-/

mitihtiman -an *nid* shoulder. Stem: /-tihtiman-/

mitoni *pc* really, entirely so, completely. Also: **tetako**

mitoon -an *nid* mouth (especially outer part of mouth; lips). Stem: /-toon-/

mitoontan -an *nid* heel (E). Stem: /-toontan-/. Also: **mitootan** (W)

mitooskwan -an *nid* elbow. Stem: /-tooskwan-/

miyaw -an *nid* body. Stem: /-yaw-/. Also: **miiyaw**

moohkomaan -an *ni* knife

moos -ook *na* moose

mooshak *pc* always, all the time

nooshkahan *vii* flood, be high water

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

mooshkine *vii* be full

mooso-wiiyaahs *ni* moose meat

mwaye- *prev* before. Usually **e-mwaye**

na *pc* [yes-no question marker]. Also: **ina.**

naaci- *pv* get, fetch, go for

naacihkomaane *vai* get a knife

naacimiicime *vai* go for food, fetch food

naaciwanihikane *vai* go to check traps. Also: **naaciwanihiikane**

naahpic *pc* really, very, to a high degree, extensively

naake *pc* later

naakosi *vai* be visible, show up. (**pi-naakosi** be seen coming this way)

naakwan *vii* be visible, show up. (**pi-naakwan** be seen coming this way)

naanaakacihi *vta* investigate s.o., watch for s.o. Stem: /naamaakacih-/

naanew *pc* down at the shore, on the shore

naanewi- *pren* on shore

naani- *pren* near, by

naaniimi *vai* keep on dancing. Reduplication of: **niimi**

naanipaawe -wak *vai* yawn. Also: **naanipaayawe**

naaniyahii *pc* near something

naanta *pc* maybe, perhaps, in some way. Also: **naanita**

naapakwaash *vta* snare s.o. Stem: /naapakwaaN-/

naapakwe *vai* set snares

naape -wak *na* man

naapenhs -ak *na* boy (E). Also: **naapehs -ak** (W)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

naapi- *prev* put together, assemble

naapihkaakan -ak *na* kerchief; scarf

naashaantawe -wak *vai* climb down a tree, go downstairs (E). Also: **naashaatawe** (W)

naasihkan *vti* get s.t., fetch s.t.

naasihkaw *vti*a get, fetch s.o.

naasipii *vai* go to the shore, go to the water

naataham *vai2* go to get by boat

naatahan *vti* go to get s.t. by boat

naatahipii *vai* get water, go for water

naatahsapii *vai* get one's net, check one's net

naatakwe *vai* go to check snares

naawi- *pren* center of, middle of

nah! *pc* look! look out!

nahke piko *pc* I don't know

nahsaw *pc* middle of

nahsemaa -k *na* tobacco

nahshine *pc* often, all the time, frequently

nakash *vta* leave s.o. behind Stem: /nakaN-/

nakatan *vti* leave s.t. behind

nakwaakan -an *ni* snare

nakwaakanaahtik -oon *ni* snare stick (wooden frame)

nakwaakaniyaap -iin *ni* snare wire

nakwaash *vta* snare s.o. Stem: /nakwaaN-/

nakwaaso *vai* be snared

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

namancinihkiink *pc* on the left. Also: **namacinihkiik** (W)

namatapi *vai* sit down, be seated

name -wak *na* sturgeon

namekohs -ak *na* lake trout

nanaahkom *vta* thank s.o

nanaantawaapam *vta* look around for s.o., hunt for s.o. (E). Also: **nanaatawaapam** (W)

nanaantawencike *vai* hunt (E). Also: **nanaatawencike** (W)

nanaantawenim *vta* look around for s.o., search for s.o. (E). Also: **nanaatawenim** (W)

nanaantawentan *vti* look around for s.t., search for s.t. (E). Also: **nanaatawentan** (W)

nanaantawi-oociiwe *vai* go about looking for flies (E). Also: **nanaatawi-oociiwe** (W)

nanaantawi-*prev* seek, go around for (E). Reduplication of: **nantawi-, ntawi-**. Also: **nanaatawi-** (W)

nanaatihkosii *vai* do mean things, tease, make fun of people

nanahacike *vai* tidy things

nantawencike *vai* hunt (E). Also: **natawencike** (W)

nantawenim *vta* want/need s.o. (E). Also: **natawenim** (W)

nantawentaakosi *vai* be wanted, be desirable (E). Also: **natawentaakosi** (W).

nantawentan *vti* want/need s.t. (E). Also: **natawentan** (W)

nantohtamowin *ni* radio

nantohtan *vti* listen to s.t.

nantohtaw *vta* listen to s.o. (E). Also: **natohtaw** (W)

nantonaw *vta* look for s.o.

natawihiwe *vai* heal people. Also: **antawihiwe**

nato- *pre* real, natural, plain

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

natohtamoowikamik -oon *ni* radio station

natohtan *vti* listen to s.t.

natok *pc* suddenly, miraculously, as a suprise

nawac *pc* more, quite (-er)

nehpici- *pv* permanently, not knowing when to quit

nekaapiihanonk *pc* west (E). Also: **nekaapiihanok** (W)

neyaa *vii* be a peninsula, be a point in the lake

neyaahsh -iin *ni* point of land, peninsula

nicaahkohsh -ak *nad* my (woman's) (female cross-)cousin, my (woman's) sister-in-law. Stem: /-caahkohsh-/

niciimic -ak *nad* my younger brother. Also: sister, my younger sibling. Stem: /-ciimic-/

nihka -k *na* Canada goose

nihkaakone *vai/ii* be covered with snow

nihki-piihsim *na* goose month, April

nihsaapaawe *vai* drown

nihshiwanaatan -oon *vii* be spoiled

nihsi *vta* kill s.o. Stem: /nihs-/

nihsin *nu* three

nihsinoon *vii* be three. Stem: /nihsin-/

nihsitawinan *vti* recognize s.t. by sight, realize s.t.

nihsitohtam *vai2* understand

nihsitohtan *vti* understand s.t.

nihsiwak *vai* be three. Stem: /nihsi-/

nihsomitana *nu* thirty

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

nihsoshaap *nu* thirteen

nihsoshaap tahswaapihk *na* thirteen dollars

nihswaa *pc* three times, thrice

nihswaapihk *ni* three dollars

nihtaa- *prev* can do, skilled at, know how

nihtaawanohkii *vai* work well, be a good worker

nihtaawe *vai* know how to talk, can talk

nihtaawihse *vai* know how to walk, can walk, walks well

niici-kihcihaa **-k** *nad* my fellow elder. Stem:/-iici-kihcihaa-/

niici-naape **-wak** *nad* my fellow man. Stem: /-iici-naapew-/

niici-toohkan **-ak** *nad* my name-sake. Stem: /-iici-toohkan-/

niicihkiwesi **-wak** *nad* my (man's) brother. Stem: /-iicihkiwesiw-/

niiciihaa **-k** *nad* my spouse. Stem: /-iiciihaa-/

niicimohsh **-ak** *nad* my (cross-)cousin of opposite sex. Stem: /-iicimohsh-/

niihsiikinincaan **-an** *ni* finger. Also: **niihsiikinicaan**

niihsiikisitaan **-an** *ni* toe

niihtaawihs **-ak** *nad* my (man's) brother-in-law. Stem: /-iihtaawahs-/. Also: **niihtaawahs**

niikate *pc* a ways off, far away

niikateshkaa *vai* go away

niimaawiniwash **-an** *ni* provisions box, container

niimi *vai* dance

niimitana *nu* forty

niin *pr* I, me. [first person singular personal pronoun]

niinamii *vai* be weak

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

niinawint *pr* we, us (E) [first person exclusive personal pronoun]. Also: **niinawit** (W)

niinehta *pr* I alone, me only

niinehtawint *pr* we alone, us only (exclusive) (E). Also: **niinehtawit** (W)

niinim -ook *nad* my (cross-)cousin of opposite sex, my sibling-in-law of opposite sex. Stem: /-iinimw-/

niinishtam *pr* me next, me first. [first person singular pronoun]. Also: **niinihtam**

niipaa- *pv* at night, happening at night, nocturnal

niipawi *vai* stand, be standing

niipin *vii* summer

niishin *nu* two

niishinoon *vii* be two. Stem: /niishin-/

niishitana *nu* twenty

niishitana tahswaapihk *na* twenty dollars

niishitanawepiihikan -ak *na* twenty dollar bill

niishiwak *vai* be two. Stem: /niishi-/

niisho-kiishikaa *vii* be Tuesday

niishoopiihikan -ak *na* two dollar bill

niishoshaap *nu* twelve, (decade number) plus two

niishoshaap tahswaapihk *na* twelve dollars

niishwaa *pc* twice

niishwaahsinoon *vii* be seven. Stem: /niishwaahsin-/

niishwaahsiwak *vai* be seven. Stem: /niishwaahsi-/

niishwaahso *nu* seven

niishwaahsomitana *nu* seventy

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

niishwaahsoshaap *nu* seventeen, (decade number) plus seven

niishwaahsoshaap tahswaapihk *na* seventeen dollars

niishwaahswaapihk *na* seven dollars

niishwaapihk *na* two dollars.

niiskaatan *vii* be miserable weather

niitihkwe -wak *nad* my (woman's) sister. Stem: /-iitihkwew-/

niitihkwe -wak *nad* my fellow woman. Stem: /-iitihkwew-/

niiwaa *pc* four times

niiwaapihk *na* four dollars

niiwi-kiishikaa *vii* be Thursday

niiwin *nu* four

niiwinoon *vii* be four. Stem: /niiwin-/

niiwishaap *nu* fourteen, (decade number) plus four

niiwishaap tahswaapihk *na* fourteen dollars

niiwiwak *vai* be four. Stem: /niiwi-/

nikamo *vai* sing

nikamowin -an *ni* song

nikayaashim -ak *nad* my ex-spouse. Stem: /-kayaashim-/

nikosihs -ak *nad* my son. Stem: /-kosihs-/

nimaamaa -mak *nad* my mother. Stem: /-maamaa(m)-/

nimihsens -ak *nad* my older sister (E). Stem: /-mihses-/. Also: **nimihsens** (W)

nimohshoom -ak *nad* my grandfather. Stem: /-mohshoom-/. Also: **nimihshoom**

nimoosom -ak *nad* my sweetheart. Stem: /-moosom-/

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ninahaankanihkwem -ak *nad* my daughter-in-law, my (cross-)niece (E). Stem: /-nahaakanihkwem-/. Also: **ninahaakanihkwem** (W)

ninahaankihshiim -ak *nad* my son-in-law, my (cross-)nephew (E). Stem: /-nahaakihshiim-/. Also: **ninahaakihshiim** (W)

niniikihik -ook *nad* my parent. Stem: /-niikihikw-/

nininc -iin *nid* my hand (E). Stem: /-nincy-/. Also: **ninic**. Stem: /-nicy-/ (W)

ninkik -wak *na* otter (E). Also: **nikik** (W)

ninkiko-wanihikan -an *ni* trap for otter (E). Also: **nikiko-wanihikan** (W), **ninkiko-wanihiikan** (E)

ninkiso *vai* be melted (E). Also **nikiso** (W)

ninkotwaahsinoon *vii* be six (E). Stem: /ninkotwaahsin-/. Also: **nikotwaahsinoon** (W)

ninkotwaahsiwak *vai* be six (E). Stem: /ninkotwaahsi-/. Also: **nikotwaahsiwak** (W)

ninkotwaahso *nu* six (E). Also: **nikotwaahso** (W)

ninkotwaahsomitana *nu* sixty (E). Also: **nikotwaahsomitana** (W)

ninkotwaahsoshaap *nu* sixteen (E). Also: **nikotwaahsoshaap** (W)

ninkotwaahsoshaap tahswaapihk *na* sixteen dollars (E). Also: **nikotwaahsoshaap tahswaapihk** (W)

ninkotwaahswaapihk *na* six dollars (E). Also: **nikotwaahswaapihk** (W)

ninkwahkwan *vii* be overcast (E). Also: **nikwahkwan** (W)

nintawi- *prev* go to do. Also: **nantawi-, ntawi-** (E). Also: **nitawi-, natawi-, ntawi-** (W)

nipaa *vai* sleep

nipaaciyaa *vii* be dirty, slimy

nipahtoon *vti2* kill s.t. Stem: /nipahtoo-/

nipewin -an *ni* bed

nipi *ni* water

nipiihkaank *pc* in the water (E). Also: **nipiihkaak** (W)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

nipo *vai* die, be dead

nishihsensh -ak *nad* my (cross-) uncle, my father-in-law (E). Stem: /-shihsensh-/. Also: **nishihsesh** (W)

nishtam *pc* first, next

nishtehs -ak *nad* my older brother. Stem: /-shtehs-/

nisikohs -ak *nad* my (cross-) aunt; my mother-in-law. Stem: /-sikohs-/

nitaanihs -ak *nad* my daughter. Stem: /-taanihs-/

nitaataa -mak *nad* my father. Stem: /-taataa(m)-/

nitawaac *pc* might as well, rather. Also: **ntawaac**

nitawemaa -k *nad* my (man's) sister, my (woman's) brother. Stem: /-tawemaa-/

nitayihihsh -ak *nad* my dog. Stem: /-tayihsh-/

nitiko *pc* it seems, probably. Also: **ntiko**

nitooshim -ak *nad* my (parallel-) nephew. Stem: /-tooshim-/

nitooshimihkwem -ak *nad* my (parallel-) niece. Stem: /-tooshimihkwem-/

nitoosihs -ak *nad* my (parallel-) aunt. Stem: /-toosihs-/

niyaanan *nu* five

niyaanan piiwaapihkohsh -ak *na* five cents (W). Also: **niyaanan piiwaapihkoonhsh** (E)

niyaananiwak *vai* be five. Stem: /niyaanani-/

niyaanano-ahki *pc* five years

niyaananomitana *nu* fifty. Also: **niyaanomitana**

niyaananoon *vii* be five. Stem: /niyaanan-/

niyaananoopiihikan -ak *na* five dollar bill

niyaananoshaap *nu* fifteen. Also: **niyaanoshaap**

niyaananoshaap tahswaapihk *na* fifteen dollars

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

niyaananwaa *pc* five times

niyaananwaapihk *na* five dollars

nooci-kinooshewi-aapacihcikan *ni* fishing gear

noohkom -ak *nad* my grandmother. Stem: /-oohkom-/

noohkomihs -ak *nad* my (parallel-)uncle. Stem: /-oohkomihs-/

noohpimink *pc* in the bush, inland (E). Also: **noohpimik** (W)

noomake *pc* for a while

nooncihshipe *vai* hunt ducks (E). Also: **noocihshipe** (W)

noonkom *pc* now, today (E). Also: **nookom** (W)

noonkom kaa-kiishikaak *vii* today (E). Also: **noonkom kaa-kiishikaak** (W)

noontaw *vta* hear s.o. (E). Also: **nootaw** (W)

noonte- *prev* want to, need to (before usual time) (E). Also: **noote-** (W)

noosihs -ak *nad* my grandchild. Stem: /-oosihs-/

nootihkwewe *vai* womanize; chase women

nootin *vii* be windy, be a wind

nootinikewin -an *ni* war, violence

ntiko *pc* it seems, probably. Also: **nitiko**

ociimaani *vai* have a boat, have s.t. as one's boat

ociimitoo-piihsim *na* kissing month, January. Also: **ociimi-kiishikaawi-piihsim**

ohkaataahk -wak *na* carrot

oho *pr* this. [inanimate singular demonstrative]. Also: **ohowe, howe.**

ohomaa *pc* here. Also: homaa

ohowe *pr* this. Also: **oho, howe.** [inanimate singular demonstrative]

ohsha *pc* [emphatic particle]. Also: **hsha**

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

okaanhs -ak *na* pickerel (E). Also: **okaahs** (W)

okimaa -k *na* boss, manager

okimaahkaan -ak *na* chief

okin -iik *ni* tomatoe

okoweniwan *pr* this, these. Also: **okweniwan.** [inanimate obviative demonstrative]

omakahkii -k *na* frog

ompipaniho *vai* go up in a hurry (E). Also: **opipaniho** (W)

onaakan -an *ni* dish, plate

onaako *pc* yesterday

onahtoon *vti2* arrange s.t., organize s.t., put s.t. in order, stack s.t. Stem: /onahtoo-/

onci *pc* from (E). Also: **oci** (W)

onci- *prev* from, cause (E). IC> wenci-. Also: **oci-** (W). IC> weci-

onci-wiici-taamaakan *na* neighbour (E). Also: **oci-wiici-taamaakan** (W)

oncihcihse *vii* be the time of, come to happen, the time has come (E). Also: **ocihcihse** (W)

oncii *vai* come from a certain place (E). IC> wencii=. Also: **ocii** (W). IC> wecii=

oncinowe *vii* the wind is blowing from a certain direction (E). Also: **ocinowe** (W)

oncita *pc* purposely, jokingly (E). Also: **ocita** (W)

onciwitoon *vti2* carry s.t. from a certain place (E). Stem: /onciwitoo-/. Also: **onciwitoon** (W)

onikam -iin *ni* portage

onsaam *pc* too much, extreme, excessive (E). Also: **osaam** (W)

ontami- *prev* busy at (E). Also: **otami-** (W)

ontamihse *vai* get busy (E). Also: **otamihse** (W)

ontamii *vai* be busy (E). Also: **otamii** (W)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ontamiihke *vai* be busy (E). Also: **otamiihke** (W)

ontenti *vai* be absent, be gone (E). Also: **oteti** (W)

oocii -k *na* fly

ooshta *pc* oops! oh my! Also: **kooshta**

opihkwahko *vai* have arrows

opihkwanaaciihsh -ak *na* bat

osaawaa *vii* be yellow/brown

osaawaanihkwe *vai* have brown hair

osaawisi *vai* be yellow/brown

oshaawashkosi *vai* be blue

oshaawashkwaa *vii* be blue

oshihcikaate *vii* be made, be build, be processed

osohsotam *vai2* cough

ota *pc* emphatic

otaahpinan *vti* choose s.t., accept s.t., take s.t., pick s.t.

otaahpinikaate *vii* be chosen, be taken, be accepted, be picked

otaanaank *pc* at the back, behind, previously (E). Also: **otaanaak** (W)

otaapaan -ak *na* skidoo, car

otaapaanaahk -wak *na* toboggan

paahkihsin -oon *vii* be open

paahpi *vai* laugh

paahpihi *vta* laugh at s.o. Stem: /paahpih-/

paahpihtoon *vti2* laugh at s.t. Stem: /kaatoo-/

paahso *vta* dry s.o. (by heat). Stem: /paahsw-/

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

paakwaa *vii* be shallow water

paanahkihk -wak *na* frying pan

paane- *prev* wide; broad; roomy; expanded

paanesi *vai* be wide, broad, roomy, expanded

paaneyaa *vii* be wide, broad, roomy, expanded

paanimaa *pc* much later, later on, after a long while

paashkisikan -an *ni* gun

paashkiso *vta* shoot s.o. Stem: /paashkisw-/

paawanii *vai* be skinny, be starving

paawihtik -oon *ni* rapids

pahkaan *pc* different

pahkihtehan *vti* hit s.t., strike s.t.

pahkihteho *vta* hit s.o. Stem: /pahkihtehw-/

pahkinaake *vai* win; beat someone (in a competition)

pahkon *vta* skin s.o., cut the pelt off s.o.

pahkweshikan *na* flour, bread

pahkweshikanaapoo *ni* stew, soup with flour

pahkweshikani-kiishikaa *vii* be Friday

pahpaapiwin -an *ni* window. Also: **pahpaapowin**

pakiciiwin -an *ni* airport. Also: **pooniiwin**

pakitahwe *vai* fish with a net, set a net

pakitanemo *vta* regurgitate s.o. Stem: /pakitanemw-/

pakitin *vta* let go of s.o.

pakitinan *vti* let go of s.t.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

pakohsenimo *vai* wish, hope

pakwaan -an *ni* shirt

paninan *vti* drop s.t. from hand

pankihshimon *vii* be the setting sun (E). Also: **pakihshimon** (W)

pankihsin *vii* fall (E). Also: **pakihsin** (W)

pankii *pc* a little, some (E). Also: **pakii** (W)

papaamaatake *vai* swim around

papaami-ishaamakan *vii* go about, go there

papaamohse *vai* walk about, take a walk

papiihkwahkamikisi *vai* fumble things, cause problems

papiikonike *vai* fumble things, cause problems

papiikwaanahkwan *vii* be cloudy

pashkwatahikan -an *ni* clear-cut area

pashkwewash -an *ni* pack

pasikwii *vai* stand up, arise

patotepiso *vai* drive off the road

payahkinan *vti* clean s.t.

payahtak *pc* very carefully

payehkinike *vai* clean things

pehkaac *pc* slowly, carefully

pehkihsh *pc* at the same time, while

pehpeshik *pc* one by one

pehshonc *pc* close, near (E). Also: **pehshoc** (W)

pehshotaahkoomaakan -ak *na* close relation

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

pepaa *ni* pepper

peshik *nu* one

peshik piiwaapihkohsh -ak *na* one cent. Also: **peshik piiwaapihkoonhs**

peshiko *vai* be alone, single

peshiko- *pre* one, single

peshikoopiihikan -ak *na* one dollar bill

peshikoshaap *nu* eleven, (decade number) plus one

peshikoshaap tahswaapihk *na* eleven dollars

peshikwaa *pc* once, one time

peshikwaapihk *na* one dollar

peshikwan *pc* same

peshikwan *vii* be alone, single

peshishooniyaahsh -ak *na* twenty-five cents, (quarter). Also: **peshik shooniyaahsh**

pi- *prev* here, hither, towards

pi-kiiwenotan *vti* return to s.t., come back to s.t.

pi-kiiwenotaw *vta* return to s.o., come back to s.o.

pi-naakosi *vai* be visible coming this way

pihkwaamatinaa -n *ni* hill

pihkwahk -oon *ni* arrow

pihkwan -an *ni* blouse

pihkwatahkamink *ni* forest; wilderness (E). Also: pihkwatahkamik (W)

pihtaahpiso *vai* put clothes on, dress

pihtaho *vta* hit s.o. accidentally using s.t. Stem: /pihtahw-/

piiciwish *vta* bring s.o. Stem: /piiciwiN-/. Also: **piish**

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

piihi *vta* wait for s.o. Stem: /piih-/

piiho *vai* wait, be waiting

piihshaakaneyaap *ni* rope, string

piihsim -ook *na* sun, moon, month. Also: **piihsom**

piihsimohkaan -ak *na* clock

piihsimoo-masinahikan -an *ni* calendar

piihswe-aanahkonaa -k *na* bread (loaf)

piikohse *vai* break out in a rash or pimples, have a blow out

piikohse *vii* get broken, break down, break by itself

piikohsitoon *vti2* break s.t. by dropping. Stem: /piikohsitoo-/

piikoshkaa *vai/ii* be broken

piinahikan -an *ni* purse

piinahike *vai* put something in a container, pack something

piinaho *vta* put s.o. in a container, pack s.o. Stem: /piinahw-/

piinci- *pren* inside, into (E). Also: **piici-** (W)

piinciyahii *pc* inside something (E). Also: **piiciyahii** (W)

piintikamink *pc* indoors (E). Also: **piitikamik** (W)

piintike *vai* enter, go in, come in (E). Also: **piitike** (W)

piish *vta* bring s.o. Stem: /piiN-/. Also: **piiciwish**

piishaa *vai* come here. Also: **pi-ishaa**

piitoon *vti2* bring s.t. Stem: /piitoo-/

piiway -an *ni* hair. Also: **mipiiway**

piiwite -k *na* stranger

piko *pc* just. Also: **poko**

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

piko tooho *pc* any kind, varied, anything, all sort of

pimaahkwepahike *vai* play hockey

pimaahkwepahikewin *ni* hockey

pimaahoote *vii* drift along on the waves

pimaapoote *vii* drift along on the current

pimaatisi *vai* live, be alive

pimaatisiwin -an *ni* life

pimahkwashiwaake *vai* paddle something

pimahkwashiwe *vai* paddle, paddle by

pimakoote *vii* fly along, fly by

pimi- *prev* by, past, along, in process of

pimihse *vai* fly along, fly by (of a bird)

pimihsewin -an *ni* airplane, plane. Also: **piminaakan**

pimihshin *vai* lie down

pimikonaakaa *vii* be a week

piminike *vai* carry things along on one's shoulder

pimipahtoo *vai* run along, run by

pimipanihcikan -an *ni* engine, motor, machine

pimipiso *vai* drive along, drive by

pimitaacimo *vai* crawl along, crawl by

pimitaapii *vai* go along by sled or sleigh

pimite *ni* lard, grease, fuel oil, gas

pimiwane *vai* carry a pack along on one's back

pimiwitoon *vti2* carry s.t. along, carry s.t. by. Stem: /pimiwitoo-/

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

pimo *vta* shoot s.o. with an arrow. Stem: /pimw-/

pimohse *vai* walk along, walk by

pimoocike *vai* carry things

pinaahkwaan -an *ni* comb

pinaahkweho *vai* comb one's hair

pinaahkwiiwi-piihsim *na* leaves are falling month, October

pinamaa *pc* wait a while; for a short while; in awhile

pine -wak *na* spruce hen

pinehshiinsh -ak *na* bird (E). Also: **pinehshiish** (W)

pinehsiiwan *vii* there is thunder

pipoon *vii* winter

pishiw -ak *na* lynx

pitikohtaakosi *vai* have a muffled or low sound, have a muffled or low voice

pitikosi *vai* be stocky, be chubby

poonanohkii *vai* quit a job, stop working

pooni- *prev* stop, cease, quit

pooni-pimaatisi *vai* die

pooshoo *pc* hello

poosi *vai* get on, embark

poosihi *vta* put s.o. on board. Stem: /poosih-/

poosihtoon *vti* put s.t. on board. Stem: /poosihtoo-/

poosikwaashkoni *vai* jump aboard

poosipaniho *vai* hurry aboard. Also: **poosipanihoo**

pootaanitiso *vai* blow on oneself

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

pootawaan -an *ni* fireplace, campfire

pootawe *vai* make a fire, build a fire

Powaan -ak *na* Paul (person's name)

pwaatawi- *pv* delayed, late

pwatan *ni* butter

saakaahte *vii* the sun is rising, the sun comes up.

saakaapahte *vii* smoke comes out (in the distance)

saakaham *vai2* go out, exit

saakahikan -an -iin *ni* lake

saakici- *prev* out

saakihi *vta* love s.o. Stem: /saakih-/

saakihtoon *vti2* like s.t. Stem: /saakihtoo-/

saakipaakaawi-piihsim *na* leaves are out month, June

saankahsinoon *vii* be nine (E). Stem: /saakahsin-/. Also: **shaankahsinoon** (E), **saakahsinoon** (W)

saankahsiwak *vai* be nine (E). Stem: /saankahsi-/. Also: **shaankahsiwak** (E), **saakahsiwak** (W)

saankahso *nu* nine (E). Also: **shaankahso** (E), **saakahso** (W)

saankahsohshaap *nu* nineteen, (decade number) plus nine (E). Also: **shaakahsoshaap** (W)

saankahsomitana *nu* ninety. Also: **shaankahsomitana** (E), **saakahsomitana** (W)

saankahsoshaap tahswaapihk *na* nineteen dollars (E). Also: **saakahsoshaap tahswaapihk** (W)

saankahswaapihk *na* nine dollars (E). Also: **saakahswaapihk** (W)

sahkiso *vai* be lit, be on fire, have one's house on fire

sahkite *vii* be lit, be on fire

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

sakamaatapi *vai* stay in place, sit quietly

sakime -k *na* mosquito

sakimewayaan -ak *na* mosquito net

shaakashkine *vii* be full

shaakooc *pc* however, nevertheless, after all

shaawanonk *pc* south (E). Also: **shaawanok** (W)

sheshtak -ook *na* thread

shiihshiip -ak *na* duck

shiipaa- *pren* beneath

shiipaahi *pc* beneath something

shiipiikii *vai* stretch one's body

shiipiikwaan -an *ni* sweater

shiiwaa *vii* be sweet

shiiwaakamin -oon *vii* be sweet (liquid)

shiiwaapoo *ni* pop, soft drink, juice

shiiwihtaakan *ni* salt

shikaak -wak *na* skunk

shikatentam *vai2* be bored, be lonely, be homesick, be sad

shikatentan *vti* be lonesome for s.t.

shimaakanihshiiwikamik -oon *ni* police station

shinkop -iik *na* evergreen tree, spruce (E). Also: **shikop** (W)

shinkopiiwaapoo *ni* beer (E). Also: **shikopiiwaapoo** (W)

shoohp *na* soap

shookaa *na* sugar

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

shoominaapoo *ni* wine

shoominihsh -ak *na* raisin

shooniyaan -ak *na* money. Also: **shooniyaa**

shooniyaawash -an *ni* wallet

shooshkwahikan -ak *na* iron

siikinan *vti* pour s.t., pump s.t. out

siikinikaate *vii* be poured

siikwan *vii* be spring

siipi -in *ni* river

siitawaac *pc* barely, hardly, poorly

sikohsi -wak *na* weasel

sookihpwan *vii* snow, be snowing. Also: **sookohpwan**

soonkitehe *vai* be brave (E). Also: **sookitehe** (W)

ta- *prev* will [future tense in independent with no personal prefix]

taa- *prev* would, could, should, ought, can [modal]

taapishkooc *pc* alike, even, at the same time

taashkikahike *vai* split wood

taashkisho *vta* split s.o. by cutting. Stem: /taashkishw-/

taawin *ni* town, village

tahkaayaa *vii* be cold (weather)

tahkokaapawi *vai* stand short, be short

tahkwaanihkwe *vai* have short hair

tahsh *pc* and, but

tahsin *pc* a certain number

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

tahsinoon *vli* be a certain number of. Stem: /tahsin-/

tahsiwak *vai* be a certain number of. Stem: /tahsi-/

tahso- *pre* so many, so much, every

tahso-niipin *pc* every summer

tahsoosh *vta* trap s.o. Stem: /tahsooN-/

tahswaa *pc* so many times, every time

takahkinaakosi *vai* be good looking, handsome

takiin *pc* usually

takohse *vii* arrive by flying

takohshin *vii* arrive

takoosh *vta* arrive with s.o. Stem: /takooN-/

takopisi *vai* arrive by vehicle

takwaakin *vii* be fall, be autumn

takwan *vii* be there, exist

tanenim *vta* think s.o. to be there

tanihtaakwan *vii* be heard there

taniwewitam *vai2* be heard from a certain place

tashiihke *vai* stay there, hang around, live there, play

tashiihkewin -an *ni* village, settlement, community

tashiiwihtoo *vai* do things in a certain location

tashim *vta* tell about, talk about s.o.

tashopish *vta* stretch s.o. (as a pelt). Stem: /tashopiN-/

tatipaacimo *vai* be telling. Reduplication of: **tipaacimo**

tawehkonehike *vai* plow snow

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

tehsapiwin -an *ni* chair. Also: **tehsapowin**

tepi- *prev* enough, sufficient

tepi-naakosi *vai* be visible at a distance

tepi-wiihsini *vai* have enough to eat

tepihse *vai/ii* be enough of s.t., be sufficient

tepihtan *vti* hear s.t. in the distance

tepihtaw *vta* hear s.o. in the distance

tepinaahk *pc* carelessly

tepwe *pc* true, for sure

tepwehtam *vai2* believe, agree, go ahead with something (what someone says to do)

tepwehtan *vti* believe s.t., agree with s.t., go ahead with something (what someone says to do)

tepwehtaw *vta* believe in s.o., agree with s.o., go ahead with something (what someone says to do)

tetako *pc* extremely, totally, very

tetipaa *pc* around

tetipaahi *pc* around something

tihkinaakan -an *ni* cradleboard

tihtipanaweyaanihkwe *vai* have curly hair

tihtipihse *vai/i* roll

tihtipipaniho *vai* roll fast. Also: **tihtipipanihoo**

tihtipwepishkikan -ak *ni* bicycle

tii *ni* tea

tiihke *vai* make tea

tiihtipaamaciwe *vai* go downhill

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

tiihtipaantawe *vai* climb down a ladder, climb downstairs (E). Also: **tiihtipaatawe** (W)

tiiwahkihk -wak -ook *na* kettle, teakettle

tipaacimo *vai* tell news, narrate

tipaacimohtaw *vta* tell s.o. news, tell a story about someone

tipaacimowin -an *ni* story, narration

tipaahkon *vta* judge s.o. punish s.o., charge s.o.

tipaahkonike *vai* judge things/people, measure things (as something stick-like)

tipahikaneyaa *vii* be so many hours

tipencikewin -an *ni* property, belongings, family

tipenim *vta* own s.o., keep s.o., control s.o.

tipentan *vti* own s.t., keep s.t., control s.t.

tipihkaa *vii* be night

tipihki-piihsim -ook *na* moon

tipihkonk *pc* last night (E). Also: **tipihkok** (W)

toohaan -ak *na* ball

toohkaan *pc* sort, kind. Also: **tinoohkaan, toowinihkaan**

tootaaso *vai* do so to oneself

tootam *vai2* do in a certain way

tootan *vti* do s.t. so, do so to s.t., treat s.t. so

tootaw *vta* do so to s.o., treat s.o. so

twaahikan -an *ni* hole in ice

twaahike *vai* make a hole in the ice

waa- *prev* will, want to. IC< wii-

waaciye *pc* hello! greeting! (also used by some speakers as a farewell)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

waaciye *vai* shake hands

waahkaahi *pc* around something

waahkaahikan -an *ni* house

waahkaahike *vai* build a house

waahkaahse *vii* go around, be an hour

waahkamisi *vai* behave

waahkikan -an *ni* chest

waahsa *pc* far, distant

waahshehkwan *vii* the sky is clear

waahtepakiiwi-piihsim *na* leaves are changing colour month, September. Also: **waahtepakaawi-piihsim**

waakaahkwat -oon *ni* ax (E). Also: **ciikahikan** (W)

waakohsh -ak *na* fox. Also: **mahkehshi -wak**

waanipiiyaa *vii* pond, be an area of water

waapaa *vii* be white

waapaanihkwe *vai* have white/grey hair

waapam *vta* see s.o.

waapan *vii* be morning, be dawn, be tomorrow

waapank *vii* tomorrow (E). [conjunct form of: waapan]. Also: **waapak** (W)

waapanonk *pc* east (E). Also: **waapanok** (W)

waapantan *vti* see s.t (E). Also: **waapatan** (W)

waapihsahaa *vii* be grey

waapihsahisi *vai* be grey

waapikoshiihsh -ak *na* mouse (E). Also: **aapikoshiihsh** (W)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

waapisi *vai* be white

waapoos -ook *na* snowshoe hare (rabbit)

waapooso-wanihikan -an *ni* trap for snowshoe hare (rabbit)

waapoyaan -an *ni* blanket. Also: **waapiyaan**

waashahaa *vii* be a bay

waashtenikan -an *ni* lamp. Also: **waahtenikan, waastenikan**

waaw -an *ni* egg

waawaahte *vii* northern lights

waawaashkehshi -wak *na* deer

waawikan -an *ni* back

wacahkohsh -ak *na* star (W). Also: **wanankohsh -ak** (E)

wacashk -wak *na* muskrat

wacii -n *ni* mountain

wahawe *pr* this. Also: **wahwawe**. [animate singular demonstrative]

wahkwi -in *ni* cloud. Also: **wahko**

wakic *pc* on top of something

wakici- *pren* on top of

wakiciyahil *pc* on top of something

wanankohsh -ak *na* star. Also: **wacahkohsh**

wanihi *vta* lose s.o., miss s.o., mislay s.o. Stem: /wanih-/

wanihikan -an *ni* trap. Also: **wanihiikan**

wanihikanaahtik -oon *ni* trap stake. Also: **wanihiikanaahtik**

wanihike *vai* trap. Also: **wanihiike**

wanihtoon *vti2* lose s.t. Stem: /wanihtoo-/

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

waniihkenotan *vti* forget s.t.

waniihkenotaw *vta* forget s.o.

wanishkaa *vai* get up

washkii *vai* turn

washkinan *vti* turn s.t., steer s.t.

watakami- *pv* easily

waweshahitaapaanewikamik -oon *ni* garage

waweshihi *vta* fix s.o. Stem: /waweshih-/

waweshihtoon *vti2* fix s.t., repair s.t. Stem: /waweshihtoo-/

wawiyasinaakosi *vai* look cute, look funny

wawiyatisiike *vai* do funny things

wawoono *vai* howl (of dog, wolf etc.)

wehwe -k *na* snow goose

wehwew -ak *na* white goose

wemihtikooshi -wak *na* whiteman

wemihtikooshiihkwe -k *na* white woman

wemihtikooshiimo *vai* speak English

wenci- *prev* what purpose, why is it so (W). IC< **onci-** Also: **weci-** (W). IC< **oci-**

wenipan *pc* be gone, disappear

wenootisi *vai* be rich

wepahaakone *vai* shovel snow

wepahikan -an *ni* broom

wepahike *vai* sweep the floor

weshkac *pc* long ago, in the past

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

weshkaci- *pv* long ago, in the past

weshkaci-anihshinini *na* old-timer, old Indian person, elder

weti *pc* there, that way, yonder, over there

wii- *prev* will, want to. [desiderative, voluntative]

wiicihi *vta* help s.o. Stem: /wiicih-/

wiiciiw *vta* go with, accompany s.o.

wiiciiwaakan -ak *na* spouse, companion

wiihkaa *pc* ever

wiihkwehpicikan *ni* bundle, package

wiihkwepahike *vai* use a vacuum cleaner

wiihsakaakamin -oon *vii* taste bitter (liquid)

wiihsakentam *vai2* be extremely hurt, feel extreme pain

wiihsini *vai* eat

wiihsiniiwikamik -oon *ni* restaurant

wiihsiniiwinaahtik -oon *ni* table

wiikito *vai* be married, marry

wiikwaahs -an *ni* birchbark

wiikwemot -an *ni* birchbark basket

wiin *pc* [contrastive]. Also: **=iin**

wiin *pr* he, she, him, her. [third person singular personal pronoun]

wiinashk -wak *na* groundhog

wiinawaa *pr* they, them. [third person plural personal pronoun]

wiinciikisi *vai* stink (E). Also: **wiiciikisi** (W)

wiinehta *pr* him/her alone, him/her only

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

wiinehtawaa *pr* they alone, them only

wiinishtam *pr* him first, her first, him next, her next. [third person singular personal pronoun]. Also: **wiinihtam**

wiintamaake *vai* announce to people (E). Also: **wiitamaake** (W)

wiintamaw *vta* tell something to s.o. (E). Also: **wiitamaw** (W)

wiipac *pc* soon, in a little while, quick, hurry, early

wiiskwehokaan -an *ni* tent

wiitanohkiimaakan -ak *na* co-worker

wiiyaahs *ni* meat

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

A LOT
mihshiin *pc* many, much, a lot
mishtahi *pc* much, a lot. Also: mistahi

ABLE
kashkihi *vta* be able to manage, can do to s.o.; let s.o. go. Stem: /kashkih-/

ABOUT
papaami-ishaamakan *vii* go about, go there

ABOVE
ishpimink *pc* up above (E). Also: ishpimik (W)

ABROAD
akaamahkiink *pc* in Europe, abroad

ABSENT
inenti *vai* be gone so long, be absent so long (E). Also: ineti (W)
ontenti *vai* be absent, be gone (E). Also: oteti (W)

ACCEPT
otaahpinan *vti* choose s.t., accept s.t., take s.t., pick s.t.
otaahpinikaate *vii* be chosen, be taken, be accepted, be picked

ACCIDENTALLY
pihtaho *vta* hit s.o. accidentally using s.t. Stem: /pihtahw-/

ACCOMPANY
wiiciiw *vta* go with, accompany s.o.

ACROSS
akaami- *pren* across, right across
akaamink *pc* across the lake or river (E). Also: akaamink (W)
akaami-kihcikam *pc* across the ocean
akaamihkana *pc* across the road or trail

ADDRESS
kanoosh *vta* call, address, speak to s.o. Stem: /kanooN-/
kanootan *vti* call s.t., address s.t., speak to s.t.

ADHERE
akohke *vai* stick on, adhere

AFRAID
kohsi *vta* be afraid of s.o. Stem: /kohs-/
kohtaaci *vai* be afraid, get scared

AFTER
ishkwaa- *prev* after, completed

AFTER ALL
shaakooc *pc* however, nevertheless, after all

AFTERNOON
anoonaakohshin *vii* be late in the afternoon

AGAIN
miina *pc* and, again

AGREE
tepwehtam *vai2* believe, agree, go ahead with something (what someone says to do)
tepwehtan *vti* believe s.t., agree with s.t., go ahead with something (what some one says to do)
tepwehtaw *vta* believe in s.o., agree with s.o., go ahead with something (what someone says to do)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ENGLISH - ANIHSHININIIMOWIN GLOSSARY

AIRPLANE
pimihsewin -an *ni* airplane, plane

AIRPORT
pakiciiwin -an *ni* airport. Also: pooniiwin

ALIKE
taapishkooc *pc* alike, even, at the same time

ALIVE
pimaatisi *vai* live, be alive

ALL
kahkina *pc* all, every

ALL OF A SUDDEN
ketahtawen *pc* all of a sudden, suddenly

ALL OVER
mamisiwe- *prev* all over, everything
misiwe *pc* all over, everything, whole

ALL THE TIME
kape- *pre* all the time, all the way, through
mooshak *pc* always, all the time
nahshine *pc* often, all the time, frequently

ALMOST
kekaat *pc* nearly, almost

ALONE
peshiko *vai* be alone, single
peshikwan *vii* be alone, single
kiinehta *pr* you alone, you only
kiinehtawaa *pr* you alone, you only (plural)
kiinehtawint *pr* we alone, us only (inclusive) (E). Also: kiinehtawit (W)
niinehta *pr* I alone, me only
niinehtawint *pr* we alone, us only (exclusive) (E). Also: niinehtawit (W)
wiinehta *pr* him/her alone, him/her only
wiinehtawaa *pr* they alone, them only

ALONG
pimi- *prev* by, past, along, in process of

ALSO
kaye *pc* and, also, too, as for.

ALTHOUGH
mihsawaac *pc* even though, anyhow, although

ALWAYS
mooshak *pc* always, all the time

AMAZING
maamahkaac *pc* amazing, astounding, that is so amazing

AND
ekwa *pc* and, and so, then, and then, wait! please
kaye *pc* and, also, too, as for.
miina *pc* and, again
tahsh *pc* and, but

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ANGRY
kishiwaasi *vai* be angry, be mad

ANIMAL
awiyaashiihsh -ak *na* animal. Also: awiiyaashiihsh
awiyaashiihshiwi *vai* be an animal. Also: awiiyaashiihshiwi

ANNOUNCE
wiintamaake *vai* announce to people (E). Also: wiitamaake (W)

ANYHOW
aana- *pv* in vain, to attempt, effort, anyway, anyhow
mihsawaac *pc* even though, anyhow, although

ANYONE
awiya -k *pr* person, someone, somebody, anyone, anybody. Also: awiiya

ANYTIME
ahpii piko *pc* anytime

ANYWAY
aana- *pv* in vain, to attempt, effort, anyway, anyhow
aanciko *pc* to do anyway regardless of... (E). Also: aaciko (W)

ANYWAYS
eniwehk *pc* anyways, effort, at least, anyhow

ANYWHERE
aanti piko *pc* anywhere

APPRECIATE
minwentaakwan *vii* be fun, liked, appreciated

APRIL
nihki-piihsim *na* goose month, April

ARGUMENTATIVE
aanimisi *vai* be difficult, be argumentative, be hard to get along with, be cranky

ARISE
pasikwii *vai* stand up, arise

ARM
minihk -an *nid* arm

AROUND
tetipaahi *pc* around something
waahkaahi *pc* around something
waahkaahse *vii* go around, be an hour

ARRANGE
onahtoon *vti2* arrange s.t., organize s.t., put s.t. in order, stack s.t. Stem: /onahtoo-/

ARRIVE
takohse *vii* arrive
takohshin *vii* arrive
takoosh *vta* arrive with s.o. Stem: /takooN-/
takopisi *vai* arrive by vehicle

ARROW
opihkwahko *vai* have arrows
pihkwahk -oon *ni* arrow

AS FOR
ke *pc* as for. See: keniin, keniinawint, kekiin, kekiinawint, kekiinawaa, kewiin, kewiinawaa

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

kekiin *pr* you too, as for you. [second person singular personal pronoun]
kekiinawaa *pr* you too, as for you. [second person plural personal pronoun]
kekiinawint *pr* us too, as for us(E). [first person inclusive personal pronoun] .Also: kekiinawit (W)
keniin *pr* me too, as for me. [first person singular personal pronoun]
keniinawint *pr* us too, as for us (E). [first person exclusive personalpronoun] . Also: keniinawit (W)
kewiin *pr* him too, her too, as for him, as for her. [third person singular personal pronoun]
kewiinawaa *pr* them too, as for them. [third person plural personal pronoun]

ASK

kakwecim *vta* ask s.o.

ASTOUNDING

maamahkaac *pc* amazing, astounding, that is so amazing

AT THAT TIME

ahpii *pc* when, at that time

ATTEMPT

aana- *pv* in vain, to attempt, effort, anyway, anyhow
koci- *pv* try to do, to attempt

ATTEND

ishkoonoo *vai* attend school. Also: ishoonoowi, ishkoonii

AUGUST

atihtemini-piihsim *na* ripe berry month, August

AUNT

nisikohs -ak *nad* my (cross-)aunt; my mother-in-law. Stem: /-sikohs-/
nitoosihs -ak *nad* my (parallel-)aunt. Stem: /-toosihs-/

AWAKE

koshkosi *vai* be awake, wake up

AWAKEN

koshkosi *vai* awaken

AWAY

ani- *prev* away from, in progress toward, gradual onset, from that time

AX

ciikahikan -an *ni* ax (W). Also: waakaahkwat (E)
waakaahkwat -oon *ni* ax (E). Also: ciikahikan (W)

BACK

awahsite *pc* beyond, back
otaanaak *pc* back, behind . Also: otaanaank
waawikan -an *ni* back
pimiwane *vai* carry a pack along on one's back

BAD

maci- *pre* bad
maci-miskwaawaa *vii* be a red-coloured sky that predicts bad weather
macihse *vai* have something bad happen, have things go wrong

BAD LOOKING

maci-naakosi *vai* be bad looking

BAD TASTE

macihpo *vta* taste s.o. who tastes bad. Stem: /macihpw-/

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

BAIT
miicimihkancikan -an *ni* bait (E). Also: miicimihkancikan (W)
BALL
toohaan -ak *na* ball
BAND OFFICE
masinahikewikamik -oon *ni* office, band office
BANNOCK
aanahkonaa -k *na* bannock
BARELY
siitawaac *pc* barely, hardly, poorly
BAT
opihkwanaaciihsh -ak *na* bat
BATH
kisiipiikii *vai* wash oneself, bathe, take a bath
BATHE
kisiipiikii *vai* wash oneself, bathe, take a bath
BAY
waashahaa *vii* be a bay
BE
ahte *vii* be in a certain place
api *vai* be in a certain place, sit, be at home
ayaa *vai* be, be there
takwan *vii* be there, exist
BEADED ARTICLE
miikihsikwaahson -an *ni* beaded article
BEAR
mahkwa -k *na* bear
mahkoonhs -ak *na* bear cub (E). Also: mahkoohs (W)
BEARD
miihshitoone *vai* have a beard
BEAVER
amihk -wak *na* beaver
amihko-wanihikan -an *ni* trap for beaver. Also: amihko-wanihiikan
amihko-wiiyaahs *ni* beaver meat
amihkohkonim *ni* beaver dam
BED
nipewin -an *ni* bed
kawihshimo *vai* lie down, go to bed
BEE
aamoo -k *na* bee
BEER
shinkopiiwaapoo *ni* beer (E). Also: shikopiiwaapoo (W)
BEFORE
mwaye- *prev* before. Usually e-mwaye-
BEGIN
maacii- *prev* start, begin

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

BEHAVE
waahkamisi *vai* behave
BEHIND
otaanaank *pc* back, behind (E). Also: otaanaak (W)
BEING
ayahaa -k *na* that being, person, or animate thing. Also: ehaa, ahaa
BELIEVE
tepwehtam *vai2* believe, agree, go ahead with something (what someone says to do)
tepwehtan *vti* believe s.t., agree with s.t., go ahead with something (what someone says to do)
tepwehtaw *vta* believe in s.o., agree with s.o., go ahead with something (what someone says to do)
BELONGINGS
tipencikewin -an *ni* property, belongings, family
BELT
kihcipison -an *ni* belt
BENEATH
shiipaa- *pren* beneath
shiipaahi *pc* beneath something
BESIDE
naaniyahii *pc* beside something
BETTER
mino-ayaawamaciho *vai* feel well, feel better
BEYOND
awahsite *pc* beyond, back
BICYCLE
tihtipwepishkikan -ak *na* bicycle
BIG
ahpiihcikini *vai* be a certain size. Also: apiihcikini
kihci- *pre* big, great, very
mintito *vai* be big (E). Also: mitito (W)
maamihcaashkaa *vii* be big waves
mihshikamaa *vii* be a big lake
BIRCHBARK
wiikwaahs -an *ni* birchbark
BIRCHBARK BASKET
wiikwemot -an *ni* birchbark basket
BIRD
pinehshiinsh -ak *na* bird (E). Also: pinehshiish (W)
BLACK
mahkatewaa *vii* be black
mahkatewisi *vai* be black
BLACK HAIR
mahkatewaanihkwe *vai* have black hair
BLAME
anaamenim *vta* suspect s.o., blame s.o.
anaamentan *vti* suspect s.t., blame s.t.

Nakehda University Faculty of Education

BLANKET
waapoyaan -an *ni* blanket. Also: waapiyaan

BLANKET CRADLE
memepison -an *ni* swing, blanket cradle

BLOUSE
pihkwan -an *ni* blouse

BLOW
kiiweyaahsin *vii* return through air, blow back
oncinowe *vii* the wind blows from a certain direction (E). Also: ocinowe (W)
pootaanitiso *vai* blow on oneself

BLUE
oshaawashkosi *vai* be blue
oshaawashkwaa *vii* be blue

BOAT
ciimaan -an *ni* canoe, boat
ociimaani *vai* have a boat, have s.t. as one's boat

BODY
miyaw -an *nid* body. Stem: /-yaw-/. Also: miiyaw. Stem: /-iiyaw-/

BOG
mashkiik -oon *ni* muskeg, bog, swamp

BOILED
iskaaciwaso *vai* be boiled dry
iskaaciwate *vii* be boiled dry

BOOK
masinahikan -an *ni* book, document, paper, letter, newspaper

BORED
shikatentam *vai2* be bored, be lonely, be homesick, be sad

BORING
macentaakwan *vii* be dull, boring

BORROW
masinahike *vai* write, borrow, get credit
masinahamaw *vta* write to or for s.o., owe to s.o., borrow from s.o.

BOSS
okimaa -k *na* boss, manager

BOTHER
maanencike *vai* disobey, bother things, get into trouble

BOW
ahcaap -iik *na* bow

BOX
mihtikowash -an *ni* suitcase, wooden box
niimaawiniwash -an *ni* provisions box or container

BOY
naapenhs -ak *na* boy (E). Also: naapehs (W)

BRAVE
soonkitehe *vai* be brave (E). Also: sookitehe (W)

BREAD
pahkweshikan *na* flour, bread

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

piihswe-aanahkonaa -k *na* bread (loaf)

BREAK

piikohse *vii* get broken, break down, break by itself

piikohsitoon *vti2* break s.t. by dropping. Stem: /piikohsitoo-/

BREAK DOWN

piikohse *vii* get broken, break down, break by itself

BREAK OUT

piikohse *vai* break out in a rash or pimples, have a blow out

BREAK UP

maacihtan *vii* be ice breaking up

maacihtan *vii* ice break up

BREAKFAST

kekishepaanehkwe *vai* have breakfast

BREAST

coocoohsh -ak *na* breast

BRIDGE

aashokan -ak *na* bridge

BRING

piiciwish *vta* bring s.o. Stem: /piiciwiN-/. Also: piish

piish *vta* bring s.o. Stem: /piiN-/. Also: piiciwish

piitoon *vti2* bring s.t. Stem: /pitoo-/

BROKEN

piikoshkaa *vai/ii* be broken

BROOM

wepahikan -an *ni* broom

BROTHER

niciimic -ak *nad* my younger brother or sister, my younger sibling. Stem: /-ciimic-/

nishtehs -ak *nad* my older brother.Stem: /-shtehs-/

nitawemaa -k *nad* my (man's) sister, my (woman's) brother. Stem: /-tawemaa-/

niicihkiwesi -wak *nad* my (man's) brother. Stem: /-iicihkiwesiw-/

BROTHER-IN-LAW

niihtaawahs -ak *nad* my (man's) brother-in-law. Stem: /-iihtaawahs-/. Also: niihtaawihs

BROWN

osaawisi *vai* be brown, yellow

BROWN HAIR

osaawaanihkwe *vai* have brown hair

BUG

manicoohsh -ak *na* bug, insect

BUILD

waahkaahike *vai* build the house

pootawe *vai* make or build up a fire

BUILT

oshihcikaate *vii* be made, be built, be processed

BURN

caakisan *vti* burn s.t.

caakiso *vai* be lit, be on fire, have one's house on fire, burn up, be burned up

caakiso *vta* burn s.o. up. Stem: /caakisw-/

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

caakite *vii* burn up, be burned up

BUSH

noohpimink *pc* in the bush, inland (E). Also: noohpimik (W)

BUSY

ontamiihke *vai* be busy (E). Also: otamiihke (W)

ontamihse *vai* get busy (E). Also: otamihse (W)

BUSY AT

ontami- *prev* busy at (E). Also: otami- (W)

BUT

tahsh *pc* and, but

BUTTER

pwatan *ni* butter

BUTTERFLY

memenkwe -k *na* butterfly (E). Also: memekwe (W)

BUY

ataawe *vai* to buy (s.t.)

maniwaahkaahikane *vai* buy a new house

BY

naani- *pren* near, by

pimi- *prev* by, past, along, in process of

ciikic *pc* by, close to, near to

CALENDAR

piihsimoo-masinahikan -an *ni* calendar

CALL

kanoosh *vta* call, address, speak to s.o. Stem: /kanooN-/

ishinihkaaso *vai* be called or named a certain way. IC> eshinihkaaso=

ishinihkaate *vii* be called or named a certain way. IC> eshinihkaate=

kanootan *vti* call s.t., address s.t., speak to s.t.

CALM

anwaahtin *vii* be calm (not windy)

anwaahtinikamin *vii* be a nice and calm body of water

CAMERA

cahkaahtehsicikan -an *ni* camera

CAMP

kapehshiwin -an *ni* camp, campsite, hotel room

CAMPFIRE

pootawaan -an *ni* campfire, fire

CAN DO

kashkihi *vta* be able to manage, can do to s.o.; let s.o. go. Stem: /kashkih-/

nihtaa- *prev* can do, skilled at, know how

CANOE

ciimaan -an *ni* canoe, boat

CAPTURE

kaahcitin *vta* catch s.o., capture s.o.

CAR

otaapaan -ak *na* skidoo, car

CAREFULLY

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

pehkaac *pc* slowly, carefully
payahtak *pc* very carefully

CARELESSLY
tepinaahk *pc* carelessly

CARIBOU
atihk -wak *na* caribou
atihko-wiiyaahs *ni* caribou meat

CARROT
ohkaataahk -wak *na* carrot

CARRY
piminike *vai* carry things along on one's shoulder
pimiwane *vai* carry a pack along on one's back
pimiwitoon *vti2* carry s.t. along, carry s.t. by. Stem: /pimiwitoo-/
pimoocike *vai* carry things

CARRY AWAY
maaciiwicikaate *vii* be taken away, be carried away
maaciiyaahoote *vii* be carried away on the waves

CARRY FROM
onciwitoon *vti2* carry s.t. from a certain place. Stem: /onciwitoo-/ (E). Also: ociwitoon (W) Stem: /ociwitoo-/

CATCH
kaahcitin *vta* catch s.o., capture s.o.

CAUSE
onci- *prev* from, cause (E). IC: wenci-. Also: oci- (W) IC: weci-

CAUSE PROBLEMS
papiikonike *vai* fumble things, cause problems

CEASE
pooni- *prev* stop, cease, quit

CENTER
nenaawi- *pren* center of, middle of

CERTAINLY
kehcinaac *pc* certainly, for sure

CHAIR
tehsapiwin -an *ni* chair. Also: tehsapowin

CHANCE
anihshaa *pc* by chance, at the last minute

CHARGE
tipaahkon *vta* judge s.o. punish s.o., charge s.o.

CHECK
naaciwanihikane *vai* go to check traps. Also: naaciwanihiikane
naatakwe *vai* go to check snares
naatahsapii *vai* get one's net, check one's net

CHECK UP
memecikaahcike *vai* examine things, check up on things
memecikaayaapantan *vti* examine s.t., investigate s.t., check up on s.t. (by looking) (E). Also: memecikaayaapatan (W)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

CHEEK
manoway -ak *nad* cheek. Stem: /-anoway-/

CHEST
waahkikan -an *ni* chest

CHIEF
okimaahkaan -ak *na* chief

CHILD
awaashihsh -ak *na* child
awaashihshiiwi *vai* be a child

CHIN
mitaamihkan -an *nid* chin. Stem: /-taamihkan-/

CHISEL
eshkan -an *ni* ice chisel

CHOOSE
otaahpinan *vti* choose s.t., accept s.t., take s.t., pick s.t.
otaahpinikaate *vii* be chosen, be taken, be accepted, be picked

CHURCH
ayamihewikamik -oon *ni* church

CLEAN
kaahsiinitiso *vai* clean oneself
payahkinan *vti* clean s.t.
kaahsiin *vta* wipe s.o., clean s.o., wash s.o.
kaahsiinan *vti* wipe s.t., clean s.t., wash s.t.
payehkinike *vai* clean things

CLEAR SKY
waahshehkwan *vii* the sky is clear

CLEAR-CUT AREA
pashkwatahikan -an *ni* clear-cut area

CLIMB
naashaantawe -wak *vai* climb down a tree (E). Also: naashaatawe (W)
tiihtipaantawe -wak *vai* climb down a ladder or stairs (E). Also:tiihtipaatwe (W)
ihkwaantawe *vai* climb up a ladder or stairs (E). Also: ihkwaatawe (W)

CLIMB A HILL
ihkwaamaciwe *vai* climb a hill

CLOCK
piihsimohkaan -ak *na* clock

CLOSE
pehshonc *pc* close, near (E). Also: pehshoc (W)
ciikic *pc* by, close to, near to
pehshotaahkoomaakan -ak *na* close relation

CLOSED
kipihsin *vii* be closed

CLOUD
wahkwi -in *ni* cloud. Also: wahko

CLOUDY
papiikwaanahkwan *ni* cloudy

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

CO-WORKER
wiitanohkiimaakan -ak *na* co-worker
COAT
makoot -an or -ayan *ni* coat, dress, skirt, jacket
COFFIN
ciipayi-mihtikowash -an *ni* coffin
COLD
kawaci *vai* be cold (of a person)
tahkaayaa *vii* be cold (weather)
COMB
pinaahkwaan -an *ni* comb
COMB HAIR
pinaahkweho *vai* comb one's hair
COME
naakosi *vai* be visible, show up (pi-naakosi be seen coming this way)
piishaa *vai* come here. Also: pi-ishaa
COME FROM
oncii *vai* come from a certain place (E). IC: wencii=. Also: ocii (W) IC: wecii=
COME IN
piintike *vai* enter, go in, come in (E). Also: piitike (W)
COMPANION
wiiciiwaakan -ak *na* spouse, companion
COMPLETED
ishkwaa- *prev* after, completed
COMPLICATED
aanimihse *vai/ii* have difficulties, run into problems, get complicated
CONCERNED
mikoshkaatenim *vta* worry about s.o., be concerned about s.o.
mikoshkaatentam *vai2* worry, be concerned, wonder
mikoshkaatentan *vti* worry about s.t., be concerned about s.t.
CONSIDER
maamitonenim *vta* think about s.o., consider s.o.
maamitonentan *vti* think about s.t., consider s.t.
CONTEST
mawinehike *vai* compete, take part in a contest
COOK
kiishitepo *vai* cook
kiishisan *vti* cook s.t., done
kiishite *vii* be cooked, done
COOKED DONE
kiishiso *vai* be cooked done
CORPSE
ciipay -ak *na* ghost, corpse
CORRECT
kwayahk *pc* right, straight, correct(ly), proper(ly)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

COST SO MUCH

inankiso *vai* cost so much, have such a price, be such a date of the month (E). Also: inakiso (W)

inankite *vii* cost so much, have such a price (E). Also: inakite (W)

COUGH

osohsotam *vai2* cough

COULD

ci- *prev* that, will, would, could, should [conjunct future and modal]

ci-kii- *prev* could. ci- + kii- 'potential'

ke- *prev* will, should, should, could [Changed future and modal]

taa- *prev* would, could, should, ought, can [modal]

COUSIN

nicaahkohsh -ak *nad* my (woman's) (female cross-)cousin, my (woman's) sister-in-law. Stem: /-caahkohsh-/

ninahaankanihkwem -ak *nad* my daughter-in-law, my (cross-) niece (E). Stem: /-nahaankanihkwem-/ . Also: ninahaakanihkwem (W)

niicimohsh -ak *nad* my (cross-)cousin of opposite sex). Stem: /-iicimohsh-/

niinim -ook *nad* my (cross-)cousin of opposite sex), my sibling-in-law of opposite sex. Stem: /-iinimw-/

niicimohsh -ak *nad* my cousin (cross cousin of opposite sex). Stem:/iicimohsh-/

COVER

akwanahan *vti* cover s.t.

akwanaho *vta* cover s.o. Stem: /akwanahw-/

nihkaakone *vai/ii* be covered with snow

CRADLEBOARD

tihkinaakan -an *ni* cradleboard

CRANKY

aanimisi *vai* be difficult, be argumentative, be hard to get along with, be cranky

CRAWL

pimitaacimo *vai* crawl along, crawl by

CREDIT

masinahike *vai* write, borrow, get credit

CRY

mawi *vai* cry

CUB

mahkoonhs -ak *na* bear cub (E). Also: mahkoohs (W)

CUP

minihkwaakan -an *ni* cup

CUPBOARD

kapat -an *ni* cupboard

CURLY HAIR

tihtipanaweyaanihkwe *vai* have curly hair

CURRENT

pimaapoote *vii* drift along on the current

CUT

maacisho *vta* cut s.o. Stem: /maacishw-/

pahkon *vta* skin s.o., cut pelt off s.o.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

kiishkipoocike *vai* saw things, cut things with the saw

CUTE

wawiyasinaakosi *vai* look cute, look funny

DAM

ohkonim *ni* dam

DANCE

niimi *vai* dance

naaniimi *vai* keep on dancing. Reduplication of: niimi

DARK

kashkii-tipihkaa *vii* be pitch dark

kashkii-tipihkanihse *vii* get dark quickly (at night)

DAUGHTER

nitaanihs -ak *nad* my daughter. Stem: /-taanihs-/

DAUGHTER-IN-LAW

ninahaankanihkwem -ak *nad* my daughter-in-law, my (cross-)niece. Stem: /-nahaankanihkwem-/ (E). Also: ninahaakanihkwem (W)

DAWN

waapan *vii* be morning, be dawn, be tomorrow

mino-miskwaawaa *vii* be a red-coloured sky that predicts good or badweather

miskwaawaa *vii* be a red-coloured sky at dawn or after sunset

DAY

kiishikaa *vii* be day

mino-kiishikaa *vii* be a nice day

kiishik *ni* sky, day

DAY AFTER TOMORROW

awahsiwaapank *pc* day after tomorrow (E). Also: awahsiwaapak(W)

DAY BEFORE YESTERDAY

awahsinaako *pc* day before yesterday

DEAD

nipo *vai* die, be dead

DECEMBER

makohshe-kiishikani-piihsim *na* feast day month, December

DEEP

kiishkaayawaa *vii* be deep water

DEER

waawaashkehshi -wak *na* deer

DELAY

pwaatawi- *pv* delayed, late

DESIRABLE

nantawentaakosi *vai* be wanted, be desirable (E). Also: natawentaakosi (W).

DIE

nipo *vai* die, be dead

pooni-pimaatisi *vai* die

DIFFERENT

pahkaan *pc* different

DIFFICULT

aaniman *vii* be difficult, be hard

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

aanimisi *vai* be difficult, be argumentative, be hard to get along with, be cranky

DIFFICULTY

aanimihse *vai/ii* have difficulties, run into problems, get complicated

DIRECTION

aanti nehke *pc* whereabouts, which direction

inehke *pc* in direction of

DIRTY

nipaaciyaa *vii* be dirty, slimy

DISAPPEAR

aahte- *pv* fade away, disappear

wenipan *pc* be gone, disappear

DISH

onaakan -an *ni* dish, plate

DISOBEY

maanencike *vai* disobey, bother things, get into trouble

DISTANT

waahsa *pc* far, distant

DIVE

kookii *vai* dive

DO

ayintootam *vai2* do something (E). Reduplication of: tootam. Also: ayitootam (W)

tootam *vai2* do in a certain way

aanciko *pc* to do anyway regardless of... (E). Also: aaciko (W)

koci- *pv* try to do, to attempt

tashiiwihtoo *vai* do things in a certain location

tootaaso *vai* do so to oneself

tootan *vti* do s.t. so, do so to s.t., treat s.t. so

tootaw *vta* do so to s.o., treat s.o. so

DO BAD

macihcike *vai* do something bad, get into trouble

mamaani *vai* do something bad, make mistakes

DOCTOR

mashkihkiiwinini -wak *na* medicine person, doctor

DOCUMENT

masinahikan -an *ni* book, document, paper, letter, newspaper

DOG

animohsh -ak *na* dog

nitayihsh -ak *nad* my dog. Stem: /-tayihsh-/

DON'T

ikaawin *pc* don't . Also: ekaawin

DON'T KNOW

nahke piko *pc* I don't know

DONE

kiishihtoon *vti2* finish s.t., be done with s.t. Stem: /kiishihtoo-/

DOOR

ishkwaantem -an *ni* door (E). Also: ishkwaatem (W)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

DOWN THE SHORE
naanew *pc* down the shore, on the shore
DRESS
pihtaahpiso *vai* get dressed. Also: pohtaahpiso
DRIFT
pimaahoote *vii* drift along on the waves
pimaapoote *vii* drift along on the current
DRINK
minihkwe *vai* drink, drink s.t.
minihkwewin -an *ni* drink, booze
DRIVE
patotepiso *vai* drive off the road
pimipiso *vai* drive along, drive by
DRIVE OFF
maaciipiso *vai* set out by vehicle, speed off, drive off
DROP
paninan *vti* drop s.t. from hand
piikohsitoon *vti2* break s.t. by dropping. Stem: /piikohsitoo-/
DROWN
nihsaapaawe *vai* drown
DRUG
mashkihki -in *ni* medicine, drug
DRUM
matwehikan -ak *na* drum
DRUMMING
matwehike *vai* be drumming
DRY
paahso *vta* dry s.o. (by heat). Stem: /paahsw-/
iskaaciwaso *vai* be boiled dry
iskaaciwate *vii* be boiled dry
DUCK
shiihshiip -ak *na* duck
DUCKS
nooncihshipe *vai* hunt ducks (E). Also: noocihshipe (W)
DURING
mekwaac *pc* while, during, at the (same) time, now
EAR
mihtawak -an *nid* ear. Stem: /-htawak-/
EASILY
watakami- *pv* easily
EAST
waapanonk *pc* east (E). Also: waapanok (W)
EAT
amo *vta* eat s.o. Stem: /amw-/
miicin *vti3* eat s.t. Stem: /miici-/
tepi-wiihsini *vai* have enough to eat
wiihsini *vai* eat

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

EFFORT
aana- *pv* in vain, to attempt, effort, anyway, anyhow
enikohk *pc* with more effort, harder

EGG
waaw -an *ni* egg

EIGHT
ayinaanew *nu* eight. Also: enaanew
ayinaanewinoon *vii* be eight. Stem: /ayinaanewin-/
ayinaanewiwak *vai* be eight. Stem: /ayinaanewi-/

EIGHT DOLLARS
ayinaanewaapihk *na* eight dollars

EIGHTEEN
ayinaanewishaap *nu* eighteen

EIGHTEEN DOLLARS
ayinaanewishaap tahsiwaapihk *na* eighteen dollars

EIGHTY
ayinaanemitana *nu* eighty

ELBOW
mitooskwan -an *nid* elbow. Stem: /-tooskwan-/

ELDER
kihci-ayaa *na* elder
niici-kihcihaa -k *nad* my fellow elder. Stem:/-iici-kihcihaa-/
weshkaci-anihshinini *na* old-timer, old Indian person, elder

ELEVEN
peshikoshaap *nu* eleven, (decade number) plus one

ELEVEN DOLLARS
peshikoshaap tahsiwaapihk *na* eleven dollars

ELSE
maashkooc *pc* perhaps, maybe, or else

EMBARK
poosi *vai* get on, embark

EMPHATIC
hsa *pc* emphatic
ota *pc* emphatic
iko *pc* emphatic

EMPLOYMENT
anohkiiwin -an *ni* job, employment, work

END
ishkwaayaac *pc* end, last, ultimate

ENGINE
pimipanihcikan -an *ni* engine, motor, machine

ENGLISH
wemihtikooshiimo *vai* speak English

ENJOY EATING
minwancike *vai* eat well, enjoy eating (E). Also: minwacike (W)

ENJOYABLE
minwentaakwan *vii* be enjoyable, be liked, fun, be a good time

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ENOUGH
tepi- *prev* enough, sufficient
tepihse *vai/ii* be enough of s.t., be sufficient

ENTER
piintike *vai* enter, go in, come in (E). Also: piitike (W)

ENTIRELY
mitoni *pc* really, entirely so, completely. Also: tetako

ENTIRELY SO
mitoni *pc* really, entirely so

EQUIPMENT
aapacihcikan -an *ni* tool, useful thing, equipment

EUROPE
akaamahkiink *pc* in Europe, abroad

EVEN
mihsawaac *pc* even though, anyhow, although

EVENING
eni-tipihkaak *vii* last evening. IC < ani-tipihkaa

EVENT IS OVER
ishkwaahkamikan *vii* event is over

EVENTUALLY
keka *pc* finally, eventually

EVER
wiihkaa *pc* ever

EVERGREEN
shinkop -iik *na* evergreen tree, spruce (E). Also: shikop (W)

EVERY
kahkina *pc* all, every
tahso- *pre* every, a certain number

EVERY SUMMER
tahso-niipin *pc* every summer

EVERYTHING
mamisiwe- *prev* all over, everything
misiwe *pc* all over, everything, whole

EVIDENTLY
ohsha *pc* [emphatic particle] Also: hsha

EX-SPOUSE
nikayaashim -ak *nad* my ex-spouse. Stem: /-kayaashim-/

EXACTLY
mayaam *pc* exactly

EXAMINE
memecikaahcike *vai* examine things, check up on things
memecikaayaapantan *vti* examine s.t., investigate s.t., check up on s.t. (by looking) (E). Also: memecikaayaapatan (W)

EXCESSIVE
onsaam *pc* too much, extreme, excessive (E). Also: osaam (W)

EXCHANGE
miishkoc *pc* in exchange, instead of, in turn

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

EXHAUSTED
caakihse *vai/ii* get used up, run out, be exhausted
EXIST
takwan *vii* be there, exist
EXIT
saakaham *vai2* go out, exit
EXPECTED
kaye piko *pc* likely, to be expected, probably
EXTENSIVELY
naahpic *pc* really, very, to a high degree, extensively
EXTENT
ahpiihci- *prev* to a certain extent. Also: apiihci-
awahshime *pc* to greater extent, more and more
EXTREME
osaam *pc* too much, extreme, excessive
wiihsakentam *vai2* be extremely hurt, feel extreme pain
EXTREMELY
tetako *pc* extremely, totally, very
wiihsakentam *vai2* be extremely hurt, feel extreme pain
EYE
micaap -an *nid* eye. Stem: /-caap-/
FADE
aahte- *pv* fade away, disappear
FALL
pankihsin *vii* fall (E). Also: pakihsin (W)
FALL/AUTUMN
takwaakin *vii* be fall, be autumn
FAR
waahsa *pc* far, distant
ahko- *prev* as far as, as long as, a certain length
FAR AWAY
niikate *pc* a ways off, far away
FAST
kinipi- *pv* fast
kinipii *vai* hurry, be quick, be fast
FAT
aancipo *vai* be fat, be chubby (E). Also: aacipo (W)
FATHER
nitaataa -mak *nad* my father. Stem: /-taataa(m)-/
FATHER-IN-LAW
nishihsesh -ak *nad* my (cross-)uncle, my father-in-law. Stem: /-shihsesh-/
FEAR
kohsi *vta* fear s.o. Stem: /kohs-/
FEAST
makohshe *vai* feast, give a feast
makohshewin -an *ni* feast

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

FEATHER
miinkwan -ak *na* feather. Also: miikwan
FEBRUARY
kaa-tahkwekisoc piihsim *na-pt* shorter month, February
FEEL
mino-ayaawamaciho *vai* feel well, feel better
wiihsakentam *vai2* be extremely hurt, feel extreme pain
FELLOW
niici-kihcihaa -k *nad* my fellow elder. Stem:/-iici-kihcihaa-/
niici-naape -wak *nad* my fellow man. Stem: /-iici-naapew-/
niitihkwe -wak *nad* my fellow woman. Stem: /-iitihkwew-/
FEMALE
ihkwe -wak *na* woman, female
FETCH
naasihkan *vti* fetch s.t., get s.t.
naaci- *pv* get, fetch, go for
FEW
aanta *pc* some, few
FIFTEEN
niyaananoshaap *nu* fifteen. Also: niyaanoshaap
FIFTEEN DOLLARS
niyaananoshaap tahsiwaapihk *na* fifteen dollars
FIFTY
niyaananomitana *nu* fifty. Also: niyaanomitana
FIGHT
mikaash *vta* fight s.o. Stem: /miikaaN-/
miikaaso *vai* fight
miikaasowin -an *ni* fight, violence. Also: miikaatiwin
miikaatan *vti* fight s.t.
FILLED UP
shaakashkine *vii* be filled up, be full. Also: mooshkine
FINALLY
keka *pc* finally, eventually
FINALLY WHEN
ahpii ahpin *pc* finally when
FIND
mihkaw *vta* find s.o.
mihkan *vti* find s.t.
FINGER
niihsiikinincaan -an *ni* finger
FINGERNAIL
mashkash -iik *nad* fingernail/toenail. Stem: /-ashkash-/
FINISH
kiishihi *vta* finish s.o. Stem: /kiishih-/
kiishihtoon *vti2* finish s.t., be done with s.t. Stem: /kiishihtoo-/
FIRE
pootawe *vai* make or build up a fire

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

caakiso *vai* be lit, be on fire, have one's house on fire, burn up, be burned up
sahkiso *vai* be lit, be on fire, have one's house on fire
sahkite *vii* be lit, be on fire

FIREWOOD

mihsan *ni* firewood. Plural of: mihsi
mihsi *ni* stick of firewood. Plural: mihsan 'firewood'
manihse *vai* get firewood

FIRST

kiinishtam *pr* you next, you first. [second person personal pronoun]. Also: niinihtam
nishtam *pc* first, next
niinishtam *pr* me next, me first. [first person singular pronoun]. Also: niinihtam
wiinishtam *pr* him first, her first, him next, her next. [third person singular personal pronoun]. Also: wiinihtam

FISH

kinooshe -k *na* fish
pakitahwe *vai* fish with a net, set a net

FISH WITH HOOK

kwaashkwepicike *vai* fish with a hook and a line
kwaashkwepine *vai* fish with a hook and a line

FISHHOOK

kwaashkwepicikan -ak *na* fishhook

FISHING GEAR

nooci-kinooshewi-aapacihcikan *ni* fishing gear

FIVE

niyaanan *nu* five
niyaananiwak *vai* be five. Stem: /niyaanani-/
niyaananoon *vii* be five. Stem: /niyaanan-/

FIVE CENTS

niyaanan piiwaapihkohsh -ak *na* five cents. Also: niyaanan piiwaapihkoonhsh

FIVE DOLLAR BILL

niyaananoopiihikan -ak *na* five dollar bill

FIVE DOLLARS

niyaananwaapihk *na* five dollars. Also: niyaananwaapihk

FIVE TIMES

niyaananwaa *pc* five times

FIVE YEARS

niyaanowahki or niyaanino-ahki *pc* five years

FIX

waweshihi *vta* fix s.o. Stem: /waweshih-/
waweshihtoon *vti2* fix s.t., repair s.t. Stem: /waweshihtoo-/

FLASH

waawaahte *vii* flash (light), Northern Lights

FLOAT

akoncin *vai* float, soak (E). Also: akocin (W)
akontin *vii* float, soak (E). Also: akotin (W)

FLOOD

mooshkahan *vii* flood, be high water

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

FLOOR
wepahike *vai* sweep the floor
FLOUR
pahkweshikan *na* flour
FLOW
ishiciwan *vii* flow in a certain direction, flow so
FLOW SWIFTLY
kishiiciwan -oon *vii* flow swiftly
FLY
ishihse *vai* fly in a certain direction
maaciihse *vai/ii* fly off (as a bird), starts (as a motor)
pimakoote *vii* fly along, fly by
pimihse *vai* fly along, fly by (of a bird)
FLY (INSECT)
nanaantawi-oociiwe *vai* go about looking for flies (E). Also: nanaatawi-oociiwe (W)
oocii -k *na* fly
FLY BACK
kiiwekoote *vii* fly back
FOGGED IN
kashkawan *vii* be misted over, be fogged in
FOOD
miicim *ni* food
ahshanke *vai* give food to people (E). Also: ahshake (W)
FOOT
misit -an *nid* foot. Stem: /-sit-/
FOREHEAD
mikanakaap -an *nid* forehead. Stem: /-kanakaap-/
FOREST
pihkwatahkamik *ni* forest, wilderness
FORGET
waniihkenotan *vti* forget s.t.
waniihkenotaw *vta* forget s.o.
FORK
ciishtahikan -an *ni* fork. Also: ciishtahipon
FORMER
kayaash *pc* originally, long ago, former
FORTY
niimitana *nu* forty
FOUR
niiwin *nu* four
niiwinoon *vii* be four. Stem: /niiwin-/
niiwiwak *vai* be four. Stem: /niiwi-/
FOUR DOLLARS
niiwaapihk *na* four dollars
FOUR TIMES
niiwaa *pc* four times

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

FOURTEEN
niiwishaap *nu* fourteen, (decade number) plus four
FOURTEEN DOLLARS
niiwishaap tahsiwaapihk *na* fourteen dollars
FOX
mahkehshi -wak *na* fox. Also: waakohsh
waakohsh -ak *na* fox. Also: mahkehshi -wak
FREEZE
kashkatin *vii* freeze up
FREQUENT
nahshine *pc* often, all the time, frequently
FRIDAY
pahkweshikani-kiishikaa *vii* flour day, be Friday
FROG
omakahkii -k *na* frog
FROM
onci *pc* from (E). Also: ocI (W)
onci- *prev* from, cause (E). IC: wenci-. Also: oci- (W)IC: weci-
FROZEN
aahkwatin *vii* be frozen up, be frozen over
FROZEN SOLID
mashkwaakwatin *vii* be frozen solid
FRYING PAN
paanahkihk -wak *na* frying pan
FUMBLE
papiikonike *vai* fumble things, cause problems
FUN
minwentaakwan *vii* be fun, be liked, be appreciated
FUNNY
wawiyasinaakosi *vai* look cute, look funny
wawiyatisiike *vai* do funny things
FUR
ahtay -ak *na* pelt, fur for trade
FUTURE
ta- *prev* will [future tense in independent with no personal prefix]
GARAGE
waweshahitaapaanewikamik -oon *ni* garage
GAS
pimite *ni* lard, grease, fuel oil, gas
GAS STATION
kaahsaniiwikamik -oon *ni* gas station
GASOLINE
kaahsanii *ni* gasoline
GATHER
maawatoonan *vti* gather s.t.
GATHERING
maawacihitowin *ni* gathering, meeting

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

GET
naasihkan *vti* get s.t., fetch s.t.
naaci- *pv* get, fetch, go for

GET BY BOAT
naataham *vai2* go to get by boat
naatahan *vti* go to get s.t. by boat

GET NET
naatahsapii *vai* get one's net, check one's net

GET OFF
kapaa *vai* get off, disembark

GET ON
poosi *vai* get on, embark
poosihi *vta* get on board Stem: /poosih-/

GET READY
kwayaancii *vai* get ready, prepare (E). Also: kwayaacii (W)

GET UP
wanishkaa *vai* get up in the morning

GET WATER
naatahipii *vai* get water, go for water

GHOST
ciipay -ak *na* ghost, corpse

GIRL
ihkwesenhs -ak *na* girl (E). Also: ihkwesehs (W)

GIVE
miish *vta* give (s.t.) to s.o. Stem: /miiN-/
ahshanke *vai* give food to people (E). Also: ahshake (W)

GO
aacaan *pc* go!
ishaa *vai* go to a certain place
maacaa *vai* go, leave
papaami-ishaamakan *vii* go about, go there
pimitaapii *vai* go along by sled or sleigh
waahkaahse *vii* go around, be an hour

GO AHEAD
tepwehtam *vai2* believe, agree, go ahead with something (what someone says to do)
tepwehtan *vti* believe s.t., agree with s.t., go ahead with something (what someone says to do)
tepwehtaw *vta* believe in s.o., agree with s.o., go ahead with something (what some one says to do)

GO AROUND
nanaantawi- *prev* seek, go around for (E). Reduplication of: nantawi-, ntawi- . Also: nanaatawi- (W)

GO AWAY
ani-naakosi *vai* be seen going away (from the speaker)
niikateshkaa *vai* go away

GO BACK
kiiwe- *prev* returning, going home, going back

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

GO BACKWARDS
ashepite *vii* go backwards
GO DOWNHILL
tiihtipaamaciwe *vai* go downhill
GO FOR
naaci- *pv* get, fetch, go for
GO FOR FOOD
naacimiicime *vai* go for food
GO HOME
kiiwe *vai* go home, return
kiiwe- *prev* returning, going home, going back
GO IN
piintike *vai* enter, go in, come in (E). Also: piitike (W)
GO OUT
saakaham *vai2* go out, exit
GO TO DO
nintawi- *prev* go to do (E). Also: nantawi-, ntawi- (E). Also: nitawi-, natawi-, ntawi- (W)
GO TO SHORE
naasipii *vai* go to the shore, go to the water
GO UP
ompipaniho *vai* go up in a hurry (E). Also: opipanihoo, opipaniho (W)
GO WITH
wiiciiw *vta* go with s.o., accompany s.o.
GOING AWAY
maacaamakan -oon *vii* go away, leave
GONE
inenti *vai* be gone so long, be absent so long (E). Also: ineti (W)
ontenti *vai* be absent, be gone (E). Also: oteti (W)
wenipan *pc* be gone, disappear
GOOD
mino- *pre* nice, good
nihtaawanohkii *vai* work well, be a good worker
GOOD LOOKING
takahkinaakosi *vai* be good looking, handsome
GOOD TASTE
minohpitan *vti* like taste of s.t.
minohpo *vta* like taste of s.o. Stem: /minohpw-/
GOOSE
nihka -k *na* Canada goose
wehwe -k *na* snow goose
wehwew -ak *na* white goose
GRAB
manipahi *vta* grab s.o., pick s.o. up quickly. Stem: /manipah-/
GRANDCHILD
noosihs -ak *nad* my grandchild. Stem: /-oosihs-/
GRANDFATHER
nimohshoom -ak *nad* my grandfather. Stem: /-mohshoom-/. Also: nimihshoom

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

GRANDMOTHER
noohkom -ak *nad* my grandmother. Stem: /-oohkom-/
GREASE
pimite *ni* lard, grease, fuel oil, gas
GREAT
kihci- *pre* big, great, very
GREATER
awahshime *pc* to greater extent, more and more
GREEN
aniipiiwaa *vii* be green
aniipiiwisi *vai* be green
GREETING
waaciye *pc* hello! greeting! (also used by some speakers as a farewell)
GREY
waapisahaa *vii* be grey
waapisahisi *vai* be grey
GROUNDHOG
wiinashk -wak *na* groundhog
GUN
paashkisikan -an *ni* gun
HAIR
mipiiway -an *nid* hair. Stem: /-piiway-/
piiway *ni* hair
HALF
aapihta *pc* half
aapihtaa- *prev* half
HALF-DOLLAR
aapihtawaapihk -ook *na* half-dollar
HALL
metawewikamik -oon *ni* recreation hall
HAND
mininc -iin *ni* my hand (E). Stem: /-ninc-/. Also: minic (W). Stem: /-nic-/
waaciye *vai* shake hands
HANG
akoocin *vai* hang, be in the sky (as sun, moon, and stars)
akoote *vii* hang
HANG AROUND
tashiihke *vai* stay there, hang around, live there, play
HAPPEN
ishiwepan *vii* be certain weather, happen in a certain way. IC: eshiwepa=
iti *vai* have such things happen to one
ihkin *vii* happen a certain way, be a certain problem
macihse *vai* have something bad happen, have things go wrong
oncihcihse *vii* be the time of, come to happen, the time has come (E). Also: ocihcihse (W)
HAPPY
minwentam *vai2* be happy, be glad

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

HARD
aanimisi *vai* be difficult, be argumentative, be hard to get along with, be cranky

HARDER
enikohk *pc* with more effort, harder

HARDLY
akaawaac *pc* hardly, scarcely
siitawaac *pc* barely, hardly, poorly

HARE
waapoos -ook *na* snowshoe hare (rabbit)
waapooso-wanihikan -an *ni* trap for snowshoe hare (rabbit)

HAT
ashtotin -an *ni* hat, cap

HAVE
ayaan *vti* have s.t.
ayaaw *vta* have s.o., have permission to use s.o.

HAVE A BOAT
ociimaani *vai* have a boat, have s.t. as one's boat

HAVE ARROWS
opihkwahko *vai* have arrows

HE
kewiin *pr* him too, her too, as for him, as for her [third person singular personal pronoun]
wiin *pr* he, she, him, her [third person singular personal pronoun]
wiinishtam *pr* him first, her first, him next, her next [third person singular personal pronoun]. Also: wiinihtam
wiinehta *pr* him/her alone, him/her only

HEAD
mishtikwaan -an *nid* head. Stem: /-shtikwaan-/

HEAL
natawihiwe -wak *vai* heal people (W). Also: antawihiwe (E)

HEAR
noontaw *vta* hear s.o.(E). Also: nontaw (W)
tanihtaakwan *vii* be heard there

HEAR S.O.
tepihtaw *vta* hear s.o. in the distance
tepihtan *vti* hear s.t. in the distance

HEARD
taniwewitam *vai2* be heard from a certain place

HEART
mitehi -in *nid* heart. Stem: /-tehi-/

HEATER
kishisikanaapihk -oon *ni* heater

HEEL
mitoontan -an *nid* heel (E). Stem: /-toontan-/. Also: mitootan (W). Stem: /-tootan-/

HELLO
pooshoo *pc* hello
waaciye *pc* hello! greeting! (also used by some speakers as a farewell)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

HELP
wiicihi *vta* help s.o. Stem: /wiicih-/

HER
kewiin *pr* him too, her too, as for him, as for her [third person singular personal pronoun]
wiin *pr* he, she, him, her [third person singular personal pronoun]
wiinishtam *pr* him first, her first, him next, her next [third person singular personal pronoun]. Also: wiinihtam
wiinehta *pr* him/her alone, him/her only

HERE
ohomaa *pc* here. Also: homaa
pi- *prev* here, hither, towards

HIDE
kaash *vta* hide s.o., hide s.t. animate. Stem: /kaaN-/
kaatoon *vti2* hide it

HIGH
mooshkahan *vii* flood, be high water

HILL
pihkwaamatinaa -n *ni* hill

HIM
kewiin *pr* him too, her too, as for him, as for her [third person singular personal pronoun]
wiin *pr* he, she, him, her [third person singular personal pronoun]
wiinishtam *pr* him first, her first, him next, her next [third person singular personal pronoun]. Also: wiinihtam
wiinehta *pr* him/her alone, him/her only

HIP
mishiikan -an *nid* hip. Stem: /-shiikan-/

HIT
pahkihteho *vta* hit s.o. /pahkihtehw-/
pahkihtehan *vti* hit s.t., strike s.t.
pihtaho *vta* hit s.o. accidentally using s.t. Stem: /pihtahw-/

HITHER
pi- *prev* here, hither, towards

HOCKEY
pimaahkwepahike *vai* play hockey
pimaahkwepahikewin *ni* hockey

HOLE IN ICE
twaahikan -an *ni* hole in ice
twaahike *vai* make a hole in the ice

HOME
api *vai* be in a certain place, sit, be at home
kiiwe *vai* go home, return

HOMESICK
shikatentam *vai2* be bored, be lonely, be homesick, be sad

HOOK
kwaashkwepicikan -ak *na* fishhook
kwaashkwepish *vta* hook s.o. Stem: /kwaashkwepiN-/

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

HOOKED
kwaashkwepiso *vai* be hooked

HOPE
kaanika *pc* I wonder, I wish, I hope

HOT
kishite *vii* be hot (atmosphere)
kishaakamite *vii* be hot (liquid)

HOUR
waahkaahse *vii* go around, be an hour

HOUSE
maniwaahkaahikane *vai* buy a house
waahkaahikan -an *ni* house

HOW
aan *pc* how, in what manner, why, what. Also: aani, aaniin

HOW MANY
aan tahsin *pc* how many

HOWEVER
shaakooc *pc* however, nevertheless, after all

HOWL
wawoono *vai* howl (of dog, wolf etc.)

HUNDRED
mitaahsomitana *nu* hundred. niishwaa mitaahsomitana 'two hundred', etc.

HUNGRY
paawanii *vai* be skinny, starving, hungry

HUNT
nanaantawaapam *vta* look around for s.o., hunt for s.o. (E). Also:nanaatawaapam (W)
nanaantawaapantan *vti* look around for s.t., hunt for s.t. (E). Also: nanaatawaapatan (W)
nanaantawencike *vai* hunt (E). Also: nanaatawencike (W)
nantawencike *vai* hunt (E). Also: natawencike (W)
nooncihshipe *vai* hunt ducks (E). Also: noocihshipe (W)

HURRY
kinipii *vai* hurry, be quick, be fast

HURRY ABOARD
poosipaniho *vai* hurry aboard. Also: poosipanihoo

HURT
wiihsakentam *vai2* be extremely hurt, feel extreme pain

I
keniin *pr* me too, as for me [first person singular personal pronoun]
niin *pr* I, me [first person singular personal pronoun]
niinishtam *pr* me next, me first [first person singular pronoun]. Also: niinihtam
niinehta *pr* I alone, me only

ICE
mihkwam -iik *na* ice
maacihtan *vii* be ice breaking up
maacihtan *vii* ice break up

ICE BREAK UP
maacihtan *vii* be ice breaking up

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

maacihtan *vii* ice break up

IF

kiishpin *pc* if

ILLNESS

aahkosiwin -an *ni* sickness, illness

IN

ishi- *prev* to or in a certain place, in a certain way. Also: shi-. IC> eshi-

IN PROCESS

pimi- *prev* by, past, along, in process of

IN PROGRESS

ani- *prev* away from, in progress toward, gradual onset, from that time

IN THE WATER

nipiihkaank *pc* in the water (E). Also: nipiihkaak (W)

INDIAN

anihshinaape -k *na* Indian, person

anihshinini -wak *na* Indian, person

anihshininiimo *vai* speak the native language

anihshininiiwihkwe *na* native woman, Indian woman. Also: anihshininiihkwe

INDIAN

weshkaci-anihshinini *na* old-timer, old Indian person, elder

INDOORS

piintikamik *pc* indoors (E). Also: piitikamik (W)

INFORM

kihkentamoosh *vta* inform s.o., let s.o. know. Stem: /kihkentamooN-/

INLAND

noohpimink *pc* in the bush, inland (E) . Also: noohpimik (W)

INSECT

manicoohsh -ak *na* bug, insect

INSIDE

piinci- *pren* inside, into (E). Also: piici- (W)

piinciyahii *pc* inside something (E). Also: piiciyahii (W)

INTO

piinci- *pren* inside, into (E). Also: piinci- (W)

INVESTIGATE

memecikaayaapantan *vti* examine s.t., investigate s.t., check up on s.t. (by looking) (E). Also: memecikaayaapatan (W)

naanaakacihi *vta* investigate s.o., watch for s.o. Stem: /naamaakacih-/

IRON

shooshkwahikan -ak *na* iron

ISLAND

minihtik -oon *ni* island

JACKFISH

cwaapiihsh -ak *na* jackfish. Also: nicwaapiihsh

JAIL

kipaahkwahitiiwikamik -oon *ni* jail

JAM

caam *ni* jam

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

JANUARY
ociimitoo-piihsim *na* kiss month, January. Also: ociimi-kiishikaawi-piihsim

JAY
kwiikwiihs -ak *na* Canada jay. Also: kwiihwiihshi -wak

JOB
anohkiiwin -an *ni* job, employment, work
poonanohkil *vai* quit a job, stop working

JOKINGLY
oncita *pc* purposely, jokingly (E). Also: ocita (W)

JUDGE
tipaahkon *vta* judge s.o. punish s.o., charge s.o.
tipaahkonike *vai* judge things/people, measure things (as something stick-like)

JULY
kiishipakaawi-piihsim *na* leaves are fully grown month, July

JUMP
kwaashkoni *vai* jump
poosikwaashkoni *vai* jump aboard
kicikwaashkoni *vai* jump out

JUNE
saakipaakaawi-piihsim *na* leaves are out month, June

JUST
piko *pc* just. Also: poko

KERCHIEF
naapihkaakan -ak *na* kerchief, scarf

KETTLE
ahkihk -wak -ook *na* pail, kettle
tiiwahkihk -wak -ook *na* kettle, teakettle

KEY
aapihsakahikan -an *ni* key

KILL
nihsi *vta* kill s.o. Stem: /nihs-/
nipahtoon *vti2* kill s.t. Stem: /nipahtoo-/

KIND
toohkaan *pc* sort, kind. Also: tinoohkaan, toowinihkaan
keko *pc* what kind or sort, which one or sort

KITCHEN TABLE
wiihsiniiwinaahtik -oon *ni* kitchen table

KNEE
mikitik -oon *ni* knee

KNIFE
moohkomaan -an *ni* knife
naacihkomaane *vai* get a knife

KNOW
kihkenim *vta* know s.o.
kihkentan *vti* know s.t.
nahke piko *pc* I don't know
kihkentam *vai2* know

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

KNOW HOW
nihtaa- *prev* can do, skilled at, know how
nihtaawe *vai* know how to talk, can talk

KNOWN
kihkentaakwan *vii* known

LADLE
emihkwaan -ak *na* spoon, ladle

LAKE
saakahikan -an -iin *ni* lake
akaahsikamaa *vii* be a small lake
mihshikamaa *vii* be a big lake

LAKE TROUT
namekohs -ak *na* lake trout

LAMP
waashtenikan -an *ni* lamp. Also: waahtenikan, waastenikan

LARD
pimite *ni* lard, grease, fuel oil, gas

LAST
anihshaa *pc* by chance, at the last minute
eni-tipihkaak *vii* last evening. IC < ani-tipihkaa
ishkwaayaac *pc* end, last, ultimate

LATE
anoonaakohshin *vii* be late in the afternoon
pwaatawi- *pv* delayed, late

LATER
paanimaa *pc* later, later on, after a long while
naake *pc* later

LAUGH
paahpi *vai* laugh
paahpihi *vta* laugh at s.o. Stem: /paahpih-/

LAUGH AT
paahpihtoon *vti2* laugh at s.t. Stem: /kaatoo-/

LAUNDROMAT
kisiipiikinikewikamik -oon *ni* laundromat

LAZY
kihtimi *vai* be lazy

LEAST
kanake *pc* at least

LEAVE
maacaa *vai* go, leave

LEAVE BEHIND
nakash *vta* leave s.o. behind. Stem: /nakaN-/
nakatan *vti* leave s.t. behind

LEFT
namancinihkiink *pc* on the left. Also: namacinihkiik (W)

LEG
mihkaat -an *nid* leg. Stem: /-hkaat-/

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

LEGEND
aatisoohkaan -an *ni* legend
aatisoohke *vai* tell legends

LENGTH
ahko- *prev* as far as, as long as, a certain length

LET GO OF
pakitin *vta* let go of s.o.
pakitinan *vti* let go of s.t.

LET KNOW
kihkentamoosh *vta* inform s.o., let s.o. know. Stem: /kihkentamooN-/

LETTER
masinahikan -an *ni* book, document, paper, letter, newspaper

LIBRARY
masinahikanikamik -oon *ni* library

LIE
ahshawaapam *vta* lie in wait for s.o.
ahshawaapantan *vti* lie in wait for s.t., look out for s.t. (E). Also: ahshawaapantan (W)

LIE DOWN
kawihshimo *vai* lie down, go to bed
pimihshin *vai* lie down

LIFE
pimaatisiwin -an *ni* life

LIGHT
sahkiso *vai* be lit, be on fire, have one's house on fire
sahkite *vii* be lit, be on fire

LIKE
minwenim *vta* like s.o.
minwentan *vti* like s.t., enjoy s.t.

LIKE TASTE
minohpitan *vti* like taste of s.t.
minohpo *vta* like taste of s.o. Stem: /minohpw-/

LIKED
minwentaakwan *vii* be fun, liked, appreciated

LIKELY
maawin *pc* likely, perhaps, maybe, must be
kaye piko *pc* likely, to be expected, probably

LIPS
mitoon -an *nid* mouth (especially outer part of mouth; lips)

LISTEN
nantohtaw *vta* listen to s.o. (E). Also: natohtaw (W)
nantohtan *vti* listen to s.t. (E). Also: natohtan (W)

LISTEN!
mah! *pc* listen!

LITTLE
pankii *pc* a little (E). Also: pakii (W)

LIVE
pimaatisi *vai* live, be alive

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

tashiihke *vai* stay there, hang around, live there, play
ishi-taa *vai* live there, reside there

LOCATION
amihimaa *pc* that is where, there in a certain location

LONELY
shikatentam *vai2* be bored, be lonely, be homesick, be sad

LONESOME
shikatentan *vti* be lonesome for s.t.

LONG
ahko- *prev* as far as, as long as, a certain length
kinwaakaash *pc* for a long time

LONG AGO
weshkac *pc* long ago, in the past
kayaash *pc* originally, long ago, former
weshkaci- *pv* long ago, in the past

LONG HAIR
kinwaanihkwe *vai* have long hair

LONG TIME
kinwensh *pc* for a long time (E). Also: kinwesh (W)

LOOK
inaapi *vai* take a look
wawiyasinaakosi *vai* look cute, look funny

LOOK AFTER
kanawenim *vta* look after, take care of s.o.
kanawentan *vti* look after, take care of s.t.

LOOK AROUND
ayinaapi *vai* look around. Reduplication of: inaapi
nanaantawaapam *vta* look around for s.o., hunt for s.o. (E) Also: nanaatawaapam (W)
nanaantawenim *vta* look around for s.o., search for s.o. (E) Also: nanaatawenim (W)
nanaantawentan *vti* look around for s.t., search for s.t. (E) Also: nanaatawentan(W)
nanaatawaapam *vta* look around for s.o., hunt for s.o. (E) Also: nanaantawaapam (W)
nanaatawaapatan *vti* look around for s.t., hunt for s.t. (E) Also: nanaantawaapantan (W)
nanaatawenim *vta* look around for s.o., search for s.o. (E) Also: nanaantawenim (W)
nanaatawentan *vti* look around for s.t., search for s.t. (E) Also: nanaantawentan (W)

LOOK AT
kanawaapam *vta* look at s.o.
kanawaapantan *vti* look at s.t. (E). Also: kanawaapatan (W)

LOOK FOR
nantonaw *vta* look for s.o.

LOOK NICE
mino-naakosi *vai* looks nice, good looking. Also: minonaakosi

LOOK!
nah! *pc* look! look out!

LOOKOUT
ahshawaapi *vai* be on the lookout, lie in wait

LOON
maank -wak *na* loon (E). Also: maak (W)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

LOSE
wanihi *vta* lose s.o., miss s.o., mislay s.o. Stem: /wanih-/
wanihtoon *vti2* lose s.t. Stem: /wanihtoo-/

LOT
mihshiinatinoon *vii* be a lot of, be many of. Stem: /mihshiinatin-/

LOUD
kishiiwemakan *vii* be loud

LOVE
saakihi *vta* like, love s.o. Stem: /saakih-/

LOW
capashiihsh *pc* low, lower level

LOW SOUND OR VOICE
pitikohtaakosi *vai* have a muffled or low sound, have a muffled or low voice

LYNX
pishiw -ak *na* lynx

MACHINE
pimipanihcikan -an *ni* engine, motor, machine

MAD
kishiwaasi *vai* be angry, be mad

MAKE FIRE
pootawe *vai* make or build up a fire

MAKE FUN
nanaatihkosii *vai* do mean things, tease, make fun of people

MAN
naape -wak *na* man
niici-naape -wak *nad* my fellow man. Stem: /-iici-naapew-/

MANAGE
kashkihi *vta* be able to manage, can do to s.o.; let s.o. go. Stem: /kashkih-/

MANAGER
okimaa -k *na* boss, manager

MANY
aan tahsin *pc* how many
mihshiin *pc* many, much, a lot
mihshiinowak *vai* be many. Stem: /mihshiino-/
minikohk *pc* much, many. Also: minikwahk
tahsin *pc* a certain number
tahsinoon *vii* be a certain number of. Stem: /tahsin-/
tahsiwak *vai* be a certain number of. Stem: /tahsi-/
mihshiinatinoon *vii* be a lot of, be many of. Stem: /mihshiinatin-/

MANY TIMES
mihshiiniwaa *pc* many times, often. Also: mihshiinwaa

MARCH
mikisiwi-piihsim *na* bald eagle month, March

MARRIED
wiikito *vai* be married, marry

MARRY
wiikito *vai* be married, marry

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

MATCH
maaciihs -ak *na* match
MAY
mahko-piihsim *na* bear month, May
MAYBE
iitok *pc* maybe, must be
maashkooc *pc* perhaps, maybe, or else
maawin *pc* likely, perhaps, maybe, must be
naanita *pc* maybe, perhaps, in some way. Also: naanta
ME
keniin *pr* me too, as for me [first person singular personal pronoun]
niin *pr* I, me [first person singular personal pronoun]
niinishtam *pr* me next, me first [first person singular pronoun]. Also: niinihtam
niinehta *pr* I alone, me only
MEAN
nanaatihkosii *vai* do mean things, tease, make fun of people
MEASURE
tipaahkonike *vai* judge things/people, measure things (as something stick-like)
MEAT
wiiyaahs *ni* meat
amihko-wiiyaahs *ni* beaver meat
atihko-wiiyaahs *ni* caribou meat
mooso-wiiyaahs *ni* moose meat
MEDICINE
mashkihki -in *ni* medicine, drug
mashkihkiiwinini -wak *na* medicine person, doctor
MELT
ninkiso -wak *vai* be melted (E). Also: nikiso (W)
MIDDLE
nahsaw *pc* middle of
MIGHT AS WELL
nitawaac *pc* might as well, rather. Also: ntawaac
MILK
coocoohshaapoo *ni* milk
MINNOW
kinooshenhs -ak *na* minnow (E). Also: kinooshehs (W)
MINUTE
anihshaa *pc* by chance, at the last minute
MIRACULOUSLY
natok *pc* suddenly, miraculously, as a suprise
MISERABLE WEATHER
niiskaatan *vii* be miserable weather
MISTAKE
mamaanii *vai* do something bad, make mistakes
MITTEN
mincihkaawan -ak *na* mitten (E). Also: micihkaawan (W)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

MIX
kinika *pc* mix
MOCCASIN
mahkisin -an *ni* shoe, moccasin
MONDAY
anohkiiwi-kiishikaa *vii* work day, be Monday
MONEY
shooniyaan -ak *na* money. Also: shooniyaa
MONTH
piihsim -ook *na* sun, moon, month. Also: piihsom
MOON
akoocin *vai* hang, be in the sky (as sun, moon, and stars)
piihsim -ook *na* sun, moon, month. Also: piihsom
tipihki-piihsim -ook *na* moon
MOONLIGHT
kiishikaahte *vii* be moonlight
MOOSE
moos -ook *na* moose
mooso-wiiyaahs *ni* moose meat
MORE
kiiyaapic *pc* still, yet, more. Also: kiyaapic
awahshime *pc* to greater extent, more and more
enikohk *pc* with more effort, harder
nawac *pc* more, quite (-er)
MORNING
kekishepaayaa *vii* be morning
waapan *vii* be morning, be dawn, be tomorrow
kekishep *pc* this morning (past). Also: kekishepaa
MOSQUITO
sakime -k *na* mosquito
MOSQUITO NET
sakimewayaan -ak *na* mosquito net
MOST
maawac *pc* most, most of all
MOTHER
nimaamaa -mak *nad* my mother. Stem: /-maamaa(m)-/
MOTHER-IN-LAW
nisikohs -ak *nad* my (cross-)aunt; my mother-in-law. Stem: /-sikohs-/
MOTOR
pimipanihcikan -an *ni* engine, motor, machine
MOTOR OIL
apaakaminikan *na* motor oil
MOUNTAIN
wacii -n *ni* mountain
MOUSE
aapikoshiihsh -ak *na* mouse. Also: waapikoshiihsh

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

MOUTH
mikonew *ni* mouth, inside mouth. Stem: /-konew-/
MOVE
aanci-taa *vai* move one's residence (E). Also: aaci-taa (W)
MUCH
mihshiin *pc* many, much, a lot
minikohk *pc* much, many. Also: minikwahk
mishtahi *pc* much, a lot. Also: mistahi
MUSIC
kitohcike *vai* play a musical instrument
MUSKEG
mashkiik -oon *ni* muskeg, bog, swamp
MUSKRAT
wacashk -wak *na* muskrat
MUST
maawin *pc* likely, perhaps, maybe, must be
MUST BE
iitok *pc* maybe, must be
MUSTACHE
miihsaweshkishii *vai* have a mustache
NAME-SAKE
niici-toohkan -ak *nad* my name-sake. Stem: /-iici-toohkan-/
NAMED
ishinihkaaso *vai* be called or named a certain way. IC> eshinihkaaso=
ishinihkaate *vii* be called or named a certain way. IC> eshinihkaate=
NARRATE
tipaacimo *vai* tell news, narrate
NARRATION
tipaacimowin -an *ni* story, narration
NARROW
akaahsihtikweyaa *vii* be a narrow river
NATIVE
anihshininiimo *vai* speak the native language
anihshininiiwihkwe *na* native woman, Indian woman. Also: anihshiniihkwe
NATURAL
nato- *pre* real, natural, plain
NAVEL
mitihs -iin *ni* navel. Stem: /-tihs-/
NEAR
naani- *pren* near, by
naaniyahii *pc* near something
pehshonc *pc* close, near (E). Also: pehshoc (W)
NEAR
ciikic *pc* by, close to, near to
NEARLY
kekaat *pc* nearly, almost

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

NECK

mikwayaw -an *nid* neck. Stem: /kwayaw-/

NEIGHBOUR

onci-wiici-taamaakan *na* neighbour (E). Also: oci-wiici-taamaakan (W)

NEPHEW

ninahaankihshiim -ak *nad* my son-in-law, my (cross-)nephew (E). Stem: /-nahaankihshiim-/. Also: ninahaakihshiim (W)

nitooshim -ak *nad* my (parallel-)nephew. Stem: /-tooshim-/

NET

ahsap -iik *na* net

naatahsapii *vai* get one's net, check one's net

pakitahwe *vai* fish with a net, set a net

NEVER

kaawin wiihkaa *pc* never

NEVERTHELESS

shaakooc *pc* however, nevertheless, after all

NEWS

tipaacimohtaw *vta* tell s.o. news or a story

NEXT

kiinishtam *pr* you next, you first [second person personal pronoun]. Also: niinihtam

nishtam *pc* first, next

niinishtam *pr* me next, me first [first person singular pronoun]. Also: niinihtam

wiinishtam *pr* him first, her first, him next, her next [third person singular personal pronoun]. Also: wiinihtam

NICE

mino- *pre* nice, good

minwaahshin *vii* be nice, look nice

anwaahtinikamin *vii* be a nice and calm body of water

NICE DAY

mino-kiishikaa *vii* be a nice day

NIECE

nitooshimihkwem -ak *nad* my (parallel-)niece. Stem: /-tooshimihkwem-/

NIGHT

kashkii-tipihkanihse *vii* get dark quickly (at night)

tipihkaa *vii* be night

niipaa- *pv* at night, happening at night, nocturnal

tipihkonk *pc* last night (E). Also: tipihkok (W)

NINE

saankahso *nu* nine (E). Also: shaakahso, saakahso (W)

NINE DOLLARS

saankahswaapihk *na* nine dollars (E). Also: saakahsowaapihk. Also: saakahswaapihk (W)

NINETEEN

saankahsohshaap *nu* nineteen, (decade number) plus nine (E). Also: shaankahsoshaap (W)

NINETEEN DOLLARS

saankahsoshaap tahswaapihk *na* nineteen dollars (E). Also: saakahsoshaap tahsiwaapihk (W)

NINETY

saankahsomitana *nu* ninety (E). Also: shaakahsomitana, saankahsomitana (W)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

NO
ekaa *pc* no, not [conjunct negative word]
kaawin *pc* no, not. Also: kwaan.

NO REASON
kwanta *pc* for no reason or purpose

NORTH
kiiwetinonk *pc* north (E). Also: kiiwetinok (W)

NORTHERN LIGHTS
waawaahte *vii* flash (light), Northern Lights

NOSE
mikot -an *nid* nose. Stem: /-kot-/

NOT
ekaa *pc* no, not. [conjunct negative word]
kaawin *pc* no, not. Also: kwaan.
nehpici- *pv* permanently, not knowing when to quit

NOT YET
kaawin mahshi *pc* not yet

NOVEMBER
kashkatinoo-piihsim *na* freeze up month, November

NOW
aasha *pc* now, then, yet. Also: aashay
noonkom *pc* now, today (E). Also: nookom (W)

NUMBER
tahsin *pc* a certain number
tahsinoon *vii* be a certain number of. Stem: /tahsin-/
tahsiwak *vai* be a certain number of. Stem: /tahsi-/
tahso- *pre* every, a certain number

NURSING STATION
mashkihkiiwikamik -oon *ni* nursing station

OAR
ashepoyaan -ak *na* paddle, oar.

OCEAN
akaami-kihcikam *pc* across the ocean

OCTOBER
pinaahkwiiwi-piihsim *na* leaves are falling month, October

OFFICE
masinahikewikamik -oon *ni* office, band office

OFTEN
nahshine *pc* often, all the time, frequently

OH MY!
kooshta *pc* oops! oh my! Also: ooshta
ooshta *pc* oops! oh my! Also: kooshta

OLD
weshkaci-anihshinini *na* old-timer, old Indian person, elder

OLD-TIMER
weshkaci-anihshinini *na* old-timer, old Indian person, elder

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ONCE
peshikwaa *pc* once, one time
ONE
peshik *nu* one
peshiko- *pre* one, single
pehpeshik *pc* one by one
ONE CENT
peshik piiwaapihkohsh -ak *na* one cent. Also: peshik piiwaapihkoonhsh
ONE DOLLAR
peshikwaapihk *na* one dollar
ONE DOLLAR BILL
peshikoopiihikan -ak *na* one dollar bill
ONE THAT
kaa- *prev* one who, one that [conjunct relativizer]
ONE TIME
peshikwaa *pc* once, one time
ONE WHO
kaa- *prev* one who, one that [conjunct relativizer]
ONLY
ehta *pc* only
kiinehta *pr* you alone, you only
kiinehtawaa *pr* you alone, you only (plural)
kiinehtawint *pr* we alone, us only (inclusive) (E). Also: kiinehtawit (W)
niinehta *pr* I alone, me only
niinehtawint *pr* we alone, us only (exclusive) (E). Also: niinehtawit (W)
wiinehta *pr* him/her alone, him/her only
wiinehtawaa *pr* they alone, them only
OOPS!
ooshta *pc* oops! oh my! Also: kooshta
OPEN
paahkihsin -oon *vii* be open
ORDER
onahtoon *vti2* arrange s.t., organize s.t., put s.t. in order, stack s.t. Stem: /onahtoo-/
ORGANIZE
onahtoon *vti2* arrange s.t., organize s.t., put s.t. in order, stack s.t. Stem: /onahtoo-/
ORIGINALLY
kayaash *pc* originally, long ago, former
OTHER
kotak -iyak *pr* the other. [animate alternative]
kotak -iyan *pr* the other. [inanimate alternative]
OTTER
nikik -wak *na* otter. Also: ninkik
nikiko-wanihikan -an *ni* trap for otter. Also: nikiko-wanihiikan, ninkiko-wanohikan
OUGHT
taa- *prev* would, could, should, ought, can [modal]
OUT
saakici- *prev* out

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

OUTSIDE
akwaciink *pc* outside (E). Also: akwaciik (W)
OVER THERE
ihiweti *pc* over there, that way. Also: hiweti
OVERCAST
ninkwahkwan *vii* overcast (E). Also: nikwahkwan (W)
OWE
masinahamaw *vta* write to or for s.o., owe to s.o., borrow from s.o.
OWL
koohkoohkohoo -k *na* owl
OWN
tipenim *vta* own s.o., keep s.o., control s.o.
tipentan *vti* own s.t., keep s.t., control s.t.
PACK
pashkwewash -an *ni* pack
piinahike *vai* put something in a container, pack something
piinaho *vta* put s.o. in a container, pack s.o. Stem: /-pinahw-/
pimiwane *vai* carry a pack along on one's back
PADDLE
apwi -yak -wak *na* paddle, oar. Also: apoy -yak
pimahkwashiwaake *vai* paddle something
pimahkwashiwe *vai* paddle, paddle by
maaciihkwashiwe *vai* start to paddle, paddle off
PAIL
ahkihk -wak -ook *na* pail, kettle
PAIN
wiihsakentam *vai2* be extremely hurt, feel extreme pain
PANTS
mitaahs -ak *nad* pants. Stem: /-taahs-/
PAPER
masinahikan -an *ni* book, document, paper, letter, newspaper
PARENT
niniikihik -ook *nad* my parent. Stem: /-niikihikw-/
PAST
pimi- *prev* by, past, along, in process of
weshkac *pc* long ago, in the past
weshkaci- *pv* long ago, in the past
PAST TENSE
kii- *prev* [past tense] Also: kiih-. IC> kaa-
oci- *prev* [negative past tense]. Also: onci-
onci- *prev* [negative past tense]. Also: oci-
PATH
miihkana -n *ni* trail, path, road
PAUL
Powaan -ak *na* Paul (person's name)
PELT
ahtay -ak *na* pelt, fur for trade

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

PEN
masinahikanaahtik -oon *ni* pencil, pen

PENCIL
masinahikanaahtik -oon *ni* pencil, pen

PENINSULA
neyaahsh *ni* be a peninsula or point of land in the lake

PEPPER
pepaa *ni* pepper

PERHAPS
maashkooc *pc* perhaps, maybe, or else
maawin *pc* likely, perhaps, maybe, must be
naanita *pc* maybe, perhaps, in some way. Also: naanta

PERMANENTLY
nehpici- *pv* permanently, not knowing when to quit

PERMISSION
ayaaw *vta* have s.o., have permission to use s.o.

PERSON
anihshinaape -k *na* Indian, person
anihshinini -wak *na* Indian, person
awiya -k *pr* person, someone, somebody, anyone, anybody. Also: awiiya
ayahaa -k *na* that being, person, or animate thing. Also: ehaa, ahaa

PICK
otaahpinan *vti* choose s.t., accept s.t., take s.t., pick s.t.
otaahpinikaate *vii* be chosen, be taken, be accepted, be picked

PICK UP
manipahi *vta* grab s.o., pick s.o. up quickly. Stem: /manipah-/

PICKEREL
okaahs -ak *na* pickerel

PILLOW
ahpihkwehshimon -an *ni* pillow

PLAIN
nato- *pre* real, natural, plain

PLANE
pimihsewin -an *ni* airplane, plane

PLATE
onaakan -an *ni* dish, plate

PLAY
metawe *vai* play
tashiihke *vai* stay there, hang around, live there, play
pimaahkwepahike *vai* play hockey

PLAY INSTRUMENT
kitohcike *vai* play a musical instrument

PLAYTHING
metawaakan -an *ni* toy, plaything

PLEASE
aahti *pc* please, why don't you, why not, let me! Also: maahti
ekwa *pc* and, and so, then, and then, wait! please

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

PLOW
tawehkonehike *vai* plow snow
POLICE STATION
shimaakanihshiiwikamik -oon *ni* police station
POND
waanipiiyaa *vii* pond, be an area of water
POORLY
siitawaac *pc* barely, hardly, poorly
POP/JUICE
shiiwaapoo *ni* pop, soft drink, juice
PORCUPINE
kaak -wak *na* porcupine
PORRIDGE
anoominaapoo *na* porridge
PORTAGE
kahkiiwe *vai* to portage
onikam -iin *ni* portage
POSSESSION
ayaan *vti* my possession, it belongs to me
POSSIBLE
kaana *pc* is it possible that, would you, perhaps
POSSIBLY
kehcin *pc* probably possibly
POTATO
ashkipwaaw -an *ni* potato
POUR
siikinan *vti* pour s.t., pump s.t. out
POURED
siikinikaate -wan *vii* be poured (liquid)
PRAY
ayamihaa *vai* pray
PREPARE
kwayaancii *vai* get ready, prepare (E). Also: kwayaacii (W)
PROBABLY
nitiko *pc* probably. Also: ntiko
kaye piko *pc* likely, to be expected, probably
kehcin *pc* probably possibly
PROBABLY NOT
kamaawin *pc* think not so, probably not so. <kaawin maawin
PROBLEM
aanimihse *vai/ii* have difficulties, run into problems, get complicated
PROBLEMS
papiikonike *vai* fumble things, cause problems
PROPERTY
tipencikewin -an *ni* property, belongings, family
PROVISIONS BOX
niimaawiniwash -an *ni* provisions box or container

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

PUNISH
tipaahkon *vta* judge s.o. punish s.o., charge s.o.
PURPOSE
kwanta *pc* for no reason or purpose
PURPOSELY
oncita *pc* purposely, jokingly (E). Also: ocita (W)
PURSE
piinahikan -an *ni* purse
PUT
ahsi *vta* put s.o. in a certain place. Stem: /ahs-/
ahtoon *vti2* put s.t. in a certain place. Stem: /ahtoo-/
onahtoon *vti2* arrange s.t., organize s.t., put s.t. in order, stack s.t. Stem: /onahtoo-/
PUT CLOTHES ON
pihtaahpiso *vai* put clothes on, get dressed
PUT IN CONTAINER
piinahike *vai* put something in a container, pack something
piinaho *vta* put s.o. in a container, pack s.o. Stem: /piinahw-/
PUT ON BOARD
poosihi *vta* put on board s.o. Stem: /poosih-/
poosihtoon *vti2* put s.t. on board. Stem: /poosihtoo-/
QUARTER
peshishooniyaahsh -ak *na* twenty-five cents, (quarter). Also: peshik shooniyaahsh
QUESTION
ina *pc* [yes-no question marker] also na.
QUICK
kinipihse *vai/ii* be quick, be fast, be used up quickly (money or time)
kinipii *vai* hurry, be quick, be fast
QUICKLY
wiipac *pc* soon, in a little while, quick, hurry
kashkii-tipihkanihse *vii* get dark quickly (at night)
QUIETLY
sakamaatapi *vai* stay in place, sit quietly
QUIT
pooni- *prev* stop, cease, quit
poonanohkii *vai* quit a job, stop working
QUITE
nawac *pc* more, quite (-er)
RABBIT
waapoos -ook *na* snowshoe hare (rabbit)
waapooso-wanihikan -an *ni* trap for snowshoe hare (rabbit)
RADIO
nantohtamowin *ni* radio
RADIO STATION
natohtamoowikamik -oon *ni* radio station
RAIN
kimiwan *vii* rain. Also: kimowan

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

RAISIN
shoominihsh -ak *na* raisin
RAPIDS
paawihtik -oon *ni* rapids
RATHER
nitawaac *pc* might as well, rather. Also: ntawaac
RAVEN
kaakaaki -wak *na* raven
READY
kwayaancii *vai* get ready, prepare (E). Also: kwayaacii (W)
kwayaantahcike *vai* be ready or available things (E). Also: kwayaatahcike (W)
REAL
nato- *pre* real, natural, plain
REALIZE
nihsitawinan *vti* recognize s.t. by sight, realize s.t.
REALLY
mitoni *pc* really, entirely so
naahpic *pc* really, very, to a high degree, extensively
RECOGNIZE
nihsitawinan *vti* recognize s.t. by sight, realize s.t.
RECREATION HALL
metawewikamik -oon *ni* recreation hall
RED
miskosi *vai* be red
miskwaa *vii* be red
maci-miskwaawaa *vii* be a red-coloured sky that predicts bad weather
mino-miskwaawaa *vii* be a red-coloured sky that predicts good weather
miskwaawaa *vii* be a red-coloured sky at dawn or after sunset
REGARDLESS
aanciko *pc* to do anyway regardless of... (E). Also: aaciko (W)
REGRETFUL
mincinawesi *vai* be sorry, be regretful (E). Also: micinawesi (W)
REGURGITATE
pakitanemo *vta* regurgitate s.o. Stem: /pakitanemw-/
RELATION
inaakoomaakan -ak *na* relation, person one is related to
pehshotaahkoomaakan -ak *na* close relation
REMEMBER
kanoohkentaw *vta* remember s.o.
kanoohke *vai+o* remember
REMIND
kanoohkem *vta* remind s.o.
REPAIR
waweshihtoon *vti2* fix s.t., repair s.t. Stem: /waweshihtoo-/
RESIDE
ishi-taa *vai* live there, reside there

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

RESIDENCE
aanci-taa *vai* move one's residence (E). Also: aaci-taa (W)
RESTAURANT
wiihsiniiwikamik -oon *ni* restaurant
RESTROOM/WASHROOM
anwepiiwikamik -oon *ni* restroom/washroom
RETURN
kiiwe *vai* go home, return
kiiwe- *prev* returning, going home, going back
kiiwenotan *vti* return to s.t.
RETURN THROUGH AIR
kiiweyaahsin *vii* return through air, blow back
RETURN TO
pi-kiiwenotaw *vta* return to s.o., come back to s.o.
pi-kiiwenotan *vti* return to s.t., come back to s.t.
RICH
wenootisi *vai* be rich
RIGHT
kwayahk *pc* right, straight, correct(ly), proper(ly)
kihcinihkiink *pc* on the right (E). Also: kihcinihkiik (W)
RING
ahcanihsh -ak *na* ring
RIVER
siipi -in *ni* river
akaahsihtikweyaa *vii* be a narrow river
mankihtikweyaa *vii* be a wide river (E). Also: makihtikweyaa (W)
ROAD
miihkana -n *ni* trail, path, road
akaamihkana *pc* across the road or trail
patotepiso *vai* drive off the road
ROCK
ahsin -iik *na* stone, rock
ROCKY
ahsiniiwan *vii* be rocky
ROCKY ISLAND
minihtikwaapihk -oon *ni* rocky island
ROLL
tihtipihse *vai/ii* roll
ROLL FAST
tihtipipaniho *vai* roll fast. Also: tihtipipanihoo
RUN
pimipahtoo *vai* run along, run by
maaciipahtoo *vai* set out running, start running
ihpahiwe -wak *vai* run to a certain place (for cover)
RUN AWAY FROM
maaciipahiwe *vai* run away from
maaciipahiwaash *vta* run away from s.o. Stem: /maaciipahiwaaN-/

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

maaciipahiwaatan *vti* run away from s.t.

RUN OUT

caakihse *vai/ii* get used up, run out, be exhausted

SAD

shikatentam *vai2* be bored, be lonely, be homesick, be sad

SALT

shiiwihtaakan *ni* salt

SAME

peshikwan *pc* same

pehkihsh *pc* at the same time, while

SAME TIME

mekwaac *pc* while, during, at the (same) time, now

SATURDAY

maatinawe-kiishikaa *vii* distribution day, be Saturday

SAW

kiishkipoocike *vai* saw things, cut things with the saw

SAY

ihkito *vai* say, speak in a certain way

ishi *vta* say to s.o. Stem: /iN-/

SCARCELY

akaawaac *pc* hardly, scarcely

SCARED

kohtaaci *vai* be afraid, get scared

SCHOOL

ishkooniwikamik -oon *ni* school

ishkoonoo *vai* attend school. Also: ishoonoowi, ishkoonii

SCISSORS

maacishikan -an *ni* scissors

SCRAPE

maataho *vta* scrape s.o. Stem: /maatahw-/

SEAGULL

kiyaashk -wak *na* seagull. Also: kiiyaashk

SEARCH

nanaantawenim *vta* look around for s.o., search for s.o. (E). Also: nanaatawenim (W)

nanaantawentan *vti* look around for s.t., search for s.t. (E). Also: nanaatawentan (W)

SEATED

namatapi *vai* sit down, be seated

SEE

ishinan *vti* look at s.t. which looks so, see s.t. a certain way

waapam *vta* see s.o.

waapantan *vti* see s.t. Also: waapatan

ani-naakosi *vai* be seen going away (from the speaker)

SEEK

nanaantawi- *prev* seek (E). Reduplication of: nantawi-, ntawi-. Also: nanaatawi- (W)

SEPTEMBER

waahtepakiiwi-piihsim *na* leaves are changing colour month, September. Also: waahtepakaawi-piihsim

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

SET
pakitahwe *vai* fish with a net, set a net
SET OUT
maaciipahtoo *vai* set out running, start running
maaciipiso *vai* set out by vehicle, speed off, drive off
SEVEN
niishwaahsinoon *vii* be seven. Stem: /niishwaahsin-/
niishwaahsiwak *vai* be seven. Stem: /niishwaahsi-/
niishwaahso *nu* seven
SEVEN DOLLARS
niishwaahswaapihk na *na* seven dollars
SEVENTEEN
niishwaahsoshaap *nu* seventeen, (decade number) plus seven
SEVENTEEN DOLLARS
niishwaahsoshaap tahsiwaapihk *na* seventeen dollars
SEVENTY
niishwaahsomitana *nu* seventy
SHAKE HANDS
waaciye *vai* shake hands
SHALLOW
paakwaa *vii* be shallow water
SHARP
kaahshaa *vii* be sharp
SHE
kewiin *pr* him too, her too, as for him, as for her [third person singular personal pronoun]
wiin *pr* he, she, him, her [third person singular personal pronoun]
wiinishtam *pr* him first, her first, him next, her next [third person singular personal pronoun]. Also: wiinihtam
SHIRT
pakwaan -an *ni* shirt
SHOE
mahkisin -an *ni* shoe, moccasin
SHOOT
paashkiso *vta* shoot s.o. Stem: /paashkisw-/
SHOOT WITH ARROW
pimo *vta* shoot s.o. with an arrow. Stem: /pimw-/
SHOP
maaham *vai2* go on a shopping trip, shop
SHORE
naanew *pc* down the shore, on the shore
naanewi- *pren* on shore
SHORT
tahkokaapawi *vai* stand short, be short
SHORT HAIR
tahkwaanihkwe *vai* have short hair
SHOULD
ci- *prev* to, that, will, would, could, should [conjunct future and modal]

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ke- *prev* will, should, would, could [Changed future and modal]
taa- *prev* would, could, should, ought, can [modal]

SHOULDER

mitihtiman -an *nid* shoulder. Stem: /-tihtiman-/
piminike *vai* carry things along on one's shoulder

SHOVEL

wepahaakone *vai* shovel snow

SHOW UP

naakosi *vai* be visible, show up
naakwan *vii* be visible, show up. (pi-naakwan be seen coming this way)

SHOWER

kisiisihpaso *vai* take a shower

SHUTTLE

ahsapaahtik -ook *na* shuttle (with twine) for net making

SIBLING

niciimic -ak *nad* my younger brother or sister, my younger sibling. Stem: /-ciimic-/
nitawemaa -k *nad* my (man's) sister, my (woman's) brother. Stem: /-tawemaa-/

SIBLING-IN-LAW

niinim -ook *nad* my (cross-)cousin of opposite sex, my sibling-in-law of opposite sex. Stem: /-iinimw-/

SICK

aahkosi *vai* be sick

SICKNESS

aahkosiwin -an *ni* sickness, illness

SIGHT

nihsitawinan *vti* recognize s.t. by sight, realize s.t.

SILENT

ciiweyaa *vii* be silent, be no sound

SINCE

ahpin *pc* when, since, then, subsequently

SING

nikamo *vai* sing

SINGLE

peshiko *vai* be alone, single
peshiko- *pre* one, single
peshikwan *vii* be alone, single

SISTER

niciimic -ak *nad* my younger brother or sister, my younger sibling. Stem: /-ciimic-/
nimihses -ak *nad* my older sister. Stem: /-mihses-/
nitawemaa -k *nad* my (man's) sister, my (woman's) brother. Stem: /-tawemaa-/
niitihkwe -wak *nad* my (woman's) sister. Stem: /-iitihkwew-/

SISTER-IN-LAW

nicaahkohsh -ak *nad* my (woman's) (female cross-)cousin, my (woman's) sister-in-law. Stem: /-caahkohsh-/

SIT

api *vai* be in a certain place, sit, be at home
namatapi *vai* sit down, be seated

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

SIT

ayapi *vai* sit around, stay around. Reduplication of: api

sakamaatapi *vai* stay in place, sit quietly

SIX

ninkotwaahsinoon *vii* be six (E). Stem: /ninkotwaahsin-/. Also: nikotwaahsinoon (W)

ninkotwaahsiwak *vai* be six (E). Stem: /ninkotwaahsi-/. Also: nikotwaahsiwak (W)

ninkotwaahso *nu* six (E). Also: nikotwaahso (W)

SIX DOLLARS

ninkotwaahsowaapihk *na* six dollars (E). Also: ninkotwaahswaapihk (W)

SIXTEEN

ninkotwaahsoshaap *nu* sixteen (E). Also: ninkotwaahsoshaap (W)

SIXTEEN DOLLARS

ninkotwaahsoshaap tahswaapihk *na* sixteen dollars (E). Also: nikotwaahsoshaap tahswaapihk (W)

SIXTY

ninkotwaahsomitana *nu* sixty (E). Also: nikotwaahsomitana (W)

SIZE

ahpiihcikini *vai* be a certain size. Also: apiihcikini

SKIDOO

otaapaan -ak *na* skidoo, car

SKILLED

nihtaa- *prev* can do, skilled at, know how

SKIN

pahkon *vta* skin s.o., cut pelt off s.o.

SKINNY

paawanii *vai* be skinny, starving, hungry

SKUNK

shikaak -wak *na* skunk

SKY

kiishik *ni* sky.

kiishik *ni* sky, day

maci-miskwaawaa *vii* be a red-coloured sky that predicts bad weather

mino-miskwaawaa *vii* be a red-coloured sky that predicts good weather

miskwaawaa *vii* be a red-coloured sky at dawn or after sunset

SLED

pimitaapii *vai* go along by sled or sleigh

SLEEP

nipaa *vai* sleep

SLEIGH

pimitaapii *vai* go along by sled or sleigh

SLIMY

nipaaciyaa *vii* be dirty, slimy

SLOWLY

pehkaac *pc* slowly, carefully

SMALL

ahpiihcikini *vai* be a certain size. Also: apiihcikini

akaahshenshi *vai* be small (E). Also: akaahsheshi (W)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

akaahsikamaa *vii* be a small lake

SMELL NICE

minomaakosi *vai* smells nice, smells good
minomaakwan *vii* smells nice, smells good

SMOKE COMES OUT

saakaapahte *vii* smoke comes out

SMOKE FISH

manehtek -wak *na* smoke fish

SNAKE

kinepik -ook *na* snake

SNARE

nakwaakan -an *ni* snare
nakwaakanaahtik -oon *ni* snare stick (wooden frame)
nakwaakaniyaap -iin *ni* snare wire
nakwaaso *vai* be snared
nakwaash *vta* snare s.o. Stem: /nakwaaN-/
naapakwaash *vta* snare s.o. Stem: /naapakwaaN-/
naapakwe *vai* set snares
naatakwe *vai* go to check snares

SNEEZE

caahcaamohki *vai* sneeze a lot

SNOW

koon -ak *na* snow
sookihpwan *vii* be snowing. Also: sookohpwan
anaamaakonak *pc* under the snow
nihkaakone *vai/ii* be covered with snow
tawehkonehike *vai* plow snow
wepahaakone *vai* shovel snow

SNOWSHOE

aakim -ak *na* snowshoe

SO

amiicikahi *pc* that is so
amiinahi *pc* is that so, is that right
ekwa tahsh *pc* and so, and then, but then

SO IS THAT

amihiwe *pc* so is that

SOAK

akoncin *vai* float, soak (E). Also: akocin (W)
akontin *vii* float, soak (E). Also: akotin (W)

SOAP

shoohp *na* soap

SOCK

ashikan -ak *na* sock

SOME

aanta *pc* some, few

SOMEONE

awiya -k *pr* person, someone, somebody, anyone, anybody. Also: awiiya

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

SOMETIMES
eshkam *pc* sometimes
SON
nikosihs -ak *nad* my son. Stem: /-kosihs-/
SON-IN-LAW
ninahaankihshiim -ak *nad* my son-in-law, my (cross-)nephew (E). Stem: /-nahaankihshiim-/. Also: ninahaankihshiim (W)
SONG
nikamowin -an *ni* song
SOON
wiipac *pc* soon, in a little while, quick, hurry
SORRY
mincinawesi *vai* be sorry, be regretful (E). Also: micinawesi (W)
SORT
toohkaan *pc* sort, kind. Also: tinoohkaan, toowinihkaan
SORT
keko *pc* what kind or sort, which one or sort
SOUND
ciiweyaa *vii* be silent, be no sound
inihtaakwan *vii* sound so, be understood so
SOUTH
shaawanonk *pc* south (E). Also: shaawanok (W)
SPEAK
ihkito *vai* say, speak in a certain way
kanoosh *vta* call, address, speak to s.o. Stem: /kanooN-/
anihshininiimo *vai* speak the native language
ayami *vai* speak, talk
ayamiihtamaw *vta* speak for s.o.
ayamiihtan *vti* speak for s.t.
SPEAK TO
kanootan *vti* call s.t., address s.t., speak to s.t.
SPEED OFF
maaciipiso *vai* set out by vehicle, speed off, drive off
SPLIT
taashkisho *vta* split s.o. by cutting. Stem: /taashkishw-/
SPLIT WOOD
taashkikahike *vai* split wood
SPOILED
nihshiwanaatan *vii* be spoiled
SPOON
emihkwaan -ak *na* spoon, ladle
SPOUSE
wiiciiwaakan -ak *na* spouse, companion
niiciihaa -k *nad* my spouse. Stem: /-iiciihaa-/
nikayaashim -ak *nad* my ex-spouse. Stem: /-kayaashim-/
SPRING
siikwan *vii* spring

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

SPRUCE
shikop -iik *na* evergreen tree, spruce. Also: shinkop -iik

SPRUCE HEN
pine -wak *na* spruce hen

STACK
onahtoon *vti2* arrange s.t., organize s.t., put s.t. in order, stack s.t. Stem: /onahtoo-/

STAND
niipawi *vai* stand, be standing

STAND UP
pasikwii *vai* stand up, arise

STAR
wacahkohsh -ak *na* star (W). Also: wanankosh (E)

START
maacii- *prev* start, begin
maaciihatoo *vai* start off on a trail, go for a walk
maaciciwan -oon *vii* start to flow
maaciipahtoo *vai* set out running, start running
maaciihkwashiwe *vai* start to paddle, paddle off
maaciihse *vai/ii* fly off (as a bird), starts (as a motor)
maatanohkii *vai* start to work

STARVE
paawanii *vai* be skinny, starving, hungry

STAY
tashiihke *vai* stay there, hang around, live there, play
ayapi *vai* sit around, stay around. Reduplication of: api
sakamaatapi *vai* stay in place, sit quietly

STEAL
kimooti *vai+o* steal s.t.

STEER
washkinan *vti* turn s.t., steer s.t.

STICK
mihtik -oon *ni* stick, piece of wood, yard (measurement)

STICK ON
akohke *vai* stick on, adhere

STILL
kiiyaapic *pc* still, yet, more. Also: kiyaapic

STINK
wiinciikisi *vai* stink (E). Also: wiiciikisi (W)

STOCKY
pitikosi *vai* be stocky, be chubby

STOMACH
mihsat -an *ni* stomach

STONE
ahsin -iik *na* stone, rock

STOP
kipihcii *vai* stop
pooni- *prev* stop, cease, quit

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

kipihtinan *vti* (in an action) stop s.t., block s.t.
poonanohkii *vai* quit a job, stop working

STORE
ataawikamik -oon *ni* store, trading post

STORY
tipaacimowin -an *ni* story, narration

STOVE
ishkotehkaanaapihk -ook *na* stove, heater

STRAIGHT
kwayahk *pc* right, straight, correct(ly), proper(ly)

STRANGER
piiwite -k *na* stranger

STRETCH
shiipiikii *vai* stretch one's body
tashopish *vta* stretch s.o. (as a pelt). Stem: /tashopiN-/

STRIKE
pahkihtehan *vti* hit s.t., strike s.t.

STRONG
mashkawii *vai* be strong

STURGEON
name -wak *na* sturgeon

SUDDENLY
ketahtawen *pc* all of a sudden, suddenly
natok *pc* suddenly, miraculously, as a suprise

SUFFICIENT
tepi- *prev* enough, sufficient
tepihse *vai/ii* be enough of s.t., be sufficient

SUGAR
shookaa *na* sugar

SUITCASE
mihtikowash -an *ni* suitcase, wooden box.

SUMMER
niipin *vii* summer
tahso-niipin *pc* every summer

SUN
piihsim -ook *na* sun, moon, month. Also: piihsom

SUN RISE
saakaahte *vii* the sun is rising, the sun comes up

SUN SET
pankihshimon *vii* the sun sets (E). Also: pakihshimon (W)

SUNDAY
ayamihe-kiishikaa *vii* pray day, be Sunday

SUNSET
mino-miskwaawaa *vii* be a red-coloured sky that predicts good weather
miskwaawaa *vii* be a red-coloured sky at dawn or after sunset

SURE
aaw *pc* well, well then, sure

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

cike, cikema *pc* for sure
kehcinaac *pc* certainly, for sure
tepwe *pc* true, for sure

SUSPECT
anaamenim *vta* suspect s.o., blame s.o.
anaamentan *vti* suspect s.t., blame s.t.

SWALLOW
koncipanihi *vta* swallow s.o. (E). Stem: /kocipanih-/. Also kocipanihi (W)

SWALLOWED
koncipanihcikaate *vii* be swallowed (E). Also: kocipanihcikaate (W)

SWAMP
mashkiik -oon *ni* muskeg, bog, swamp

SWEATER
shiipiikwaan -an *ni* seater

SWEEP
wepahike *vai* sweep the floor

SWEET
shiiwaa *vii* be sweet
shiiwaakamin *vii* be sweet (liquid)

SWEETHEART
nimoosom -ak *nad* my sweetheart. Stem: /-moosom-/

SWIM AROUND
papaamaatake *vai* swim around

SWING
memepiso *vai* swing oneself
memepison -an *ni* swing, blanket cradle

TABLE
ahcikanaahtik -oon *ni* table, also ahcikan
wiihsiniiwinaantik -oon *ni* kitchen table

TAKE
otaahpinan *vti* choose s.t., accept s.t., take s.t., pick s.t.
otaahpinikaate *vii* be chosen, be taken, be accepted, be picked

TAKE ALONG
maaciiwish *vta* take along with s.o. Stem: /maaciiwiN-/
maaciiwitoon *vti* take along with s.t., take s.t. away. Stem: /maaciiwitoo-/

TAKE AWAY
maaciiwitoon *vti2* take along with s.t., take s.t. away. Stem: /maaciiwitoo-/
maaciiwicikaate *vii* be taken away, be carried away

TAKE CARE
kanawenim *vta* look after, take care of s.o.
kanawentan *vti* look after, take care of s.t.

TAKE S.O. /S.T. HOME
kiiwewish *vta* take s.o. home. Stem: /kiiwewiN-/
kiiwewitoon *vti* take s.t. home. Stem: /kiiwewitoo-/

TALK
ayami *vai* speak, talk
nihtaawe *vai* know how to talk, can talk

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

TALL
kinokaapawi *vai* stand tall, be tall
TASTE BAD
macihpo *vta* taste s.o. who tastes bad. Stem: /macihpw-/
macihpikwan *vti* taste bad
TASTE BITTER
wiihsakaakamin -oon *vii* tastes bitter (liquid)
TASTE GOOD
minohpakosi *vai* taste good. Also: minohpikosi
minohpakwan *vii* taste good
TASTE OF
kocihpitan *vti* take a taste of, try a taste of s.t. inanimate
kocihpo *vta* take a taste of, try a taste of s.t. animate
TEA
tii *ni* tea
tiihke *vai* make tea
TEACH
kihkinoohamaw *vta* teach s.o.
kihkinoohamaw *vta* teach someting to s.o., give direction to s.o.
TEAKETTLE
tiiwahkihk -wak -ook *na* kettle, teakettle
TEASE
nanaatihkosii *vai* do mean things, tease, make fun of people
TELEPHONE
maaciikitowin -an *ni* telephone
TELEVISION
masinaahtehsicikan -an *ni* television
TELL
wiintamaw *vta* tell something to s.o. (E). Also: wiitamaw (W)
TELL ABOUT
tashim *vta* tell about, talk about s.o.
TELL LEGENDS
aatisoohke *vai* tell legends
TELL NEWS
tipaacimo *vai* tell news, narrate
tipaacimohtaw *vta* tell s.o. news or a story about someone
TELL ON
mamihshim *vta* tell on s.o.
mamihshintan *vta* tell on s.t. (E). Also: mamihshitan (W)
TELL STORY
tipaacimohtaw *vta* tell s.o. news or a story about someone
TEN
mitaahsinoon *vii* be ten. Stem: /mitaahsin-/
mitaahsiwak *vai* be ten. Stem: /mitaahsi-/
mitaahso *nu* ten
TEN CENTS
mitaahso piiwaapihkohsh -ak *na* ten cents. Also: mitaahso piiwaapihkoonhsh

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

TEN DOLLAR BILL
mitaahsoopiihikan -ak *na* ten dollar bill
TEN DOLLARS
mitaahswaapihk *na* ten dollars
TENT
wiiskwehokaan -an *ni* tent
THANK
nanaahkom *vta* thank s.o.
THANKS
miikwehc *pc* thanks
THAT
aha *pr* that. Also: ahawe. [animate singular demonstrative]
ahawe *pr* that. Also: aha. [animate singular demonstrative]
ahaweniwan *pr* that, those. [animate obviative demonstrative]
ci- *prev* that, will, would, could, should. [conjunct future and modal]
ihi *pr* that. Also: ihiwe. [inanimate singular demonstrative]
ihiwe *pr* that. Also: ihi, ihiwe, hi. [inanimate singular demonstrative]
THAT WAY
ihiweti *pc* over there, that way. Also: hiweti
weti *pc* there, that way, yonder, over there
THAT'S
amihi *pc* that's
THEM
kewiinawaa *pr* them too, as for them. [third person plural personal pronoun]
wiinawaa *pr* they, them. [third person plural personal pronoun]
wiinehtawaa *pr* they alone, them only
THEN
ahpin *pc* when, since, then, subsequently
aasha *pc* now, then, yet. Also: aashay
ekwa *pc* and, and so, then, and then, wait! please
THEN
ekwa tahsh *pc* and so, and then, but then
THERE
ihimaa *pc* there. Also: himaa
weti *pc* there, that way, yonder, over there
THESE
okoweniwan *pr* this, these. Also: okweniwan. [inanimate obviative demonstrative]
THEY
kewiinawaa *pr* them too, as for them. [third person plural personal pronoun]
wiinawaa *pr* they, them. [third person plural personal pronoun]
wiinehtawaa *pr* they alone, them only
THIGH
mipwaam -an *nid* thigh. Stem: /-pwaam-/
THING
ayahaa -k *na* that being, person, or animate thing. Also: ehaa, ahaa
THINK
inentam *vai2* think so

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

inentan *vti* think so of s.t., to be so
maamitonentam *vai* be thinking
inentan *vti* think so of s.t., think s.t. to be so
tanenim *vta* think s.o. to be there

THINK ABOUT
maamitonenim *vta* think about s.o., consider s.o.
maamitonentan *vti* think about s.t., consider s.t.

THIRTEEN
nihsoshaap *nu* thirteen

THIRTEEN DOLLARS
nihsoshaap tahswaapihk *na* thirteen dollars

THIRTY
nihsomitana *nu* thirty

THIS
oho *pr* this. [inanimate singular demonstrative]. Also: ohowe, howe.
ohowe *pr* this. Also: oho, howe. [inanimate singular demonstrative]
okoweniwan *pr* this, these. Also: okweniwan. [inanimate obviative demonstrative]
wahawe *pr* this. Also: wahwawe. [animate singular demonstrative]

THOSE
ahaweniwan *pr* that, those. [animate obviative demonstrative]
ikiweniwak *pr* those. Also: ikiweniwak. [animate plural demonstrative]
iniweniwan *pr* those. Also: inweniwan. [inanimate plural demonstrative]

THOUGH
mihsawaac *pc* even though, anyhow, although

THOUSAND
kihci-mitaahsomitana *nu* thousand. niishwaa kihci-mitahsomitana 'two thousand', etc.

THREAD
sheshtak -ook *na* thread

THREE
nihsin *nu* three
nihsinoon *vii* be three. Stem: /nihsin-/
nihsiwak *vai* be three. Stem: /nihsi-/

THREE DOLLARS
nihsowaapihk *ni* three dollars. Also: nihswaapihk

THREE TIMES
nihswaa *pc* three times, thrice

THRICE
nihswaa *pc* three times, thrice

THROAT
mikotashkway -an *nid* throat. Stem: /kotashkway-/

THUNDER
pinehsiiwan *vii* be thunder

THURSDAY
niiwi-kiishikaa *vii* fourth day, be Thursday

TIDY
nanahacike *vai* tidy things

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

TIME

kinwaakaash *pc* for a long time

oncihcihse *vii* be the time of, come to happen, the time has come (E). Also: ocihcihse (W)

pehkihsh *pc* at the same time, while

TIMES

tahswaa *pc* so many times, every time

TIPI

matokwaan -an *ni* tipi. Also: matokaan, matikwaan

TIRED

caakii *vai* be too tired to do anything, have no more energy

ishkii *vai* be tired of doing something

TO

ishi- *prev* to or in a certain place, in a certain way. Also: shi-. IC> eshi-

TOBACCO

nahsemaa -k *na* tobacco

TOBACCO PIPE

ohpwaakan -ak *na* tobacco pipe

TOBOGGAN

otaapaanaahk -wak *na* toboggan

TODAY

noonkom *pc* now, today (E). Also: nookom (W)

noonkom kaa-kiishikaak *vii* today (E). Also: nookom kaa-kiishikaak (W)

TOE

niihsiikisitaan -an *ni* toe

TOENAIL

mashkash -iik *nad* fingernail/toenail. Stem: /-ashkash-/

TOGETHER

maamaw *pc* all together, in total

naapi- *prev* together

TOMATOE

okin -iik *ni* tomatoe

TOMORROW

waapank *vii* tomorrow (E). Also: waapak (W)

waapan *vii* be morning, be dawn, be tomorrow

TONGUE

mitenan -iin *nid* tongue. Stem: /-tenan-/

TOO

kekiin *pr* you too, as for you. [second person singular personal pronoun]

kekiinawaa *pr* you too, as for you. [second person plural personal pronoun]

kekiinawint *pr* us too, as for us (E). [first person inclusive personal pronoun]. Also: kekiinawit (W)

keniin *pr* me too, as for me. [first person singular personal pronoun]

keniinawint *pr* us too, as for us (E). [first person exclusive personal pronoun]. Also: keniinawit (W)

kewiin *pr* him too, her too, as for him, as for her. [third person singular personal pronoun]

kewiinawaa *pr* them too, as for them. [third person plural personal pronoun]

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

TOO MUCH
onsaam *pc* too much, extreme, excessive. (E). Also: osaam (W)
TOO, AS FOR
kaye *pc* and. Also:, too, as for.
TOOL
aapacihcikan -an *ni* tool, useful thing, equipment
TOP
wakic *pc* on top of something
wakici- *prən* on top of
wakiciyahii *pc* on top of something
TOTAL
maamaw *pc* all together, in total
TOWARDS
pi- *prev* here, hither, towards
TOWN
taawin *na* town. Also: taawinink (locative)
TOY
metawaakan -an *ni* toy, plaything
TRAIL
miihkana -n *ni* trail, path, road
akaamihkana *pc* across the road or trail
TRAP
amihko-wanihikan -an *ni* trap for beaver. Also: amihko-wanihiikan
naaciwanihikane *vai* go to check traps. Also: naaciwanihiikane
nikiko-wanihikan -an *ni* trap for otter. Also: nikiko-wanihiikan, ninkiko-wanohikan
tahsoosh *vta* trap s.o. Stem: /tahsooN-/
wanihikan -an *ni* trap. Also: wanihiikan
wanihike *vai* trap. Also: wanihiike
TRAP HARE
waapooso-wanihikan -an *ni* trap for snowshoe hare (rabbit)
TRAP STAKE
wanihikanaahtik -oon *ni* trap stake. Also: wanihiikanaahtik
TREE
mihtik -ook *na* tree (deciduous)
shnikop -iik *na* evergreen tree, spruce (E). Also: shinkop (W)
TROUBLE
macihcike *vai* do something bad, get into trouble
maanencike *vai* disobey, bother things, get into trouble
TRUE
tepwe *pc* true, for sure
TRY
koci- *pv* try to do, to attempt
kocihcikaate *vii* be tried
kocihtoon *vti2* try s.t. Stem: /kocihtoo-/
TUESDAY
niisho-kiishikaa *vii* second day, it is Tuesday

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

TURN
washkii *vai* turn
washkinan *vti* turn s.t., steer s.t.
TWELVE
niishoshaap *nu* twelve, (decade number) plus two
TWELVE DOLLARS
niishoshaap tahswaapihk *na* twelve dollars
TWENTY
niishitana *nu* twenty
TWENTY DOLLAR BILL
niishitanawepiihikan -ak *na* twenty dollar bill
TWENTY DOLLARS
niishitana tahswaapihk *na* twenty dollars
TWICE
niishwaa *pc* twice
TWO
niishin *nu* two
niishinoon *vii* be two. Stem: /niishin-/
niishiwak *vai* be two. Stem: /niishi-/
TWO DOLLAR BILL
niishoopiihikan -ak *na* two dollar bill
TWO DOLLARS
niishwaapihk *na* two dollars
UNCLE
nishihsesh -ak *nad* my (cross-)uncle, my father-in-law. Stem: /-shihsesh-/
noohkomihs -ak *nad* my (parallel-)uncle. Stem: /-oohkomihs-/
UNDER
anaamink *pc* under something (E). Also anaamik (W)
anaamaakonak *pc* under the snow
UNDERSTAND
nihsitohtam *vai2* understand
nihsitohtan *vti* understand s.t.
inihtaakwan *vii* sound so, be understood so
UNDERWATER
anaamipiik *pc* underwater
US
kekiinawint *pr* us too, as for us (E). [first person inclusive personal pronoun]. Also: kekiinawit (W)
keniinawint *pr* us too, as for us (E). [first person exclusive personal pronoun]. Also: keniinawit (W)
kiinawint *pr* we, us (E). [first person inclusive personal pronoun]. Also: kiinawit (W)
niinawint *pr* we, us (E). [first person exclusive personal pronoun]. Also: niinawint (W)
kiinehtawint *pr* we alone, us only (inclusive) (E). Also: kiinehtawit (W)
niinehtawint *pr* we alone, us only (exclusive) (E). Also: niinehtawit (W)
USE
aapacihtoon *vti2* use it. Stem: /aapacihtoo-/

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

USE UP
caakin *vta* use s.o. up
caakinan *vti* use s.t. up

USEABLE
aapatan *vii* be useful, be useable

USED TO
ami ahko *pc* used to, usually

USED UP
caakihse *vai/ii* get used up, run out, be exhausted

USEFUL
aapatan *vii* be useful, be useable
aapatisi *vai* be useful

USEFUL THING
aapacihcikan -an *ni* tool, useful thing, equipment

USUALLY
ahko *pc* usually
ami ahko *pc* used to, usually

VACUUM CLEANER
wiihkwepahike *vai* use a vacuum cleaner

VAIN
aana- *pv* in vain, to attempt, effort, anyway, anyhow

VARIED
piko tooho *pc* any kind, varied, anything, all sort of

VEHICLE
takopisi *vai* arrive by vehicle

VERY
kihci- *pre* big, great, very

VERY
naahpic *pc* really, very, to a high degree, extensively

VILLAGE
tashiihkewin -an *ni* village, settlement, community

VIOLENCE
miikaasowin -an *ni* fight, violence. Also: miikaatiwin
nootinikewin -an *ni* war, violence

VISIBLE
mate- *prev* visible (at a distance)
naakosi *vai* be visible, show up. pi-naakosi 'come'
tepi-naakosi *vai* be visible at a distance
naakwan *vii* be visible, show up. (pi-naakwan be seen coming this way)

VISIT
kiiwite *vai* visit (especially outside one's own community)
kiiwike *vai* visit (especially in one's own community)

WAIT
ekwa *pc* and, and so, then, and then, wait! please
piihi *vta* wait for s.o. Stem: /piih-/
piiho *vai* wait

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

WAIT A WHILE
pinamaa *pc* wait a while, for a short while, in a while
WAKE UP
amacihi *vta* wake s.o. up. Stem: /amacih-/
WALK
pimohse *vai* walk along, walk by
maaciihatoo *vai* start off on a trail, go for a walk
pimohse *vai* walk, walk by, walk past
pimohse *vai* walk, walk by, walk past
nihtaawihse *vai* know how to walk, can walk, walks well
papaamohse *vai* walk about, take a walk
WALLET
shooniyaawash -an *ni* wallet
WANT
nantawenim *vta* want s.o. (E). Also: natawenim (W)
nantawentan *vti* want s.t.(E). Also: natawentan (W)
nantawentaakosi *vai* be wanted, be desirable (E). Also: natawentaakosi (W).
WANT TO
waa- *prev* will, want to. IC> wii-
wii- *prev* will, want to. [desiderative, voluntative]
WANT TO/NEED TO
noonte- *prev* want to, need to (be usual time) (E). Also noote- (W)
WAR
nootinikewin -an *ni* war, violence
WAREHOUSE
ahtaahsonikamik -oon *ni* warehouse
WARM
awaso *vai* warm oneself
kiishowaayaa *vii* be warm weather
WARM WEATHER
kiishiwaayaa *vii* be warm weather
WASH
kihsaapaawanitiso *vai* wash oneself
kisiipiikii *vai* wash oneself, bathe, take a bath
kaahsiin *vta* wipe s.o., clean s.o., wash s.o.
kaahsiinan *vti* wipe s.t., clean s.t., wash s.t.
WASH CLOTHES
kisiipiikinike *vai* wash clothes
WASH DISHES
kaahsiininaakane -wak *vai* wash dishes
WASH FACE
kaahsiinkwe *vai* wash one's face (E). Also: koohsiikwe (W)
WATCH FOR
naanaakacihi *vta* investigate s.o., watch for s.o. Stem: /naamaakacih-/
WATER
naatahipii *vai* get water, go for water
nipi *ni* water

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

anwaahtinikamin *vii* be a nice and calm body of water
kiishkaayawaa *vii* be deep water
mooshkahan *vii* flood, be high water
paakwaa *vii* be shallow water

WAVES

maaciiyaahoote *vii* be carried away on the waves
maamihcaashkaa *vii* be big waves
pimaahoote *vii* drift along on the waves

WAY

ishi- *prev* to or in a certain place, in a certain way. Also: shi-. IC> eshi-
naanita *pc* maybe, perhaps, in some way. Also: naanta

WAYS OFF

niikate *pc* a ways off, far away

WE

kekiinawint *pr* us too, as for us (E). [first person inclusive personal pronoun]. Also: kekiinawit (W)
keniinawint *pr* us too, as for us (E). [first person exclusive personal pronoun]. Also: keniinawit (W)
kiinawint *pr* we, us (E). [first person inclusive personal pronoun]. Also: kiinawit (W)
niinawint *pr* we, us (E). [first person exclusive personal pronoun]. Also: niinawit (W)
kiinehtawint *pr* we alone, us only (inclusive) (E). Also: kiinehtawit (W)
niinehtawint *pr* we alone, us only (exclusive) (E). Also: niinehtawit (W)

WEAK

niinamii *vai* be weak

WEASEL

sikohsi -wak *na* weasel

WEATHER

ishiwepan *vii* be certain weather, happen in a certain way. IC> eshiwepa=
kiishowaayaa *vii* be warm weather
maci-miskwaawaa *vii* be a red-coloured sky that predicts bad weather

WEDNESDAY

aapihtawan *vii* be half, be Wednesday

WEEK

pimikonaakaa *vii* be a week

WELL

aaw *pc* well, well then, sure
mino-ayaawamaciho *vai* feel well, feel better
nihtaawanohkii *vai* work well, be a good worker

WEST

nekaapiihanonk *pc* west (E). Also: nekaapiihanok (W)

WHAT

aan *pc* how, in what manner, why, what. Also: aani, aaniin
aani *pc* how, in what manner, why, what. Also: aaniin, aan
aaniin *pc* how, in what manner, why, what. Also: aan, aani
kekonen -an *pr* what

WHAT PURPOSE

wenci- *prev* what purpose, why is it so (E). IC< onci-. Also: wenci- (W)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

WHEN
ahpin *pc* when, since, then, subsequently
ahpii *pc* when, at that time
aanahpii *pc* when?

WHERE
aanti *pc* where
amihimaa *pc* that is where, there in a certain location

WHEREABOUTS
aanti nehke *pc* whereabouts, which direction

WHILE
mekwaac *pc* while, during, at the (same) time, now
paanimaa *pc* later, later on, after a long while
wiipac *pc* soon, in a little while, quick, hurry
mekwaa *pc* while, during, at the time
noomake *pc* for a while
pehkihsh *pc* at the same time, while

WHISKEY
ishkotewaapoo *ni* fire water, whiskey, liquor

WHITE
waapaa *vii* be white
waapisi *vai* be white

WHITE WOMAN
wemihtikooshiihkwe *na* white woman

WHITE/GREY HAIR
waapaanihkwe *vai* have white/grey hair

WHITEFISH
atihkamek -wak *ni* whitefish

WHITEMAN
wemihtikooshi -wak *na* whiteman

WHO
awanen -ak *pr* who. Also: awenen

WHOLE
misiwe *pc* all over, everything, whole

WHY
aan *pc* how, in what manner, why, what. Also: aani, aaniin
aani *pc* how, in what manner, why, what. Also: aaniin, aan

WHY DON'T YOU
aahti *pc* please, why don't you, why not, let me!. Also: maahti

WIDE
mankihtikweyaa *vii* be a wide river (E). Also: makihtikweyaa (W)

WILL
ci- *prev* that, will, would, could, should. [conjunct future and modal]
ka- *prev* will. [future tense in independent verbs with personal prefix.]
ke- *prev* will, should, should, could. [Changed future and modal]
ta- *prev* will. [future tense in independent with no personal prefix]
waa- *prev* will, want to. IC< wii-
wii- *prev* will, want to. [desiderative, voluntative]

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

WIN
pahkinaake *vai* win, beat someone (in a competition)
WINDOW
pahpaapiwin -an *ni* window. Also: pahpaapowin
WINDY
nootin *vii* be windy, be a wind
WINE
shoominaapoo *ni* wine
WINTER
pipoon *vii* winter
WIPE
kaahsiin *vta* wipe s.o., clean s.o., wash s.o.
kaahsiinan *vti* wipe s.t., clean s.t., wash s.t.
kaahsiinike *vai* wipe things for cleaning
WISH
pakohsenimo *vai* wish, hope
kaanika *pc* I wonder, I wish, I hope
WOLF
mahiinkan -ak *na* wolf (E). Also: mahiikan (W)
WOMAN
anihshininiiwihkwe *na* native woman, Indian woman. Also: anihshininiihkwe
ihkwe -wak *na* woman, female
nootihkwewe *vai* womanize, chase women
niitihkwe -wak *nad* my fellow woman. Stem: /-iitihkwew-/
WONDER
kaanika *pc* I wonder, I wish, I hope
mikoshkaatentam *vai2* worry, be concerned, wonder
WOOD
mihtik -oon *ni* stick, piece of wood, yard (measurement)
WOODEN BOX
mihtikowash -an *ni* suitcase, wooden box.
WORK
anohkii *vai* work
anohkiiwin -an *ni* job, employment, work
maatanohkii *vai* start to work
nihtaawanohkii *vai* work well, be a good worker
poonanohkii *vai* quit a job, stop working
WORKER
anohkiinaakan -ak *na* worker
nihtaawanohkii *vai* work well, be a good worker
wiitanohkiimaakan -ak *na* my co-worker
WORRY
mikoshkaatenim *vta* worry about s.o., be concerned about s.o.
mikoshkaatentam *vai2* worry, be concerned, wonder
mikoshkaatentan *vti* worry about s.t., be concerned about s.t.
WOULD
ci- *prev* that, will, would, could, should. [conjunct future and modal]

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

taa- *prev* would, could, should, ought, can. [modal]

WOULD YOU

kaana *pc* is it possible that, would you, perhaps

WRITE

masinahike *vai* write, borrow, get credit

masinahamaw *vta* write to or for s.o., owe to s.o., borrow from s.o.

WRONG

macihse *vai* have something bad happen, have things go wrong

YARD

mihtik -oon *ni* stick, piece of wood, yard (measurement)

YAWN

naanipaawe -wak *vai* yawn. Also: naanipaayawe

YELLOW

osaawaa *vii* be yellow/brown

osaawisi *vai* be yellow/brown

YES

ehe *pc* yes. Also: eha

YESTERDAY

onaako *pc* yesterday

YET

aasha *pc* already, now, then, yet. Also: aashay

kaawin mahshi *pc* not yet

kiiyaapic *pc* still, yet, more. Also: kiyaapic

mahshi *pc* yet

YONDER

weti *pc* there, that way, yonder, over there

YOU

kekiin *pr* you too, as for you. [second person singular personal pronoun]

kekiinawaa *pr* you too, as for you. [second person plural personal pronoun]

kiin *pr* you. [second person singular personal pronoun]

kiinawaa *pr* you. [second person plural personal pronoun]

kiinishtam *pr* you next, you first. [second person personal pronoun]. Also: niinihta

kiinehta *pr* you alone, you only

kiinehtawaa *pr* you alone, you only (plural)

YUCK

ehshay *pc* oh yuck!

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE EXPRESSIONS

Aan enahkamikank?	What's going on? OR What's happening?
Aan enakimaac(t)?	How much is he charging for it? (animate)
Aan enakimac(t)?	How much are you charging for it? (animate)
Aan enakitaman?	How much are you charging for it? (inanimate)
Aan enakitank?	How much is he charging for it? (inanimate)
Aan enentaman?	What do you think?
Aan entootamaan?	What am I doing?
Aan entootamank?	What are we doing? (incl)
Aan entootaman ohowe kaa-ani-mishakaamekonakaak?	What are you doing this coming weekend?
Aan entootaman ohowe kaa-ani-tipihkaak?	What are you doing this evening?
Aan entootaman?	What are you doing?
Aan entootamek?	What are you doing?(pl)
Aan entootamowaac?	What are they doing?
Aan entootank?	What's he/she doing?
Aan eshi-ayaayan noonkom kaa-kekishepaayaak?	How are you this morning?
Aan eshi-kiishikaak noonkom kaa-kiishikaak?	What day is it today?
Aan eshinihkaasoc(t)?	What's his/her name?
Aan eshinihkaatek?	What is it called?
Aan ishihsek?	What time is it?
Aan eshinihkaasoyan?	What is your name?
Aan eshiwepahk?	How is the weather? OR What's happening?
Aan ke-kii-ishi-wiicihinaan noonkom kaa-kiishikaak?	How can I help you today?
Aan ke-tootaman noonkom kaa-kiishikaak?	What will you be doing today?
Aan tahsh wiin ihi ekaa?	Why is it not so?
Aan tahsh wiin ihi?	How come?
Aan tahsh?	Why?
Aan tahsinkin?	How many of them are there? (inanimate)

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE EXPRESSIONS

Aan tahsiwaac?	How many of them are there? (animate)
Aan waa-tootamaan?	What do I want to do?
Aan waa-tootaman ahpii ishkwaa-anohkiiyan?	What do you want to do when you are done working?
Aan waa-tootaman ke-kiishikaak?	What do you want to do today?
Aan waa-tootaman?	What do you want to do?
Aan waa-tootamowaac?	What do they want to do?
Aan waa-tootank?	What does he/she want to do?
Aan/aani minikohk?	How much?
Aanahpii eshaayan?	When are you going there?
Aanahpii ke-ishaayan Waawiyekamaak?	When are you going to Round Lake?
Aanahpii ke-maatanohkiiyan kekishepaayaak?	When do you begin/start to work tomorrow morning?
Aanahpii ke-pi-kiiwec(t)?	When is he/she returning?
Aanahpii ke-pi-kiiweyan?	When are you returning?
Aanahpii ke-pi-takohshink?	When is he/she arriving?
Aanahpii mayaam ke-pi-kiiweyan?	When exactly will you be coming home?
Aanahpii miina ke-nanaantawencikeyan?	When will you be go hunting again?
Aanahpii ta-kashkatin eshinaman?	When do you think it will freeze up?[1]
Aanahpii ta-maacihtan eshinaman?	When do you think it will break up?
Aanahpii ta-niipin eshinaman?	When do you think it will be summer?
Aanahpii tahsh waa-kiiweyan?	So when do you want to go home?
Aanahpii waa-ishaayan?	When do you want to go there?
Aanahpii waa-kiiweyan?	When do you want to go home?
Aanahpii wenci-kihkentaman e-aahkosiyan?	When did you realize that you are sick?
Aani minikohk aapacihtooyan mashkihki?	How much medication do you use?
Aani minikohk nantawenimac shooniyaan?	How much money do you need/want?
Aani minikohk ohomaa ke-ayaayan?	How long are you going to be here?

[1] The Severn Ojibwe word **eshinaman** literally means 'how do you see it?'

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE EXPRESSIONS

Aanta ehta ta-maacaawak waapank.	There will only be a few of them leaving tomorrow.
Aanta ehta ta-maaciiwicikaatewan.	Only a few things will be taken along.
Aanti eshaayan?	Where are you going?
Aanti eshaayek?	Where are you going? (pl)
Aanti eshi-kaahkiitisiyan?	Where is it aching?
Aanti eshi-tewisiyan?	Where is it sore?
Aanti eshi-wiihsakentaman?	Where is the pain?
Aanti kaa-ishi-akootooyan kimakoot?	Where did you hang your coat?
Aanti kaa-ishi-pankihsink pimihsewin?	Where did the airplane fall down/crash?
Aanti ke-oncinowek kitinentaan waapank?	Where do you think the wind will blow from tomorrow?
Aanti mayaam kaa-wii-ishaayan?	Where exactly is it that you want to go?
Aanti nehke entanihtaakwahk?	Whereabouts does the sound come from?
Aanti nehke eshinowek?	Which direction is the wind blowing?
Aanti nehke waa-ishaayan?	What direction do you want to go?
Aanti nehke wencinowek?	What direction is the wind blowing from?
Aanti piko ishi-ahtoon.	Put it anywhere.
Aanti piko ka-kii-ishi-nipaa.	You can sleep anywhere.
Aanti piko nika-ishi-ap.	I will be sitting anywhere.
Aanti waa-ishaayan ke-kiishikaak?	Where do you want to go today?
Aanti waa-ishaayan noonkom kaa-kiishikaak?	Where do you want to go today?
Aanti waa-ishaayan?	Where do you want to go?
Aanti waa-ishi-ahtooyan kiciimaan?	Where do you want to put/place your canoe?
Aanti wenci-kihkentaman?	How do you know?
Aanti wenci-nihsitawinaman?	How do you recognize it?
Aanti wenciiyan?	Where are you from?
Aanti wencinowek?	Where is the wind blowing from?
Aapatan ohowe mekwaac.	It is being used at this time.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE EXPRESSIONS

Aasha kekaat ta-kashkatin saakahikan.	The lake will freeze up very soon.
Aasha kii-maacaa.	He/she left already.
Aasha miina ani-kiishowaayaa.	It is getting warm again.
Aasha na kekaat ta-niipin kitinentaan?	Do you think the summer is near?
Aasha na kekaat ta-niipin kitishinaan?	Do you think the summer is near?[1]
Aasha na kikihkentaan aanahpii ke-maacaayan.	Do you know yet when you will be leaving?
Aasha na kikii-akwanahwaa kitaanihs?	Did you cover your daughter yet (with a blanket?
Aasha na okii-mihkawaan otayihshan?	Did he/she find his/her dog yet?
Aasha nikii-waapamaa.	I already saw him/her.
Aasha nipaa.	He/she is sleeping now.
Aasha weshkac kii-maacaa.	He/she left long time ago.
Aasha wiipac ta-maacihtan siipi.	The ice will break up very soon.
Ahcikanaahtik niwii-ataawe.	I want to buy a table.
Ahcikanaahtikoni wii-ataawe.	He/she wants to buy a table.
Ahpii ekaa oshooniyaanimiyaan nika-kiiwe.	When I don't have any money, I will go home.
Ahpii ishkwaa-anohkiiyaan, pankii nika-minihkwe shinkopiiwaapoo.	When I am done working, I will drink some beer.
Ahpii ishkwaa-anwepiyaan, nika-anohkii.	After I am done resting, I will work.
Akaamahkiink na kitooncii?	Are you from Europe?
Akaami-kihcikam na oncii kitootem?	Does your friend come from across the ocean?
Akaamihkana ina kitishaa?	Are you going across the road?
Akaamihkana niwii-ishi-kiiwike.	I want to go and visit across the road.
Akaawaac kii-tepihsewan mihsan pipoononk.	There was barely enough firewood during the winter.
Akaawaac naahpic nitepihse miicim.	I have just barely enough food.
Akwaciink nitashiiwihtoo ohowe mekwaac.	I am busy outside at the moment doing things.
Amihi aasha e-ani-pipooni-naakwank.	It is starting to look like winter already.

[1] The Severn Ojibwe verb **kitishinaan** literally means '(do) you see it'.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Amihimaa ke-ishi-piihinaan.	I will wait for you there (in a certain location).
Amihiwe eshkam eshihsek!	That's the way things happen sometimes.
Amihiwe kwayahk kekiin kaa-wii-anohkiiyan.	That's good that you want to work too.
Amii piko ohomaa ke-ayaayaan.	I am just going to stay here.
Amiicika tahsh ihi maamahkaac.	That is so amazing.
Amii na hi ihimaa waa-ishi-nipaayan?	Is that where you want to sleep?
Amii na hi tepwe?	Is that right? or Is that true?
Amohshahi iitok ekaa ci-kii-maacaayaan.	I don't think I can go.
Amohshahi iitok ekaa ci-kii-piishaayaan.	I don't think I can come.
Amohshahi iitok ekaa ci-kii-tootamaan.	I don't think I can do it.
Amohshahi iitok ekaa ci-kii-wiiciiwinaan.	I don't think I can go with you.
Anahpii tahsh ke-piishaayan?	When will you be coming?
Anoonaakohshink nika-maacaa.	I will be leaving this afternoon.
Ataawe ina kekoonini?	Is he buying something?
Awahshime ani-aahkosi nitinenimaa.	He/she is getting sicker, I think.
Awahshime ina ta-tahkaayaa miina pipoononk kitinentaan?	Do you think it will be colder next winter?
Awahshime ta-ani-kiishowaayaa ahpii ani-siikwahk.	It will get warmer when spring comes.
Awanen aha?	Who is that?
Awanen ke-wiici-pimaahkwepahikemac(t)?	Who will you be playing hockey with?
Awiya na kikii-amicihik tipihkonk?	Did someone keep you awake last night?
Ayapi na kitaanihs?	Is your daughter home?
Ayapi na kitaataa?	Is your dad home?
Ciikic ani-waapahk nika-kiiwe.	I will go home near dawn.
Ciikic waapahk nika-wanishkaa.	I will get up near dawn.
Ehe, ninihsitohtaan!	Yes, I understand!
Enikohk anohkiitaa mwaye-kimiwank.	Let's work hard before it rains.
Enikohk pimipahtoon!	Run hard!

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE EXPRESSIONS

Eniwehk nika-wiintamawaa ci-piishaat(c).	I will tell him/her to come anyway.
Eshkam ehta nimiwentaan.	I am only happy sometimes.
Eshkam keniin pankii nitaapacihtoon mashkihki.	Sometimes I use some medication too.
Eshkam naahpic nikihtim.	Sometimes I am very lazy.
Ikaa mahshi pinamaa!	Wait a minute! Just a second!
Ikaa mahshi!	Wait!
Ikaawin maanenciken mekwaac ishkoonooyan.	Don't be disobedient while you're in school.
Ikaawin mahshi maacaan!	Don't go/leave yet!
Ikaawin mahshi!	Not yet! (command)
Ikaawin wiihkaa miina tootan!	Don't ever do it again!
Ka-kanoonin ahpii ishkwaa-anohkiiyaan.	I will call you when I am done working.
Ka-kii-tootaan ina kiinehta ci-kiishihtooyan ohowe anohkiiwin?	Can you complete this job on your own?
Ka-maawin siyaaken OR siiyaaken maawiin kaawin.	I hope not.
Ka-pi-kanoonin naake.	I'll call you later.
Kaa-ishi-maawacihitonaaniwank nitishaa.	I am going to the gathering/meeting
Kaahsiiniken mwaye-maacaayan!	Clean up before you leave/go!
Kaahsiininaakanen mwaye-maacaayan!	Wash the dishes before you leave/go!
Kaatoon kipaashkisikan mwaye-maacaayan!	Hide your gun before you go!
Kaawin kwayahk nitoonci-nipaahsiin tipihkonk.	I didn't sleep too well last night.
Kaawin kwayahk nitoonci-nipaahsiin tipihkonk.	I didn't sleep well last night.
Kaawin mahshi mayaam nikihkentansiin.	I don't know yet exactly.
Kaawin mahshi nikiishihtoohsiin.	I haven't finished yet.
Kaawin mahshi niwaapamaahsiin.	I haven't seen him/her yet.
Kaawin mahshi.	Not yet. (statement)
Kaawin nika-kii-tootansiin niinehta.	I can't do it by myself.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Kaawin nimino-ayaawamancihohsiin noonkom kaa-kiishikaak.	I am not feeling well today.
Kaawin ninaanaakacihaahsiin.	I don't watch out for him/her.
Kaawin tepwe nimino-ayaahsiin noonkom kaa-kiishikaak.	I am not doing too well today.
Kaawin tepwe nimino-ayaawamancihohsiin noonkom kaa-kiishikaak.	I am not feeling too well today.
Kaawin, kaawin kekoon ke-onci-piihakipan.	No, I don't have any reason to wait for him/her.
Kaawin, kaawin ninihsitohtahsiin.	No, I don't understand.
Kaawin, kaawin nitepwehtansiin ihiwe aacimowin.	No, I don't believe that story.
Kaawin, kaawin nitepwehtansiin ohowe aacimowin.	No, I don't believe this story.
Kanoosh kiiwiiciiwaakan mwaye-kiiweyan.	Call your spouse before you go home.
Kape-kiishik na kika-inent?	Are you going to be gone all day?
Kape-kiishikaa na kika-inent?	Are you going to be gone all day?
Kaye piko na wiipac (ki)ka-maacaa?	Is it possible you will be leaving early?
Kaye piko na wiipac kika-maacaa kekishepaayaak?	Is it possible you will be leaving early tomorrow morning.
Kaye piko na wiipac ta-takohshin?	Is it possible he/she will be arriving soon.
Kaye piko ta-kimiwan kitipihkaak.	It will probably be raining today.
Kehcinaac nika-kaahsiinike mwaye-maacaayaan!	I will clean up for sure before I leave/go.
Kehcinaac ta-maci-kiishikaa ishi-naakwan.	It looks like there will be bad weather for sure.
Kekiin ina kiwii-kocihpitaan pankii mooso-wiiyaahs?	Do you want to taste some moose meat too?
Kekishepaayaak (ki)ka-waapamin kaa-ishi-maawacihitonaaniwak.	I will see you at the meeting tomorrow morning.
Keko mashkihki aapacihtooyan ohowe mekwaac.	What kind of medication are you using/taking at this time?
Kekonen ataawaakeyan?	What are you selling?
Kekonen ataaweyan?	What are you buying?
Kekonen ihi?	What's that?

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE EXPRESSIONS

Kekonen naasihkaman?	What are you going to fetch?
Kekonen nantawentaman?	What do you want?
Kekonen tahsh ekaa?	Why is it not?
Kekonen tahsh miishkoc waa-miiciyan?	What do you want to eat instead?
Kekonen tahsh?	What about? OR What for?
Kekonen waa-ataawaakeyan?	What do you want to sell?
Kekonen waa-ataaweyan?	What do you want to buy?
Kekonenini ataawaakec(t)?	What does he want to sell?
Kekonenini ataawec(t)?	What is he buying?
Kekonenini waa-ataawec(t)?	What does he want to buy?
Kekoon ina kinantawentaan?	Do you want something?
Kekoon kiwii-kakwecimin.	I want to ask you something.
Keniin nitaa-kii-ishaa.	I should go there too.
Kehte-naakosi kitaahs.	Your pants look old.
Kehte-naakwan kiciimaan.	Your canoe looks old.
Kihci-miikwehc nitootem!	Thank you very much my friend.
Kihcinihkiink inehke ishi-washkiin!	Turn to the right!
Kihcinihkiink na inehke kiwii-ishi-pimohse?	Do you want to walk on the right?
Kihkentamoonihshin ahpii ani-maacaayan.	Let me know when you are leaving.
Kii-aaniman ina anohkiiwin noonkom kaa-kiishikaak?	Was work difficult today?
Kii-nihtaawanohkiiwak anihshininiwak kayaash.	Native people were hard working a long time ago.
Kii-wenootan nato-miicim kayaash.	There was plenty of traditional food a long time ago.
Kiin iko kihkentan ke-tootaman.	You do whatever you want to do.
Kiin ina hi kimiicimim?	Is that your food?
Kiin kihkentan ke-tootaman.	You decide what to do.
Kiin na ha kishooniyaanim?	Is that your money?
Kiin tahsh wiin?	How about you?

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE EXPRESSIONS

Kiishpin ekaa aapatank noonkom kaa-kiishikaak, ka-kii-aapacihtoon waapank.	If it's not used today, you can use it tomorrow.
Kiishpin ekaa maci-kiishikaak nika-antawi-kwaashkwepine.	If the weather is not bad, I will go fishing.
Kiishpin ekaa ontamiihkeyaan, keniin nika-ishaa.	If I am not busy, I will go there too.
Kiishpin mino-kiishikaak waapank, miina ta-anohkiinaaniwan.	If the weather is nice tomorrow, we will work again.
Kiishpin nekaapiihanonk oncinowek, kehcinaac ta-maci-kiishikaa.	If the wind is blowing from the east, for sure it will be a bad day.
Kiishpin wii-ishaayan, (ki)ka-wiiciiwin.	If you want to go there, I will go with you.
Kiishpin wii-wiihsiniyaan, wiipac nika-kiiwe.	If I get hungry, I will go home early.
Kiiwetinonk ina oncinowe?	Is the wind blowing from the north?
Kiiwetinonk inehke onciniwe.	The wind is blowing from the north.
Kiiwetinonk ta-oncinowe, ta-sookihpwan ekwa ta-kihci-nootin nitishinaan.	I see it the wind will be blowing from the north, it will be snowing and windy.
(Ki)ka-pi-kanoonin ahpii ishkwaa-anohkiiyaan.	I will call you when I am done working.
Kika-nanaantawencike na ahpii takwaakink?	Are you going hunting in the fall?
Kika-wiiciiwin kiishpin ehta ekaa onsaam maci-kiishikaak.	I will go with you only if the weather is not too bad.
Kikaanaa na shooniyaan?	Are you hiding money?
Kikihkentaan na aanahpii ke-pi-kiiweyan?	Do you know when you will be coming home?
Kikii-aahkos na onaako?	Were you sick yesterday?
Kikii-ayamihaa na?	Did you talk to him/her?
Kikii-pi-kanoonihsh na?	Did you call me (on the phone)?
Kikii-pwaatawi-kawihshim na eni-tipihkaak?	Did you go to bed late last night?
Kikii-pwaatawi-wanishkaa na kekishep?	Did you get up late this morning?
Kikosihs mooshak nanaatihkosii.	Your son is always teasing people.
Kiminohpitaan ina nato-miicim?	Do you like the taste of traditional food?
Kinaaci-ataawikamikwe na noonkom kaa-kiishikaak?	Are you going to the store today?
Kinahshine-niipaa-anohkii ina?	Are you working nights all the time?

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE EXPRESSIONS

Kinanaahkomin nitootem!	I thank you, my friend.
Kinantawenimin ci-wiicihishiyan. Kinantawentaan ina ci-wiicihinaan?	I need/want you to help me. Do you want me to help you?
Kinantawentaan ina kekoon ci-piitooyaan?	Do you want me to bring something?
Kinihsitohtaan ina?	Do you understand?
Kinihtaa-watakami-aahkos na?	Do you usually get sick easily?
Kipaahpihtoon ina nitaacimowin?	Are you laughing at my story?
Kitaana na ahko kakwecimaa?	Do you ever attempt to ask him/her?
Kitaataa niwii-ayamihaa.	I want to talk to your dad.
Kitanaamenimaa na kitootem?	Are you blaming your friend?
Kitanenimaak na mihshin kinooshek ihimaa?	Do you expect lots of fish there?
Kitataawe ina kekoon?	Are you buying something?
Kitepwehtaan ina ihiwe aacimowin?	Do you believe that story?
Kitepwehtaan ina kahkinaa kekoon kaa-ishi-wiintamaakooyan?	Do you believe everything that you are told?
Kitepwehtaan ina ohowe aacimowin?	Do you believe this story?
Kitookimaam na kahkina kekoonini otipentaan?	Does your boss controls everything?
Kiwii-antawi-memecikaahcike na?	Do you want to go and check up on the situation?
Kiwii-antawi-pakitahwe waapank?	Do you want to go and set up the fish net tomorrow?
Kiwii-ataawe ina kekoon?	Do you want to buy something?
Kiwii-ayamihaa na ahpii takohshink?	Do you talk with him/her when he/she arrives?
Kiwii-ayamihaa na?	Do you want to talk to him/her?
Kiwii-kakwecimin ci-kii-masinahamawinaan pankii shooniyan?	I want to ask you if I can borrow some money.
Kiwii-kanoonaa na kikayaashim?	Do you want to call your ex?
Kiwii-kiiwe-nipaa na ahpii ishkwaa-wiihsiniyan?	Do you want to go back to sleep when you are done eating?
Kiwii-nantohtaan ina nikamowin?	Do you want to listen to the song?
Kiwii-wiiciiwihsh na?	Do you want to go with me?

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE EXPRESSIONS

Kiwiihsakentaan ina?	Are you in pain?
Kwanta kaa-piishaayan ohomaa.	I come here for no reason.
Kwanta ohsha ihkito!	He/she is not telling the truth!
Kwanta piko kaa-pi-kanooninaan.	I am calling for no reason.
Kwayahk kanawenimitison ekaa ci-pihci-tootaasoyan.	Take good care not to hurt yourself.
Kwayahk tootan!	Do it right! OR Do it correctly!
Maamahkaac nitinentaan ekaa mahshi kaa-pipoonk.	I think it's amazing it's not winter yet.
Manaaci-pihci-tootaason mekwaac anohkiiyan.	Be careful not to hurt yourself while you're working.
Mayaam nitani-maacaa.	I am just leaving.
Mekwaac kii-anohkiiyaan, ketahtawen nikii-aahkos.	While I was working, all of a sudden I got sick.
Mekwaac kii-nipaayaan, niwaahkaahikan kii-sahkite.	While I was sleeping, my house was on fire.
Mekwaac pimankisoc(t) nihki-piihsim, nika-ishaa Waawiyekamaak.	I will go to Round Lake during goose month. (April)
Miikwehc nitootem!	Thank you my friend.
Miina ihkiton!	Say it again!
Mino-ani-tipihkihtoon.	Have a good evening.
Mino-kiishikanihtoon.	Have a good day.
Mino-naakosi kimoosom.	Your sweetheart looks nice.
Mino-naakwan kiwaahkaahikan.	Your house looks nice.
Mino-tipihkihtoon.	Have a good night.
Mishtahi kinanaahkomin nitootem!	I thank you a lot, my friend.
Misiwe miinihshin kishooniyaanim!	Give me all your money!
Misiwe miinihshin!	Give me all of it!
Misiwe ta-papaamohsenaaniwan waapank.	We will walk around all over the place tomorrow.
Mitoni mino-anwaahtinikamin saakahikan.	It is very nice and calm water in the lake.
Mooshak keniin kimihkawinotawin.	Me too, I think about you all the time.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE EXPRESSIONS

Mooshak kimihkawinotawin.	I think about you all the time.
Mooshak miikaasowin takwan akaamahkiink.	There is always a war going on in Europe.
Naahpic ahko niminwentaan e-waapantamaan miskwaawaa.	I usually very happy to see red-coloured sky at dawn/sunset.
Naahpic ahko niminwentaan wiipac kaa-kiiweyaan.	I am usually very happy to go home early.
Naahpic kii-aaniman kayaash pimaatisiwin.	Life was very hard a long time ago.
Naahpic kii-mino-naakwan kiishikaa onaako.	The day was very nice yesterday.
Naahpic nika-minwentaan ahpii waapaminaan.	I will be very glad/happy when I see you.
Naahpic niminwentaan e-waapaminaan.	I am very glad to see you.
Naahpic niminwentaan kaa-waapaminaan miina.	I am very glad that I saw you again.
Naahpic ninihtaa-watakami-aahkos mekwaa tahkaayaa.	I usually get sick very easily during the cold weather.
Naahpic tahkaayaa noonkom kaa-kiishikaak.	It is very cold today.
Naake (ki)ka-waapamin kaa-ishi-niiminaaniwank.	I will see you later at the dance.
Naanta maawiin waapank.	Probably tomorrow.
Nahke piko, kaawin mahshi niwaapamaahsiin.	I don't know, I haven't seen him/her yet.
Nahke piko. Kaawin mahshi mayaam nikihkentansiin.	I don't know. I don't know yet exactly.
Namacinihkiink inehke ishi-washkinan.	Turn it to the left!
Name niwii-ataawe.	I want to buy a sturgeon.
Namewan wii-ataawe.	He/she wants to buy a sturgeon.
Niihtaawihs na ihimaa ayaa?	Is my brother-in-law there?
Niinehta nika-maacaa waapank.	I will be leaving tomorrow by myself.
Nika-kanoonaa ahpii ishkwaa-anohkiiyaan.	I will call him/her when I am done working.
Nika-kii-tootaan niinehta.	I can do it by myself.
Nika-kiiwe-anohkii wiipac.	I will go back to work soon.
Nika-wiihsin pankii mwaye-maacaayaan ke-kishepaayaak.	I will eat some before I leave/go tomorrow morning.
Nika-wiintamawaa ci-pi-kanoonihk ahpii takohshink.	I will tell him/her to give you a call when he/she arrives.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE EXPRESSIONS

Nikanawenimaa.	I am taking care of him/her.
Nikanawentaan.	I am taking care of it.
Nikihkenimaa ahawe ihkwe.	I know that woman.
Nikihkinoohamawaa ci-nihtaawec(t).	I am teaching him/her to talk.
Nikihkinoohamawaa ci-nihtaawihsec(t).	I am teaching him/her to walk.
Nikii-pwaahtawi-wanishkaa kekishepaa.	I got up late this morning.
Nikii-tepihtawaa koohkoohkohoo noohpimink tipihkonk.	I heard the owl in the woods last night.
Nimaamitonentaan miicim.	I am thinking about food.
Nimaamitonenimaa nimoosom.	I am thinking about my sweetheart.
Nimaamitonentaan ci-nanaantawencikeyaan waapank.	I am thinking about to go hunting tomorrow.
Nimincinawes kaa-wani-kanooninaan.	I am sorry for offending you.
Nimikoshkaatentaan.	I am worried.
Nimino-ayaa ohowe mekwaac.	I am doing well at the present time.
Niminwenimaa.	I like him/her.
Niminwentaan.	I like it. OR I am happy.
Ninanaantawaapamaa.	I am looking for him/her.
Ninanaantawaapantaan.	I am looking for it.
Ninoonteyentaan ci-kiiweyaan.	I am anxious to go home.
Nipakohsenim ci-wii-minohseyan.	I wish you the best./I wish things go well for you.
Nipayehkinike akwaciink.	I am cleaning up outside.
Nisaakihaa.	I love him/her.
Nisaakihtoon.	I love it.
Nishikatentaan ahko kinwesh kaa-maacaayan.	I usually feel lonely when you are gone for a long time.
Nitaahkosiiwamaci.	I feel sick.
Nitanaamenimaa nitootem.	I blame my friend.
Nitanenimaak mihshiin kinooshek ihimaa ohowe mekwaac.	I expect lots of fish there at this time.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE EXPRESSIONS

Nitishinihkaas	My name is _____.
Nitooncii	I am from _____.
Niwaniihkenotaan.	I forgot about it.
Niwaniihkenotawaa.	I forgot about him/her.
Niwii-anwep pinamaa.	I want to take a rest for a while.
Niwii-kekishepaanehkwe.	I want to eat morning meal. (breakfast)
Niwii-kiiwe-anohkii ahpii ishkwaa-anwepiyaan.	I want to go back to work when I am finished resting.
Niwii-kiiwe.	I want to go home.
Niyaananwaapihk nitinakimaa.	I'm charging $5.00 for it. (animate)
Niyaananwaapihk nitinakitaan.	I'm charging $5.00 for it. (inanimate)
Niyaananwaapihk otinakimaan.	He's charging $5.00 for it. (animate)
Niyaananwaapihk otinakitaan.	He's charging $5.00 for it. (inanimate)
Noonkom piko nitishi-wanishkaa.	I just got up.
Onsaam ina kiishkaayawaa ohomaa kitinentaan?	Do you think the water is too deep here?
Onsaam mishtahi kwanta kitayam!	You talk too much for no reason!
Onsaam mooshak tepinaahk kitanohkii.	Too often you're working too carelessly.
Otaapaan nitataawe.	I am buying a car.
Otaapaan niwii-ataawe.	I want to buy a car.
Otaapaanan ataawe.	He/she is buying a car.
Otaapaanan wii-ataawe.	He/she wants to buy a car.
Otakwanahaan ociimaan.	He/she is covering his/her canoe.
Pahkaan niin niwii-antawi-ishi-pakitahwe.	As for myself, I am going to a different location to set up the fish net.
Payahtak niwii-anwep ahpii ishkwaa-anohkiiyaan.	When I am done working, I want to rest very carefully.
Pehkaac ihkiton!	Say it slowly!
Pehkihsh nika-wiihsin mekwaac anohkiiyaan.	I'm going to eat while I'm working.
Pehpeshik ta-otaahpinaawak. (animate)	They (animate) will be picked up one by one. (by us).

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

Pehpeshik ta-otaahpinikaatewan. (inanimate)	They (inanimate) will be picked up one by one (by us).
Pi-kanoonihshin ahpii ishkwaa-anohkiyan!	Call me when you are done working!
Pi-naasihkawihshin ahpii ani-maacaayan!	Come and get me when you leave!
Pi-otaapinihshin ahpii ani-maacaayan!	Come and pick me up when you leave!
Piko tooho miicim ta-ashankaaniwan kaa-ishi-makohshaaniwank.	All sorts of food will be served at the feast.
Piko tooho miicim.	Any kind of food. (varied food)
Pinamaa ohsha nika-kakwecimaa nitookimaam.	I have to ask my boss first.
Sakamaatapin mekwaac wiihsiniyan!	Sit still while you're eating!
Shaawanonk ina kitishaa ahpii ani-pipoonk.	Are you going to south when winter comes?
Shemaak nika-kii-piishaa.	I can come right now.
Shemaak nika-kwayaanci.	I will get ready right away.
Shemaak niwii-maacaa e-mwaye-onsaam-kihci-nootink.	I want to leave before it gets too windy.
Siitawaac ina kitanohkii noonkom kaa-kiishikaak?	You can barely work today.
Siitawaac nikii-papaamohse onaako.	I barely walked yesterday.
Siyaaken maawiin kekiin kiminohpitaanaatok nato-miicim.	I hope you like the taste of traditional food too.
Siyaaken maawiin kika-kaahcitinaa.	I hope you'll catch him/her.
Siyaaken maawiin wiipac kika-mino-ayaa.	I hope you get well soon.
Ta-mooshkahan ishi-naakwan ishkwaa-maacihtahk.	It looks like there will be high water after ice break up.
Ta-pwaatawi-pipoon nitishinaan.	I see it the winter will be late.
Tahso-kiishikaa nitahshawaapamaa nitootem.	Everyday I watch and wait for my friend.
Tahso-kiishikaa nitahshawaapantaan pimihsewin.	Everyday I watch and wait for an aiplane.
Tahswaa kaa-kanooninaan, kaawin wiihkaa kitapihsiin.	Every time I call you, you're not home.
Tekako nicaakii noonkom kaa-kiishikaak.	I am totally exhausted today.
Tepwe (o)hsha!	That's true!

Lakehead University Faculty of Education

ADVANCED OJIBWE EXPRESSIONS

Tepwe na? also Tepwe?	Really? (Is that true?)
Tipihkonk kii-takohshin ciikic kaa-ani-aapihtaa-tipihkaanik.	He/she arrived last night close to midnight.
Waaciye nitoonci-wiicitaamaakan.	Hello my neighbour.
Waaciye nitootem.	Hello/Greetings my friend.
Wawiyasinaakosi kitaanihs.	Your daughter is cute.
Wenipan ahpin nitayihsh. Kii-maaciipahtoo kaana.	My dog disappeared. He/she probably ran off.
Weti inehke ishi-taa.	He/she lives there in that direction.
Weti inehke ta-ishaaniwan.	We will go in that direction.
Weti naaniyahii ishkwaantemink.	Over there beside the door.
Wii-ataawe ina kekoonini?	Does he want to buy something?
Wiintamaw ci-pi-kanoonihshit(c) ahpii takohshink.	Tell him/her to give me a call when he/she arrives.
Wiintamawihshin ahpii ishkwaa-anohkiiyan.	Tell me when you are done working.
Wiintamawihshin kiishpin nantawenimac shooniyaan.	Tell me if you need/want money.
Wiipac aasha ta-niipin inentaakwan.	It seems that it will be summer soon.
Wiipac aasha ta-niipin ishi-naakwan.	It looks like it will be summer soon.
Wiipac ina ta-niipin kitishinaan?	Do you think summer will come early?
Wiipac kekishep kii-maacaa.	He/she left early this morning.
Wiipac maawiin siyaaken kika-mino-ayaa.	I hope you get well soon.
Wiipac miina (ki)ka-ayamihin.	I will talk to you again soon.
Wiipac nikii-koshkos kekishep.	I woke up early this morning.
Wiipac nikii-wanishkaa kekishep.	I got up early this morning.
Wiipac ta-pipoon nitinentaan.	I think winter will come early.
Wiintamawihshin kiishpin nantawentaman ci-wiicihinaan.	Tell me if you want me to help you.
_____ ishinihkaaso.	His/her name is _____.

Lakehead University Faculty of Education